

---

**nexus**  
*Release v2020.1rc1*

**NIAC, <https://www.nexusformat.org>**

**Jan 23, 2020**



# CONTENTS

<b>1 NeXus: User Manual</b>	<b>3</b>
1.1 NeXus Introduction . . . . .	3
1.2 NeXus Design . . . . .	17
1.3 Constructing NeXus Files and Application Definitions . . . . .	56
1.4 Strategies for storing information in NeXus data files . . . . .	68
1.5 Verification and validation of files . . . . .	72
1.6 Frequently Asked Questions . . . . .	72
<b>2 Examples of writing and reading NeXus data files</b>	<b>77</b>
2.1 Code Examples in Various Languages . . . . .	77
2.2 Code Examples that use the NeXus API (NAPI) . . . . .	116
<b>3 NeXus: Reference Documentation</b>	<b>125</b>
3.1 Introduction to NeXus definitions . . . . .	125
3.2 NXDL: The NeXus Definition Language . . . . .	128
3.3 NeXus Class Definitions . . . . .	153
<b>4 NAPI: NeXus Application Programmer Interface (frozen)</b>	<b>343</b>
4.1 Status . . . . .	343
4.2 Overview . . . . .	343
4.3 Core API . . . . .	344
4.4 Utility API . . . . .	351
4.5 Building Programs . . . . .	352
4.6 Reporting Bugs in the NeXus API . . . . .	353
<b>5 NeXus Community</b>	<b>355</b>
5.1 NeXus Webpage . . . . .	355
5.2 Contributed Definitions . . . . .	355
5.3 Other Ways NeXus Coordinates with the Scientific Community . . . . .	355
<b>6 Installation</b>	<b>359</b>
6.1 Precompiled Binary Installation . . . . .	359
6.2 Source Installation . . . . .	360
6.3 Releases . . . . .	360
<b>7 NeXus Utilities</b>	<b>363</b>
7.1 Utilities supplied with NeXus . . . . .	363
7.2 Validation . . . . .	364
7.3 Data Analysis . . . . .	364
7.4 HDF Tools . . . . .	365

<b>8</b>	<b>Brief history of NeXus</b>	<b>367</b>
<b>9</b>	<b>About these docs</b>	<b>369</b>
9.1	Authors . . . . .	369
9.2	Colophon . . . . .	369
9.3	Revision History . . . . .	370
9.4	Copyright and Licenses . . . . .	370



<https://www.nexusformat.org/>



## NEXUS: USER MANUAL



### 1.1 NeXus Introduction

NeXus<sup>1</sup> is an effort by an international group of scientists *motivated* to define a common data exchange format for neutron, X-ray, and muon experiments. NeXus is built on top of the scientific data format HDF5 and adds domain-specific rules for organizing data within HDF5 files in addition to a dictionary of well-defined domain-specific field names. The NeXus data format has three purposes:

1. *raw data*: NeXus defines a format that can serve as a container for all relevant data associated with a scientific instrument or beamline. This is a very important use case. This includes the case of streaming data acquisition, where time stamped data are logged.
2. *processed data*: NeXus also defines standards for processed data. This is data which has underwent some form of data reduction or data analysis. NeXus allows storing the results of such processing together with documentation about how the processed data was generated.
3. *standards*: NeXus defines standards in the form of *application definitions* for the exchange of data between applications. NeXus provides standards for both raw and processed data.

A community of scientists and computer programmers working in neutron and synchrotron facilities around the world came to the conclusion that a common data format would fulfill a valuable function in the scattering community. As instrumentation becomes more complex and data visualization becomes more challenging, individual scientists, or even institutions, find it difficult to keep up with new developments. A common data format makes it easier, both to exchange experimental results and to exchange ideas about how to analyze them. It promotes greater cooperation in software development and stimulates the design of more sophisticated visualization tools. Additional background information is given in the chapter titled *Brief history of NeXus*.

This section is designed to give a brief introduction to NeXus, the data format and tools that have been developed in response to these needs. It explains what a modern data format such as NeXus is and how to write simple programs to read and write NeXus files.

The programmers who produce intermediate files for storing analyzed data should agree on simple interchange rules.

---

<sup>1</sup> *J. Appl. Cryst.* (2015). **48**, 301-305 (<https://doi.org/10.1107/S1600576714027575>)

### 1.1.1 What is NeXus?

The NeXus data format has four components:

*A set of design principles* to help people understand what is in the data files.

*A set of data storage objects* (*Base Class Definitions* and *Application Definitions*) to allow the development of portable analysis software.

*A set of subroutines* (*Utilities* and *examples*) to make it easy to read and write NeXus data files.

*A Scientific Community* to provide the scientific data, advice, and continued involvement with the NeXus standard. NeXus provides a forum for the scientific community to exchange ideas in data storage.

In addition, NeXus relies on a set of low-level file formats to actually store NeXus files on physical media. Each of these components are described in more detail in the *Physical File format* section.

The NeXus Application-Programmer Interface (NAPI), which provides the set of subroutines for reading and writing NeXus data files, is described briefly in *NAPI: The NeXus Application Programming Interface*. (Further details are provided in the *NAPI* chapter.)

The principles guiding the design and implementation of the NeXus standard are described in the *NeXus Design* chapter.

Base classes, which comprise the data storage objects used in NeXus data files, are detailed in the *Base Class Definitions* chapter.

Additionally, a brief list describing the set of NeXus Utilities available to browse, validate, translate, and visualise NeXus data files is provided in the *NeXus Utilities* chapter.

### A Set of Design Principles

NeXus data files contain four types of entity: groups, fields, attributes, and links.

**Groups** Groups are like folders that can contain a number of fields and/or other groups.

**Fields** Fields can be scalar values or multidimensional arrays of a variety of sizes (1-byte, 2-byte, 4-byte, 8-byte) and types (characters, integers, floats). Fields are represented as HDF5 *datasets*.

**Attributes** Extra information required to describe a particular group or field, such as the data units, can be stored as a data attribute. Attributes can also be given at the file level of an HDF5 file.

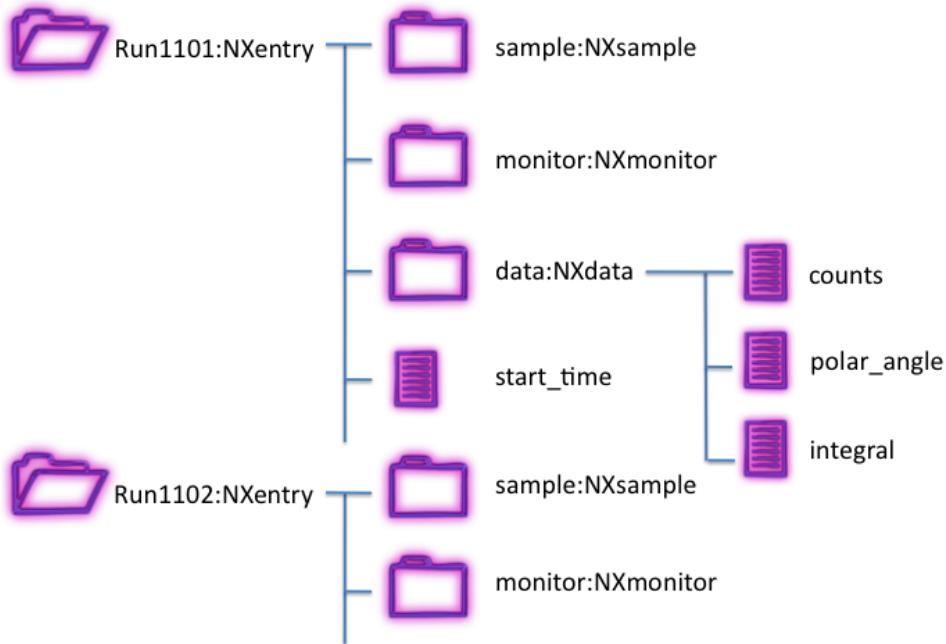
**Links** Links are used to reference the plottable data from NXdata when the data is provided in other groups such as NXmonitor or NXdetector.

In fact, a NeXus file can be viewed as a computer file system. Just as files are stored in folders (or subdirectories) to make them easy to locate, so NeXus fields are stored in groups. The group hierarchy is designed to make it easy to navigate a NeXus file.

### Example of a NeXus File

The following diagram shows an example of a NeXus data file represented as a tree structure.

## Example of a NeXus Data File



Note that each field is identified by a name, such as `counts`, but each group is identified both by a name and, after a colon as a delimiter, the class type, e.g., `monitor:NXmonitor`). The class types, which all begin with NX, define the sort of fields that the group should contain, in this case, counts from a beamline monitor. The hierarchical design, with data items nested in groups, makes it easy to identify information if you are browsing through a file.

## Important Classes

Here are some of the important classes found in nearly all NeXus files. A complete list can be found in the [NeXus Base Classes](#) chapter. A complete list of *all* NeXus classes may be found in the [NeXus Class Definitions](#) chapter.

---

**Note:** NXentry is the only class required in a valid NeXus data file.

---

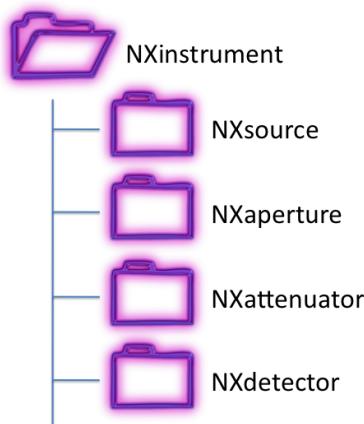
**NXentry Required:** The top level of any NeXus file contains one or more groups with the class NXentry. These contain all the data that is required to describe an experimental run or scan. Each NXentry typically contains a number of groups describing sample information (class NXsample), instrument details (class NXinstrument), and monitor counts (class NXmonitor).

**NXdata** Each NXentry group may contain one or more NXdata groups. These groups contain the experimental results in a self-contained way, i.e., it should be possible to generate a sensible plot of the data from the information contained in each NXdata group. That means it should contain the axis labels and titles as well as the data.

**NXsample** A NXentry group will often contain a group with class NXsample. This group contains information pertaining to the sample, such as its chemical composition, mass, and environment variables (temperature, pressure, magnetic field, etc.).

**NXinstrument** There might also be a group with class NXinstrument. This is designed to encapsulate all the instrumental information that might be relevant to a measurement, such as flight paths, collimation, chopper frequencies, etc.

### NXinstrument excerpt

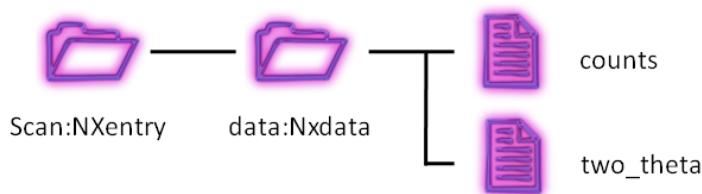


Since an instrument can include several beamline components each defined by several parameters, the components are each specified by a separate group. This hides the complexity from generic file browsers, but makes the information available in an intuitively obvious way if it is required.

### Simple Example

NeXus data files do not need to be complicated. In fact, the following diagram shows an extremely simple NeXus file (in fact, the simple example shows the minimum information necessary for a NeXus data file) that could be used to transfer data between programs. (Later in this section, we show how to write and read this simple example.)

### Example structure of a simple data file



This illustrates the fact that the structure of NeXus files is extremely flexible. It can accommodate very complex instrumental information, if required, but it can also be used to store very simple data sets. Here is the structure of a very simple NeXus data file (`examples/verysimple.nx5`):

## Structure of a very simple NeXus Data file

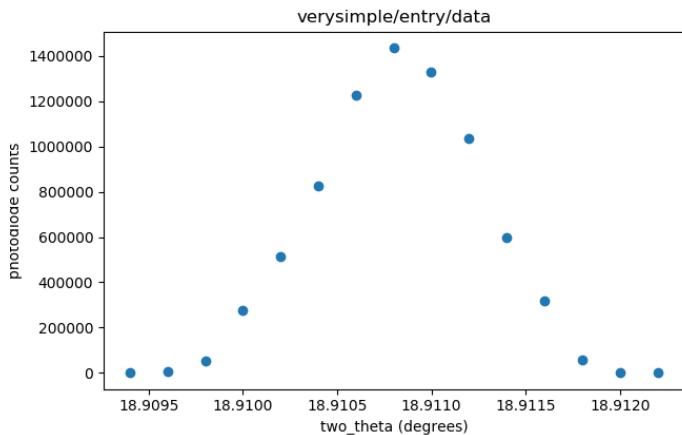
```

1  verysimple.nx5 : NeXus data file
2      @default = entry
3      entry:NXentry
4          @NX_class = NXentry
5          @default = data
6          data:NXdata
7              @NX_class = NXdata
8              @signal = counts
9              @axes = two_theta
10             @two_theta_indices = [0]
11             counts:int32[15] = [1193, 4474, 53220, '...', 1000]
12             @units = counts
13             @long_name = photodiode counts
14             two_theta:float64[15] = [18.9094, 18.9096, '...', 18.9122]
15             @units = degrees
16             @long_name = two_theta (degrees)

```

NeXus files are easy to visualize. Here, this data is plotted using *NeXPY* simply by opening the NeXus data file and double-clicking the file name in the list:

## Plot of a very simple NeXus HDF5 Data file



NeXus files are easy to create. This example NeXus file was created using a short Python program and the *h5py* package:

## Using Python to write a very simple NeXus HDF5 Data file

```

1  #!/usr/bin/env python
2  '''uses h5py to build the verysimple.nx5 data file'''
3
4  import h5py
5
6  angle = [18.9094, 18.9096, 18.9098, 18.91, 18.9102,
7          18.9104, 18.9106, 18.9108, 18.911, 18.9112,
8          18.9114, 18.9116, 18.9118, 18.912, 18.9122]
9  diode = [1193, 4474, 53220, 274310, 515430, 827880,

```

(continues on next page)

(continued from previous page)

```

10      1227100, 1434640, 1330280, 1037070, 598720,
11      316460, 56677, 1000, 1000]

12
13 f = h5py.File('verysimple.nx5', 'w')
14 f.attrs['default'] = 'entry'

15
16 nxentry = f.create_group('entry')
17 nxentry.attrs["NX_class"] = 'NXentry'
18 nxentry.attrs['default'] = 'data'

19
20 nxdata = nxentry.create_group('data')
21 nxdata.attrs["NX_class"] = 'NXdata'
22 nxdata.attrs['signal'] = 'counts'
23 nxdata.attrs['axes'] = 'two_theta'
24 nxdata.attrs['two_theta_indices'] = [0,]

25
26 tth = nxdata.create_dataset('two_theta', data=angle)
27 tth.attrs['units'] = 'degrees'
28 tth.attrs['long_name'] = 'two_theta (degrees)'

29
30 counts = nxdata.create_dataset('counts', data=diode)
31 counts.attrs['units'] = 'counts'
32 counts.attrs['long_name'] = 'photodiode counts'

33
34 f.close()

```

## A Set of Data Storage Objects

If the design principles are followed, it will be easy for anyone browsing a NeXus file to understand what it contains, without any prior information. However, if you are writing specialized visualization or analysis software, you will need to know precisely what specific information is contained in advance. For that reason, NeXus provides a way of defining the format for particular instrument types, such as time-of-flight small angle neutron scattering. This requires some agreement by the relevant communities, but enables the development of much more portable software.

The set of data storage objects is divided into three parts: base classes, application definitions, and contributed definitions. The base classes represent a set of components that define the dictionary of all possible terms to be used with that component. The application definitions specify the minimum required information to satisfy a particular scientific or data analysis software interest. The contributed definitions have been submitted by the scientific community for incubation before they are adopted by the NIAC or for availability to the community.

These instrument definitions are formalized as XML files, using [NXDL](#), to specify the names of fields, and other NeXus data objects. The following is an example of such a file for the simple NeXus file shown above.

## A very simple NeXus Definition Language (NXDL) file

```

1 <?xml version="1.0" ?>
2 <definition
3   xmlns="http://definition.nexusformat.org/nxdl/3.1"
4   xmlns:xsi="http://www.w3.org/2001/XMLSchema-instance"
5   xsi:schemaLocation="http://definition.nexusformat.org/nxdl/3.1 ..../nxdl.xsd"
6   category="base"
7   name="verysimple"
8   version="1.0"

```

(continues on next page)

(continued from previous page)

```

9   type="group" extends="NXobject">
10
11 <doc>
12   A very simple NeXus NXDL file
13 </doc>
14 <group type="NXentry">
15   <group type="NXdata">
16     <field name="counts" type="NX_INT" units="NX_UNITLESS">
17       <doc>counts recorded by detector</doc>
18     </field>
19     <field name="two_theta" type="NX_FLOAT" units="NX_ANGLE">
20       <doc>rotation angle of detector arm</doc>
21     </field>
22   </group>
23 </group>
24 </definition>

```

Complete examples of reading and writing NeXus data files are provided [later](#). This chapter has several examples of writing and reading NeXus data files. If you want to define the format of a particular type of NeXus file for your own use, e.g. as the standard output from a program, you are encouraged to *publish* the format using this XML format. An example of how to do this is shown in the [Creating a NXDL Specification](#) section.

## A Set of Subroutines

NeXus data files are high-level so the user only needs to know how the data are referenced in the file but does not need to be concerned where the data are stored in the file. Thus, the data are most easily accessed using a subroutine library tuned to the specifics of the data format.

In the past, a data format was defined by a document describing the precise location of every item in the data file, either as row and column numbers in an ASCII file, or as record and byte numbers in a binary file. It is the job of the subroutine library to retrieve the data. This subroutine library is commonly called an application-programmer interface or API.

For example, in NeXus, a program to read in the wavelength of an experiment would contain lines similar to the following:

### Simple example of reading data using the NeXus API

```

1 NXopendata (fileID, "wavelength");
2 NXgetdata (fileID, lambda);
3 NXclosedata (fileID);

```

In this example, the program requests the value of the data that has the label `wavelength`, storing the result in the variable `lambda`. `fileID` is a file identifier that is provided by NeXus when the file is opened.

We shall provide a more complete example when we have discussed the contents of the NeXus files.

## Scientific Community

NeXus began as a group of scientists with the goal of defining a common data storage format to exchange experimental results and to exchange ideas about how to analyze them.

The *NeXus Community* provides the scientific data, advice, and continued involvement with the NeXus standard. NeXus provides a forum for the scientific community to exchange ideas in data storage.

The NeXus International Advisory Committee (NIAC) supervises the development and maintenance of the NeXus common data format for neutron, X-ray, and muon science through the NeXus class definitions and oversees the maintenance of the NeXus Application Programmer Interface (NAPI) as well as the technical infrastructure.

## Representation of data examples

Most of the examples of data files have been written in a format intended to show the structure of the file rather than the data content. In some cases, where it is useful, some of the data is shown. Consider this prototype example:

### example of NeXus data file structure

```
1 entry:NXentry
2   instrument:NXinstrument
3     detector:NXdetector
4       data:[]
5         @long_name = "strip detector 1-D array"
6         bins:[0, 1, 2, ... 1023]
7           @long_name = "bin index numbers"
8   sample:NXsample
9     name = "zeolite"
10    data:NXdata
11      @signal = "data"
12      @axes = ["bins", "bins"]
13      @bins_indices = [0, 1]
14      data --> /entry/instrument/detector/data
15      bins --> /entry/instrument/detector/bins
```

Some words on the notation:

- Hierarchy is represented by indentation. Objects on the same indentation level are in the same group
- The combination `name:NXclass` denotes a NeXus group with name `name` and class `NXclass`.
- A simple name (no following class) denotes a field. An equal sign is used to show the value, where this is important to the example.
- Sometimes, a data type is specified and possibly a set of dimensions. For example, `energy:NX_NUMBER[NE]` says `energy` is a 1-D array of numbers (either integer or floating point) of length `NE`.
- Attributes are noted as `@name="value"` pairs. The `@` symbol only indicates this is an attribute and is not part of the attribute name.
- Links are shown with a text arrow `-->` indicating the source of the link (using HDF5 notation listing the sequence of *names*).

Line 1 shows that there is one group at the root level of the file named `entry`. This group is of type `NXentry` which means it conforms to the specification of the `NXentry` NeXus base class. Using the HDF5 nomenclature, we would refer to this as the `/entry` group.

Lines 2, 8, and 10: The `/entry` group contains three subgroups: `instrument`, `sample`, and `data`. These groups are of type `NXinstrument`, `NXsample`, and `NXdata`, respectively.

Line 4: The data of this example is stored in the `/entry/instrument/detector` group in the dataset called `data` (HDF5 path is `/entry/instrument/detector/data`). The indication of `data:\[]` says that `data` is an array of unspecified dimension(s).

Line 5: There is one attribute of `/entry/instrument/detector/data`: `long_name`. This attribute *might* be used by a plotting program as the axis title.

Line 6 (reading `bins:\[0, 1, 2, ... 1023]`) shows that `bins` is a 1-D array of length presumably 1024. A small, representative selection of values are shown.

Line 7: an attribute that shows a descriptive name of `/entry/instrument/detector/bins`. This attribute might be used by a NeXus client while plotting the data.

Line 9 (reading `name = "zeolite"`) shows how a string value is represented.

Line 11 says that the default data to be plotted is called `data`.

Line 12 says that each axis *dimension scale* of `data` is described by the field called `bins`.

Line 13 says that `bins` will be used for axis 0 and axis 1 of `data`.

Lines 14-15: The `/entry/data` group has two datasets that are actually linked as shown to data sets in a different group. (As you will see later, the `NXdata` group enables NeXus clients to easily determine what to offer for display on a default plot.)

## Class path specification

In some places in this documentation, a path may be shown using the class types rather than names. For example:

```
/NXentry/NXinstrument/NXcrystal/wavelength
```

identifies a dataset called `wavelength` that is inside a group of type `NXcrystal` ...

As it turns out, this syntax is the syntax used in NXDL [link](#) specifications. This syntax is also used when the exact name of each group is either unimportant or not specified.

If default names are taken for each class, then the above class path is expressed as this equivalent HDF5 path:

```
/entry/instrument/crystal/wavelength
```

In some places in this documentation, where clarity is needed to specify both the path and class name, you may find this equivalent path:

```
/entry:NXentry/instrument:NXinstrument/crystal:NXcrystal/wavelength
```

## Motivations for the NeXus standard in the Scientific Community

By the early 1990s, several groups of scientists in the fields of neutron and X-ray science had recognized a common and troublesome pattern in the data acquired at various scientific instruments and user facilities. Each of these instruments and facilities had a locally defined format for recording experimental data. With lots of different formats, much of the scientists' time was being wasted in the task of writing import readers for processing and analysis programs. As is common, the exact information to be documented from each instrument in a data file evolves, such as the implementation of new high-throughput detectors. Many of these formats lacked the generality to extend to the new data to be stored, thus another new format was devised. In such environments, the documentation of each generation of data format is often lacking.

Three parallel developments have led to NeXus:

1. *June 1994*: Mark Könnecke (Paul Scherer Institute, Switzerland) made a proposal using netCDF for the European neutron scattering community while working at the ISIS pulsed neutron facility.
2. *August 1994*: Jon Tischler and Mitch Nelson (Oak Ridge National Laboratory, USA) proposed an HDF-based format as a standard for data storage at the Advanced Photon Source (Argonne National Laboratory, USA).
3. *October 1996*: Przemek Klosowski (National Institute of Standards and Technology, USA) produced a first draft of the NeXus proposal drawing on ideas from both sources.

These scientists proposed methods to store data using a self-describing, extensible format that was already in broad use in other scientific disciplines. Their proposals formed the basis for the current design of the NeXus standard which was developed across three workshops organized by Ray Osborn (ANL), *SoftNeSS'94* (Argonne Oct. 1994), *SoftNeSS'95* (NIST Sept. 1995), and *SoftNeSS'96* (Argonne Oct. 1996), attended by representatives of a range of neutron and X-ray facilities. The NeXus API was released in late 1997. Basic motivations for this standard were:

1. *Simple plotting*
2. *Unified format for reduction and analysis*
3. *Defined dictionary of terms*

## Simple plotting

An important motivation for the design of NeXus was to simplify the creation of a default plot view. While the best representation of a set of observations will vary depending on various conditions, a good suggestion is often known *a priori*. This suggestion is described in the [NXdata](#) group so that any program that is used to browse NeXus data files can provide a *best representation* without request for user input. A description of how simple plotting is facilitated in NeXus is shown in the section titled [Find the plottable data](#).

## Unified format for reduction and analysis

Another important motivation for NeXus, indeed the *raison d'être*, was the community need to analyze data from different user facilities. A single data format that is in use at a variety of facilities would provide a major benefit to the scientific community. This should be capable of describing any type of data from the scientific experiments, at any step of the process from data acquisition to data reduction and analysis. This unified format also needs to allow data to be written to storage as efficiently as possible to enable use with high-speed data acquisition.

*Self-description*, combined with a reliance on a *multi-platform* (and thereby *portable*) data storage format, are valued components of a data storage format where the longevity of the data is expected to be longer than the lifetime of the facility at which it is acquired. As the name implies, self-description within data files is the practice where the structure of the information contained within the file is evident from the file itself. A multi-platform data storage format must faithfully represent the data identically on a variety of computer systems, regardless of the bit order or byte order or word size native to the computer.

The scientific community continues to grow the various types of data to be expressed in data files. This practice is expected to continue as part of the investigative process. To gain broad acceptance in the scientific user community, any data storage format proposed as a standard would need to be *extendable* and continue to provide a means to express the latest notions of scientific data.

The maintenance cost of common data structures meeting the motivations above (self-describing, portable, and extendable) is not insurmountable but is often well-beyond the research funding of individual members of the muon, neutron, and X-ray science communities. Since it is these members that drive the selection of a data storage format, it is necessary for the user cost to be as minimal as possible. In this case, experience has shown that the format must be in the *public-domain* for it to be commonly accepted as a standard. A benefit of the public-domain aspect is that the source code for the API is open and accessible, a point which has received notable comment in the scientific literature.

More recently, NeXus has recognized that many facilities face increased performance requirements and support for writing HDF5 directly in high level languages has become better (for example with h5py for Python). For that reason HDF5 has become the default recommended storage format for NeXus and the use of the NeXus API for new projects is no longer encouraged. In NeXus has recently defined encoding of information in ways that are not compatible with the existing HDF4 and XML container formats (using attribute arrays). The move to HDF5 is strongly advised.

For cases where legacy support of the XML or HDF4 storage backends is required the NeXus API will still be maintained though and provide an upgrade path via the utilities to convert between the different backends.

## Defined dictionary of terms

A necessary feature of a standard for the interchange of scientific data is a ` *defined dictionary* (or *lexicography*) of terms. This dictionary declares the expected spelling and meaning of terms when they are present so that it is not necessary to search for all the variant forms of *energy* when it is used to describe data (e.g., E, e, keV, eV, nrg, ...).

NeXus recognized that each scientific specialty has developed a unique dictionary and needs to categorize data using those terms. NeXus Application Definitions provide the means to document the lexicography for use in data files of that scientific specialty.

## NAPI: The NeXus Application Programming Interface

The NeXus API consists of routines to read and write NeXus data files. It was written to provide a simple to use and consistent common interface for all supported backends (XML, HDF4 and HDF5) to scientific programmers and other users of the NeXus Data Standard.

---

**Note:** It is not necessary to use the NAPI to write or read NeXus data files. The intent of the NAPI is to simplify the programming effort to use the HDF programming interface. There are *Examples of writing and reading NeXus data files* to help you understand.

---

This section will provide a brief overview of the available functionality. Further documentation of the NeXus Application Programming Interface (NAPI) for bindings to specific programming language can be found in the [NAPI](#) chapter and may be downloaded from the NeXus development site.<sup>1</sup>

For an even more detailed description of the internal workings of NAPI see the [NeXus Internals manual](#), copied from the NeXus code repository. That document is written for programmers who want to work on the NAPI itself. If you are new to NeXus and just want to implement basic file reading or writing you should not start by reading that.

## How do I write a NeXus file?

The NeXus Application Program Interface (NAPI) provides a set of subroutines that make it easy to read and write NeXus files. These subroutines are available in C, Fortran 77, Fortran 90, Java, Python, C++, and IDL.

The API uses a very simple *state* model to navigate through a NeXus file. (Compare this example with [NAPI Simple 2-D Write Example \(C, F77, F90\)](#), in the [NAPI](#) chapter, using the native HDF5 commands.) When you open a file, the API provides a file *handle*, which stores the current location, i.e. which group and/or field is currently open. Read and write operations then act on the currently open entity. Following the simple example titled [Example structure of a simple data file](#), we walk through a schematic of NeXus program written in C (without any error checking or real data).

---

<sup>1</sup> <https://github.com/nexusformat/code/releases/>

## Writing a simple NeXus file using NAPI

**Note:** We assume the program can define the arrays `tth` and `counts`, each length `n`. This part has been omitted from the example code.

```

1 #include "napi.h"
2
3 int main()
4 {
5     /* we start with known arrays tth and counts, each length n */
6     NXhandle fileID;
7     NXopen ("NXfile.nxs", NXACC_CREATE, &fileID);
8     NXmakegroup (fileID, "Scan", "NXentry");
9     NX.opengroup (fileID, "Scan", "NXentry");
10    NXmakegroup (fileID, "data", "NXdata");
11    NX.opengroup (fileID, "data", "NXdata");
12    NXmakedata (fileID, "two_theta", NX_FLOAT32, 1, &n);
13    NX.opendata (fileID, "two_theta");
14    NXputdata (fileID, tth);
15    NXputattr (fileID, "units", "degrees", 7, NX_CHAR);
16    NXclosedata (fileID); /* two_theta */
17    NXmakedata (fileID, "counts", NX_FLOAT32, 1, &n);
18    NX.opendata (fileID, "counts");
19    NXputdata (fileID, counts);
20    NXclosedata (fileID); /* counts */
21    NXclosegroup (fileID); /* data */
22    NXclosegroup (fileID); /* Scan */
23    NXclose (&fileID);
24    return;
25 }
```

## program analysis

1. **line 7:** Open the file `NXfile.nxs` with *create* access (implying write access). NAPI<sup>2</sup> returns a file identifier of type `NXhandle`.
2. **line 7:** Next, we create the `NXentry` group to contain the scan using `NXmakegroup()` and then open it for access using `NX.opengroup()`.<sup>3</sup>
3. **line 10:** The plottable data is contained within an `NXdata` group, which must also be created and opened.
4. **line 12:** To create a field, call `NXmakedata()`, specifying the data name, type (`NX_FLOAT32`), rank (in this case, 1), and length of the array (`n`). Then, it can be opened for writing.<sup>4</sup>
5. **line 14:** Write the data using `NXputdata()`.
6. **line 15:** With the field still open, we can also add some field attributes, such as the data units,<sup>5</sup> which are specified as a character string (`type="NX_CHAR"`)<sup>7</sup> that is 7 bytes long.
7. **line 16:** Then we close the field before opening another. In fact, the API will do this automatically if you attempt to open another field, but it is better style to close it yourself.

<sup>2</sup> NAPI: NeXus Application Programmer Interface (frozen)

<sup>3</sup> See the chapter *Base Class Definitions* for more information.

<sup>4</sup> The *NeXus Data Types* section describes the available data types, such as `NX_FLOAT32` and `NX_CHAR`.

<sup>5</sup> *NeXus Data Units*

<sup>6</sup> The NeXus rule about data units is described in the *NeXus Data Units* section.

<sup>7</sup> see *Field Types allowed in NXDL specifications*

8. **line 17:** The remaining fields in this group are added in a similar fashion. Note that the indentation whenever a new field or group are opened is just intended to make the structure of the NeXus file more transparent.
9. **line 20:** Finally, close the groups (NXdata and NXentry) before closing the file itself.

## How do I read a NeXus file?

Reading a NeXus file works in the same way by traversing the tree with the handle.

This schematic C code will read the two-theta array created in the *example above*. (Again, compare this example with *Reading a simple NeXus file using native HDF5 commands in C.*)

## Reading a simple NeXus file using NAPI

```

1 NXopen ('NXfile.nxs', NXACC_READ, &fileID);
2 NXopengroup (fileID, "Scan", "NXentry");
3 NXopengroup (fileID, "data", "NXdata");
4 NXopendata (fileID, "two_theta");
5 NXgetinfo (fileID, &rank, dims, &datatype);
6 NXmalloc ((void **) &tth, rank, dims, datatype);
7 NXgetdata (fileID, tth);
8 NXclosedata (fileID);
9 NXclosegroup (fileID);
10 NXclosegroup (fileID);
11 NXclose (fileID);
```

## How do I browse a NeXus file?

NeXus files can also be viewed by a command-line browser, nxbrowse, which is included as a helper tool in the *NeXus API* distribution. The *following* is an example session of nxbrowse nxbrowse to view a data file.

## Using nxbrowse

```

1 %> nxbrowse lrcts3701.nxs
2
3 NXBrowse 3.0.0. Copyright (C) 2000 R. Osborn, M. Koennecke, P. Klosowski
4     NeXus_version = 1.3.3
5     file_name = lrcts3701.nxs
6     file_time = 2001-02-11 00:02:35-0600
7     user = EAG/RO
8 NX> dir
9     NX Group : Histogram1 (NXentry)
10    NX Group : Histogram2 (NXentry)
11 NX> open Histogram1
12 NX/Histogram1> dir
13    NX Data  : title[44] (NX_CHAR)
14    NX Data  : analysis[7] (NX_CHAR)
15    NX Data  : start_time[24] (NX_CHAR)
16    NX Data  : end_time[24] (NX_CHAR)
```

(continues on next page)

(continued from previous page)

```

17 NX Data : run_number (NX_INT32)
18 NX Group : sample (NXsample)
19 NX Group : LRMECS (NXinstrument)
20 NX Group : monitor1 (NXmonitor)
21 NX Group : monitor2 (NXmonitor)
22 NX Group : data (NXdata)
23 NX/Histogram1> read title
24 title[44] (NX_CHAR) = MgB2 PDOS 43.37g 8K 120meV E0@240Hz T0@120Hz
25 NX/Histogram1> open data
26 NX/Histogram1/data> dir
27 NX Data : title[44] (NX_CHAR)
28 NX Data : data[148,750] (NX_INT32)
29 NX Data : time_of_flight[751] (NX_FLOAT32)
30 NX Data : polar_angle[148] (NX_FLOAT32)
31 NX/Histogram1/data> read time_of_flight
32 time_of_flight[751] (NX_FLOAT32) = [ 1900.000000 1902.000000 1904.000000 ...]
33     units = microseconds
34     long_name = Time-of-Flight [microseconds]
35 NX/Histogram1/data> read data
36 data[148,750] (NX_INT32) = [ 1 1 0 ...]
37     units = counts
38     signal = 1
39     long_name = Neutron Counts
40     axes = polar_angle:time_of_flight
41 NX/Histogram1/data> close
42 NX/Histogram1> close
43 NX> quit

```

## program analysis

1. **line 1:** Start nxbrowse from the UNIX command line and open file lrcs3701.nxs from IPNS/LRMECS.
2. **line 8:** List the contents of the current group.
3. **line 11:** Open the NeXus group Histogram1.
4. **line 23:** Print the contents of the NeXus data labeled title.
5. **line 41:** Close the current group.
6. **line 43:** Quits nxbrowse.

The source code of nxbrowse<sup>8</sup> provides an example of how to write a NeXus reader. The test programs included in the *NeXus API* may also be useful to study.

<sup>8</sup> <https://github.com/nexusformat/code/blob/master/applications/NXbrowse/NXbrowse.c>

## 1.2 NeXus Design

This chapter actually defines the rules to use for writing valid NeXus files. An explanation of NeXus objects is followed by the definition of NeXus coordinate systems, the rules for structuring files and the rules for storing single items of data.

The structure of NeXus files is extremely flexible, allowing the storage both of simple data sets, such as a single data array and its axes, and also of highly complex data, such as the simulation results or an entire multi-component instrument. This flexibility is a necessity as NeXus strives to capture data from a wide variety of applications in X-ray, muSR and neutron scattering. The flexibility is achieved through a hierarchical structure, with related *fields* collected together into *groups*, making NeXus files easy to navigate, even without any documentation. NeXus files are self-describing, and should be easy to understand, at least by those familiar with the experimental technique.

### 1.2.1 NeXus Objects and Terms

Before discussing the design of NeXus in greater detail it is necessary to define the objects and terms used by NeXus. These are:

**Groups** Levels in the NeXus hierarchy. May contain fields and other groups.

**Fields** Multidimensional arrays and scalars representing the actual data to be stored

**Attributes** Attributes containing additional metadata can be assigned to groups, fields, or *files*.

**Links** Elements which point to data stored in another place in the file hierarchy

**NeXus Base Classes** Dictionaries of names possible in the various types of NeXus groups

**NeXus Application Definitions** Describe the minimum content of a NeXus file for a particular usage case

In the following sections these elements of NeXus files will be defined in more detail.

#### Groups

NeXus files consist of data groups, which contain fields and/or other groups to form a hierarchical structure. This hierarchy is designed to make it easy to navigate a NeXus file by storing related fields together. Data groups are identified both by a name, which must be unique within a particular group, and a class. There can be multiple groups with the same class but they must have different names (based on the HDF rules).

For the class names used with NeXus data groups the prefix NX is reserved. Thus all NeXus class names start with NX.

#### Fields

Fields (also called data fields, data items or data sets) contain the essential information stored in a NeXus file. They can be scalar values or multidimensional arrays of a variety of sizes (1-byte, 2-byte, 4-byte, 8-byte) and types (integers, floats, characters). The fields may store both experimental results (counts, detector angles, etc), and other information associated with the experiment (start and end times, user names, etc). Fields are identified by their names, which must be unique within the group in which they are stored. Some fields have engineering units to be specified. In some cases, such in NXdetector/data, a field is expected to have be an array of several dimensions.

## Examples of fields

**variable (NX\_NUMBER)** Dimension scale defining an axis of the data.

**variable\_errors (NX\_NUMBER)** Errors (uncertainties) associated with axis variable.

**wavelength (NX\_FLOAT)** wavelength of radiation, `units="NX_FLOAT"`

**chemical\_formula (NX\_CHAR)** The chemical formula specified using CIF conventions.

**name (NX\_CHAR)** Name of user responsible for this entry.

**data (NX\_NUMBER)** Data values from the detector, `units="NX_ANY"`

In the case of streaming data acquisition, when time stamped values of data are collected, fields can be replaced with [NXlog](#) structures of the same name. For example, if time stamped data for wavelength is being streamed, wavelength would not be an array but a [NXlog](#) structure.

## Attributes

Attributes are extra (meta-)information that are associated with particular groups or fields. They are used to annotate data, e.g. with physical units or calibration offsets, and may be scalar numbers or character strings. In addition, NeXus uses attributes to identify plottable data and their axes, etc. A description of some of the many possible attributes can be found in the next table:

### Examples of attributes

**units (NX\_CHAR)** Data units given as character strings, must conform to the NeXus units standard.

See the [NeXus Data Units](#) section for details.

**signal (NX\_CHAR)** Defines which data set contains the signal to be plotted. Use `signal="{dataset_name}"` where {dataset\_name} is the name of a field (or link to a field) in the [NXdata](#) group. The field referred to by the *signal* attribute might be referred to as the “signal data”.

**long\_name (NX\_CHAR)** Defines title of signal data or axis label of dimension scale

**calibration\_status (NX\_CHAR)** Defines status of data value - set to Nominal or Measured

**data\_offset (NX\_INT)** Rank values of offsets to use for each dimension if the data is not in C storage order

**interpretation (NX\_CHAR)** Describes how to display the data. `rgba`, `hsla` and `cmyk` are  $(n \times m \times 4)$  arrays, where the 4 channels are the colour channels appropriately. If the image data does not contain an alpha channel, then the array should simply be  $(n \times m \times 3)$ . Allowed values include:

- `scaler` (0-D data)
- `spectrum` (1-D data)
- `image` (2-D data)
- `rgba-image` (3-D data)
- `hsla-image` (3-D data)
- `cmyk-image` (3-D data)
- `vertex` (3-D data)

## File attributes

Finally, some attributes are defined at file level. They are specified in the base class `NXroot`.

## Links

### Python h5py code to make NeXus links

The section titled [Python Examples using h5py](#) provides example python code to create links (both internal and external) in NeXus data files. See the routines:

- `{hdf5_object}.id.link()`
- `h5py.ExternalLink()`

Links are pointers to existing data somewhere else. The concept is very much like symbolic links in a unix filesystem. The NeXus definition sometimes requires to have access to the same data in different groups in the same file. For example: detector data is stored in the `NXinstrument/NXdetector` group but may be needed in `NXdata` for automatic plotting. Rather than replicating the data, NeXus uses links in such situations. See the [figure](#) for a more descriptive representation of the concept of linking.

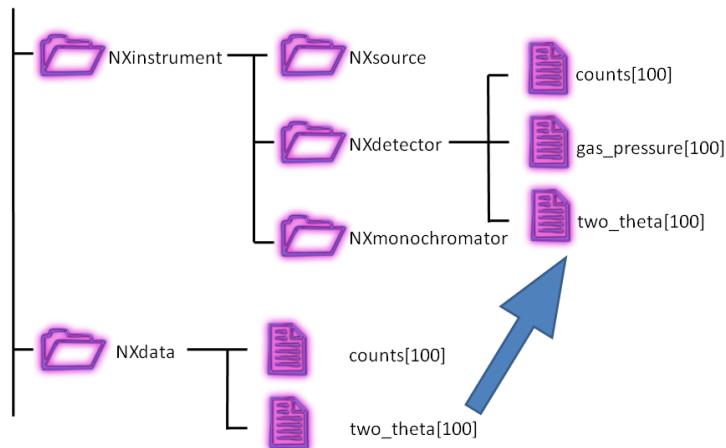


Fig. 1: Linking in a NeXus file

NeXus links are HDF5 hard links with an additional `target` attribute. The `target` attribute is added<sup>1</sup> for NeXus

<sup>1</sup> When using the NAPI, the `target` attribute is added automatically. When the NAPI is not used to write NeXus/HDF5 files, this attribute must be added. Here are the steps to follow:

1. Get the HDF5 reference ID of the source item (`field`, `group`, or `link`) to be linked.
2. If the ID does not have a `target` attribute defined: #. Get the absolute HDF5 address<sup>3</sup> of the ID. #. Create a `target` attribute for the ID. #. Set the `target` attribute's value to the absolute HDF5 address of the ID.
3. Create an HDF5 hard link<sup>4</sup> to the ID at the desired (new) HDF5 address.

<sup>3</sup> When using the `target` attribute, **always** specify the HDF5 address as an *absolute\** address (starts from the HDF5 root, such as: `/entry/instrument/detector/polar_angle`) rather than a **relative** address (starting from the current group, such as: `detector/polar_angle`).

<sup>4</sup> HDF5 hard link: [https://portal.hdfgroup.org/display/HDF5/H5L\\_CREATE\\_HARD](https://portal.hdfgroup.org/display/HDF5/H5L_CREATE_HARD)

to distinguish the HDF5 path to the *original*<sup>2</sup> dataset. The value of the `target` attribute is the HDF5 path<sup>3</sup> to the *original* dataset.

NeXus links are best understood with an example. The canonical location (expressed as a NeXus class path) to store wavelength (see *Strategies: The wavelength*) has been:

```
/NXentry/NXinstrument/NXcrystal/wavelength
```

An alternative location for this field makes sense to many, especially those not using a crystal to create monochromatic radiation:

```
/NXentry/NXinstrument/NXmonochromator/wavelength
```

These two fields might be hard linked together in a NeXus data file (using HDF5 paths such `/entry/instrument`):

```
entry:NXentry
...
instrument:NXinstrument
...
crystal:NXcrystal
...
wavelength:NX_FLOAT = 154.
@target="/entry/instrument/crystal/wavelength"
@units="pm"
...
monochromator:NXmonochromator
...
wavelength --> "/entry/instrument/crystal/wavelength"
```

It is possible that the linked field or group has a different name than the original. One obvious use of this capability is to adapt to a specific requirement of an application definition. For example, suppose some application definition required the specification of wavelength as a field named *lambda* in the entry group. This requirement can be satisfied easily:

```
entry:NXentry
...
instrument:NXinstrument
...
crystal:NXcrystal
...
wavelength:NX_FLOAT = 154.
@target="/entry/instrument/crystal/wavelength"
@units="pm"
...
monochromator:NXmonochromator
...
wavelength --> "/entry/instrument/crystal/wavelength"
...
lambda --> "/entry/instrument/crystal/wavelength"
```

<sup>2</sup> The notion of an *original* dataset with regard to links is a NeXus abstraction. In truth, HDF5 makes no distinction which is the *original* dataset. But, when the file is viewed with a tool such as *h5dump*, confusion often occurs over which dataset is original and which is a link to the original. Actually, both HDF5 paths point to the exact, same dataset which exists at a specific offset in the HDF5 file.

See the *Frequently Asked Questions* question: **I'm using links to place data in two places. Which one should be the data and which one is the link?**

## External File Links

NeXus also allows for links to external files. Consider the case where an instrument uses a detector with a closed-system software support provided by a commercial vendor. This system writes its images into a NeXus HDF5 file. The instrument's data acquisition system writes instrument metadata into another NeXus HDF5 file. In this case, the instrument metadata file might link to the data in the detector image file. Here is an example (from Diamond Light Source) showing an external file link in HDF5:

### Example of linking to data in an external HDF5 file

```

1 EXTERNAL_LINK "data" {
2     TARGETFILE "/dls/i22/data/2012/sm7594-1/i22-69201-Pilatus2M.h5"
3     TARGETPATH "entry/instrument/detector/data"
4 }
```

---

**Note:** The NAPI code<sup>5</sup> makes no target attribute assignment for links to external files. It is best to avoid using the target attribute with external file links.

---

The NAPI maintains a group attribute @napimount that provides a URL to a group in another file. More information about the @napimount attribute is described in the *NeXus Programmers Reference*.<sup>6</sup>

## Combining NeXus links and External File Links

Consider the case described in *Links to Data in External HDF5 Files*, where numerical data are provided in two different HDF5 files and a *master* NeXus HDF5 file links to the data through external file links. HDF5 will not allow hard links to be constructed with these data objects in the master file. An error such as *Interfile hard links are not allowed* (as generated from h5py) will arise. This makes sense since there is no such data object in the file.

Instead, it is necessary to make an external file link at each place in the master where external data is to be represented.

## NeXus Base Classes

Data groups often describe objects in the experiment (monitors, detectors, monochromators, etc.), so that the contents (both fields and/or other groups) comprise the properties of that object. NeXus has defined a set of standard objects, or *base classes*, out of which a NeXus file can be constructed. This is each data group is identified by a name and a class. The group class, defines the type of object and the properties that it can contain, whereas the group name defines a unique instance of that class. These classes are defined in XML using the NeXus Definition Language (NXDL) format. All NeXus class types adopted by the NIAC *must* begin with NX. Classes not adopted by the NIAC *must not* start with NX.

---

**Note:** NeXus base classes are the components used to build the NeXus data structure.

---

Not all classes define physical objects. Some refer to logical groupings of experimental information, such as plottable data, sample environment logs, beam profiles, etc. There can be multiple instances of each class. On the other hand, a typical NeXus file will only contain a small subset of the possible classes.

<sup>5</sup> NX5nativeexternallink(): <https://github.com/nexusformat/code/blob/fe8ddd287ee33961982931e2016cc25f76f95edd/src/napi5.c#L2248>

<sup>6</sup> <https://manual.nexusformat.org/pdf/NeXusIntern.pdf>

---

**Note:** The groups, fields, links, and attributes of a base class definition are all **optional**, with a few particular exceptions in NXentry and NXdata. They are named in the specification to describe the exact spelling and usage of the term when it appears.

---

NeXus base classes are not proper classes in the same sense as used in object oriented programming languages. In fact the use of the term classes is actually misleading but has established itself during the development of NeXus. NeXus base classes are rather dictionaries of field names and their meanings which are permitted in a particular NeXus group implementing the NeXus class. This sounds complicated but becomes easy if you consider that most NeXus groups describe instrument components. Then for example, a NXmonochromator base class describes all the possible field names which NeXus allows to be used to describe a monochromator.

Most NeXus base classes represent instrument components. Some are used as containers to structure information in a file (NXentry, NXcollection, NXinstrument, NXprocess, NXparameters). But there are some base classes which have special uses which need to be mentioned here:

**NXdata** NXdata is used to identify the default plottable data. The notion of a default plot of data is a basic motivation of NeXus. (see *Simple plotting*)

**NXlog** NXlog is used to store time stamped data like the log of a temperature controller. Basically you give a start time, and arrays with a difference in seconds to the start time and the values read.

**NXcollection** NXcollection is used to gather together any set of terms. Anything (groups, fields, or attributes) placed in an NXcollection group will not be validated. One use is to use this as a container class for the various control system variables from a beamline or instrument.

**NXnote** This group provides a place to store general notes, images, video or whatever. A mime type is stored together with a binary blob of data. Please use this only for auxiliary information, for example an image of your sample, or a photo of your boss.

### **NXtransformations**

**NXtransformations** is used to gather together any set of movable or fixed elements positioning the device described by the class that contains this. Supersedes NXgeometry.

### **NXgeometry (superceded by NXtransformations,<sup>7</sup>)**

NXgeometry and its subgroups NXtranslation, NXorientation, NXshape are used to store absolute positions in the laboratory coordinate system or to define shapes.

These groups can appear anywhere in the NeXus hierarchy, where needed. Preferably close to the component they annotate or in a NXcollection. All of the base classes are documented in the reference manual.

### **NXdata Facilitates Automatic Plotting**

The most notable special base class (or *group* in NeXus) is NXdata. NXdata is the answer to a basic motivation of NeXus to facilitate automatic plotting of data. NXdata is designed to contain the main dataset and its associated dimension scales (axes) of a NeXus data file. The usage scenario is that an automatic data plotting program just opens a NXentry and then continues to search for any NXdata groups. These NXdata groups represent the plottable data. An algorithm for identifying the default plottable data is *presented* in the chapter titled *Rules for Storing Data Items in NeXus Files*.

---

<sup>7</sup> see: <https://github.com/nexusformat/definitions/issues/397>

## Where to Store Metadata

There are many ways to store metadata about your experiments. Already there are many fields in the various base classes to store the more common or general metadata, such as wavelength. (For wavelength, see the *Strategies: The wavelength* section.)

One common scheme is to store the metadata all in one group. If the group is to be validated for content, then there are several possibilities, as shown in the next table:

base class	intent
<i>NXnote</i>	to store additional information
<i>NXlog</i>	information that is time-stamped
<i>NXparameters</i>	parameters for processing or analysis
<i>NXcollection</i>	to store <i>any</i> unvalidated content

If the content of the metadata group is to be excluded from validation, then store it in a *NXcollection* group.

## NeXus Application Definitions

The objects described so far provide us with the means to store data from a wide variety of instruments, simulations, or processed data as resulting from data analysis. But NeXus strives to express strict standards for certain applications of NeXus, too. The tool which NeXus uses for the expression of such strict standards is the NeXus *Application Definition*. A NeXus Application Definition describes which groups and data items have to be present in a file in order to properly describe an application of NeXus. For example for describing a powder diffraction experiment. An application definition may also declare terms which are optional in the data file. Typically an application definition will contain only a small subset of the many groups and fields defined in NeXus. NeXus application definitions are also expressed in the NeXus Definition Language (NXDL). A tool exists which allows one to validate a NeXus file against a given application definition.

---

**Note:** NeXus application definitions define the *minimum required* information necessary to satisfy data analysis or other data processing.

---

Another way to look at a NeXus application definition is as a contract between a file producer (writer) and a file consumer (reader).

The contract reads: *If you write your files following a particular NeXus application definition, I can process these files with my software.*

Yet another way to look at a NeXus application definition is to understand it as an interface definition between data files and the software which uses this file. Much like an interface in the Java or other modern object oriented programming languages.

In contrast to NeXus base classes, NeXus supports inheritance in application definitions.

Please note that a NeXus Application Definition will only define the bare minimum of data necessary to perform common analysis with data. Practical files will nearly always contain more data. One of the beauties of NeXus is that it is always possible to add more data to a file without breaking its compliance with its application definition.

## 1.2.2 NeXus Geometry

NeXus supports description of the shape, position and orientation of objects in *The NeXus Coordinate System*. Position and orientation can be defined as *Coordinate Transformations* using the `NXtransformations` class. *Shape Descriptions* use the `NXoff_geometry` or `NXcylindrical_geometry` class.

You may come across old files which use *Legacy Geometry Descriptions*.

### The NeXus Coordinate System

The NeXus coordinate system is shown *below*. Note that it is the same as that used by *McStas* (<http://mestas.org>). This choice is arbitrary and any other choice should be possible as long as it is used consistently and application code that reads NeXus files does not assume any prior knowledge of the chosen coordinate system.

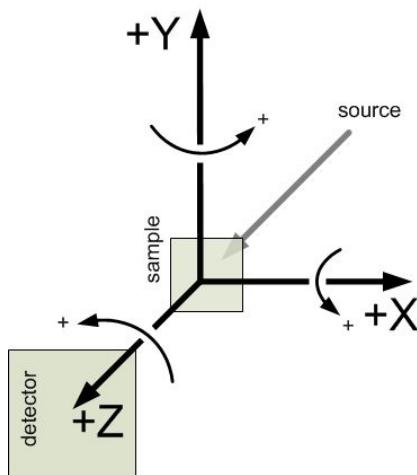


Fig. 2: NeXus coordinate system, as viewed from detector

---

**Note:** The NeXus definition of  $+z$  is opposite to that in the IUCr International Tables for Crystallography, volume G.

---

### Coordinate Transformations

In the recommended way of dealing with geometry NeXus uses a series of transformations to place objects in space. In this world view, the absolute position of a component or a detector pixel with respect to the laboratory coordinate system is calculated by applying a series of translations and rotations. Thus a rotation or translation operation transforms the whole coordinate system and gives rise to a new local coordinate system. These transformations between coordinate systems are mathematical operations and can be expressed as matrices and their combination as matrix multiplication. A very important aspect is that the order of application of the individual operations *does* matter. The mathematics behind this is well known and used in such applications such as industrial robot control, flight dynamics and computer games. The beauty in this comes from the fact that the operations to apply map easily to instrument settings and constants. It is also easy to analyze the contribution of each individual operation: this can be studied under the condition that all other operations are at a zero setting.

In order to use coordinate transformations, several pieces of information need to be known:

**Type** The type of operation: rotation or translation

**Direction** The direction of the translation or the direction of the rotation axis

**Value** The angle of rotation or the length of the translation

**Order** The order of operations to apply to move a component into its place.

## Coordinate Transformation Field And Attributes

NeXus chooses to encode information about each transformation as a field in an NXtransformations group in the following way:

**value** This is represented in the actual data of the field or the **value** of the transformation. Its actual name should relate to the physical device used to effect the transformation.

The coordinate transformation attributes are:

**transformation\_type** This specifies the **type** of transformation and is either *rotation* or *translation* and describes the kind of operation performed

**vector (NX\_NUMBER)** This is a set of 3 values forming a unit vector for **direction** that describes the components of either the direction of the rotation axis or the direction along which the translation happens.

**offset (NX\_NUMBER)** This is a set of 3 values forming the offset vector for a translation to apply before applying the operation of the actual transformation. Without this offset attribute, additional virtual translations would need to be introduced in order to encode mechanical offsets in the axis.

**depends\_on** The **order** is encoded through this attribute. The value is the name of the transformation upon which the current transformation depends on.

As each transformation represents possible motion by a physical device, this dependency expresses the attachment order; thus, the current device is attached to (or mounted on) the next device referred to by the attribute.

Allowed values for depends\_on are:

- . A dot ends the depends\_on chain

- name** The name of a field within the enclosing group

- dir/name** The name of a field further along the path

- /dir/dir/name** An absolute path to a field in another group

In addition, for each beamline component, there is a depends\_on attribute that points to the field at the head of the axis dependency chain. For example, consider an eulerian cradle as used on a four-circle diffractometer. Such a cradle has a dependency chain of `phi:chi:rotation_angle`. Then the depends\_on field in `NXsample` would have the value `phi`.

## NeXus Transformation encoding

Transformation encoding for an eulerian cradle on a four-circle diffractometer

```
1 sample:NXsample
2   transforms:NXtransformations
3     rotation_angle
4       @transformation_type=rotation
5       @vector=0,1,0
6       @offset=0,0,0
7       @depends_on=.
8     chi
9       @transformation_type=rotation
10      @vector=0,0,1
11      @offset=0,0,0
12      @depends_on=rotation_angle
13     phi
14       @transformation_type=rotation
15       @vector=0,1,0
16       @offset=0,0,0
17       @depends_on=chi
18   depends_on
19     transforms/phi
```

The type and direction of the NeXus standard operations is documented below in the table: *Actions of standard NeXus fields*. The rule is to always give the attributes to make perfectly clear how the axes work. The CIF scheme also allows to store and use arbitrarily named axes in a NeXus file.

### Actions of standard NeXus fields

#### *Transformation Actions*

Field Name	transformation_type	vector
polar_angle	rotation	0 1 0
azimuthal_angle	rotation	0 0 1
meridional_angle	rotation	1 0 0
distance	translation	0 0 1
height	translation	0 1 0
x_translation	translation	1 0 0
chi	rotation	0 0 1
phi	rotation	0 1 0

For the NeXus spherical coordinate system (described in the legacy section below), the order is implicit and is given in the next example.

## implicit order of NeXus spherical coordinate system

```
azimuthal_angle:polar_angle:distance
```

This is also a nice example of the application of transformation matrices:

1. You first apply `azimuthal_angle` as a rotation around  $z$ . This rotates the whole coordinate out of the plane.
2. Then you apply `polar_angle` as a rotation around  $y$  in the tilted coordinate system.
3. This also moves the direction of the  $z$  vector. Along which you translate the component to place by distance.

## Shape Descriptions

### `NXoff_geometry`

The shape of instrument components can be described using the `NXoff_geometry` class. `NXoff_geometry` is a polygon-based description, based on the open OFF format. Conversion between OFF files and the NeXus description is straightforward. This is beneficial as existing tools can use, view or manipulate the geometry in OFF files. CAD software, for example [FreeCAD](#), can be used to define the geometry. 3D rendering tools such as [Geomview](#) can be used to view the geometry. [McStas](#) can use OFF files to define the shape of components for scattering simulations.

The example OFF file shown below defines a cube. The first line containing numbers defines: the number of vertices, the number of faces (polygons) making up the model's surface, and the number of edges in the mesh. Note, the number of edges must be present but does not need to be correct (<http://www.geomview.org/docs/html/OFF.html>).

```

1  OFF
2  #  cube.off
3  #  A cube
4
5  8 6 12
6  1.0  0.0  1.0
7  0.0  1.0  1.0
8  -1.0  0.0  1.0
9  0.0  -1.0  1.0
10 1.0  0.0  0.0
11 0.0  1.0  0.0
12 -1.0  0.0  0.0
13 0.0  -1.0  0.0
14 4  0 1 2 3
15 4  7 4 0 3
16 4  4 5 1 0
17 4  5 6 2 1
18 4  3 2 6 7
19 4  6 5 4 7

```

Following the initial line are the xyz coordinates of each vertex. Proceeding which is the list of faces. Each line defining a face starts with the number of vertices in that face followed by the sequence number of the composing vertices, indexed from zero. The vertex indices form a winding order by defining the face normal by the right-hand rule. The number of vertices in each face need not be constant; a mesh can comprise of polygons of many different orders.

The list of vertices in an OFF file maps directly to the `vertices` dataset in the `NXoff_geometry` class. The vertex indices of the face list in the OFF file occupy the `winding_order` dataset of the NeXus class, however the list is flattened to 1D in order to avoid a ragged-edged dataset, which are not easy to work with using HDF libraries. A `faces` dataset contains the position of the first entry in `winding_order` for each face. The `NXoff_geometry` equivalent of the OFF cube example is shown below.

```

1 shape : NXoff_geometry
2   @NX_class = "NXoff_geometry"
3   vertices =
4     1.0,    0.0,    1.0
5     0.0,    1.0,    1.0
6     -1.0,   0.0,    1.0
7     0.0,   -1.0,    1.0
8     1.0,    0.0,    0.0
9     0.0,    1.0,    0.0
10    -1.0,   0.0,    0.0
11    0.0,   -1.0,    0.0
12   faces =
13     0, 4, 8, 12, 16, 20
14   winding_order =
15     0, 1, 2, 3, 7, 4, 0, 3, 4, 5, 1, 0, 5, 6, 2, 1, 3, 2, 6, 7, 6, 5, 4, 7

```

### NXcylindrical\_geometry

Although the polygon-based description of `NXoff_geometry` is very flexible, it is not ideal for curved shapes when high precision is required since a very large number of vertices may be necessary. A common example of this is when describing helium tube, neutron detectors. `NXcylindrical_geometry` provides a more concise method of defining shape for such cases.

Like `NXoff_geometry`, `NXcylindrical_geometry` contains a `vertices` dataset. The indices of three vertices (**A**, **B**, **C** in *Cylinder definition with three vertices*) in the `vertices` dataset are used to define each cylinder in the `cylinders` dataset.

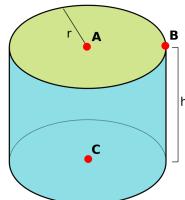


Fig. 3: Cylinder definition with three vertices

## Detector Shape Descriptions

An NXoff\_geometry or NXcylindrical\_geometry group named `detector_shape` can be placed in an NXdetector or NXdetector\_module to define the complete shape of the detector. Alternatively, the group can be named `pixel_shape` and define the shape of a single pixel. In this case, `x_pixel_offset`, `y_pixel_offset` and `z_pixel_offset` datasets of the NXdetector define how the pixel shape is tiled to form the geometry of the complete detector.

## Legacy Geometry Descriptions

The above system of chained transformations is the recommended way of encoding geometry going forward. This section describes the traditional way this was handled in NeXus, which you may find occasionally in old files.

Coordinate systems in NeXus have undergone significant development. Initially, only motor positions of the relevant motors were stored without further standardization. This soon proved to be too little and the *NeXus polar coordinate* system was developed. This system still is very close to angles that are meaningful to an instrument scientist but allows to define general positions of components easily. Then users from the simulation community approached the NeXus team and asked for a means to store absolute coordinates. This was implemented through the use of the *NXgeometry* class on top of the *McStas* system. We soon learned that all the things we do can be expressed through the McStas coordinate system. So it became the reference coordinate system for NeXus. *NXgeometry* was expanded to allow the description of shapes when the demand came up. Later, members of the CIF team convinced the NeXus team of the beauty of transformation matrices and NeXus was enhanced to store the necessary information to fully map CIF concepts. Not much had to be changed though as we choose to document the existing angles in CIF terms. The CIF system allows to store arbitrary operations and nevertheless calculate absolute coordinates in the laboratory coordinate system. It also allows to convert from local, for example detector coordinate systems, to absolute coordinates in the laboratory system.

## McStas and NXgeometry System

As stated above, NeXus uses the *McStas coordinate system* (<http://mcstas.org>) as its laboratory coordinate system. The instrument is given a global, absolute coordinate system where the *z* axis points in the direction of the incident beam, the *x* axis is perpendicular to the beam in the horizontal plane pointing left as seen from the source, and the *y* axis points upwards. See below for a drawing of the McStas coordinate system. The origin of this coordinate system is the sample position or, if this is ambiguous, the center of the sample holder with all angles and translations set to zero. The McStas coordinate system is illustrated in the next figure:

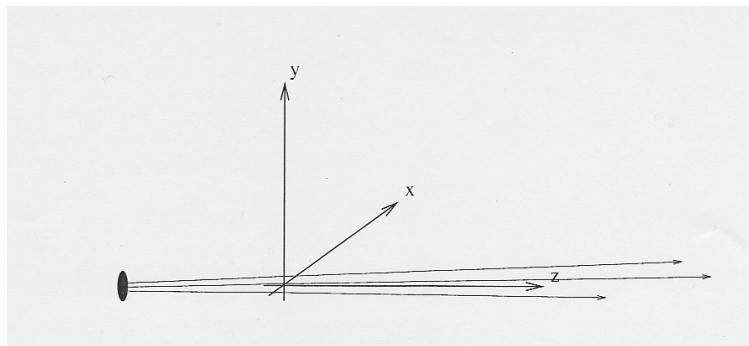


Fig. 4: The McStas Coordinate System

The NeXus NXgeometry class directly uses the McStas coordinate system. NXgeometry classes can appear in any component in order to specify its position. The suggested name to use is `geometry`. In NXgeometry the `NXtranslation/values` field defines the absolute position of the component in the McStas coordinate system.

The NXorientation/value field describes the orientation of the component as a vector of in the McStas coordinate system.

### Simple (Spherical Polar) Coordinate System

In this system, the instrument is considered as a set of components through which the incident beam passes. The variable *distance* is assigned to each component and represents the effective beam flight path length between this component and the sample. A sign convention is used where negative numbers represent components pre-sample and positive numbers components post-sample. At each component there is local spherical coordinate system with the angles *polar\_angle* and *azimuthal\_angle*. The size of the sphere is the distance to the previous component.

In order to understand this spherical polar coordinate system it is helpful to look initially at the common condition that *azimuthal\_angle* is zero. This corresponds to working directly in the horizontal scattering plane of the instrument. In this case *polar\_angle* maps directly to the setting commonly known as *two theta*. Now, there are instruments where components live outside of the scattering plane. Most notably detectors. In order to describe such components we first apply the tilt out of the horizontal scattering plane as the *azimuthal\_angle*. Then, in this tilted plane, we rotate to the component. The beauty of this is that *polar\_angle* is always *two theta*. Which, in the case of a component out of the horizontal scattering plane, is not identical to the value read from the motor responsible for rotating the component. This situation is shown in [Polar Coordinate System](#).

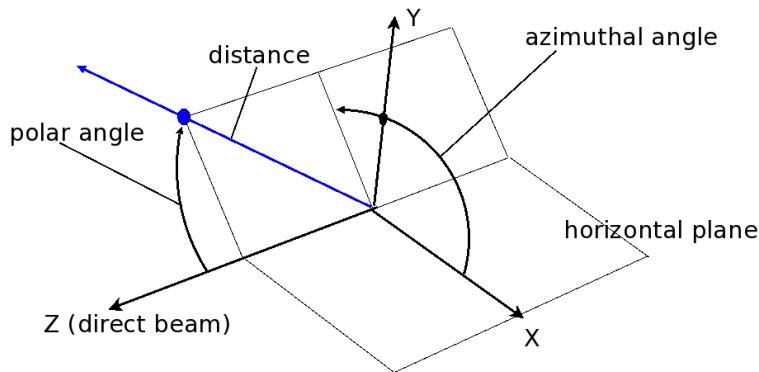


Fig. 5: NeXus Simple (Spherical Polar) Coordinate System

## 1.2.3 Rules and Underlying File Formats

### Rules for Structuring Information in NeXus Files

All NeXus files contain one or many groups of type NXentry at root level. Many files contain only one NXentry group, then the name is entry. The NXentry level of hierarchy is there to support the storage of multiple related experiments in one file. Or to allow the NeXus file to serve as a container for storing a whole scientific workflow from data acquisition to publication ready data. Also, NXentry class groups can contain raw data or processed data. For files with more than one NXentry group, since HDF requires that no two items at the same level in an HDF file may have the same name, the NeXus fashion is to assign names with an incrementing index appended, such as entry1, entry2, entry3, etc.

In order to illustrate what is written in the text, example hierarchies like the one in figure [Raw Data](#) are provided.

## Content of a Raw Data NXentry Group

An example raw data hierarchy is shown in figure *Raw Data* (only showing the relevant parts of the data hierarchy). In the example shown, the data field in the NXdata group is linked to the 2-D detector data (a 512x512 array of 32-bit integers). The attribute signal = data on the NXdata group marks this field as the default plottable data of the data:NXdata group. The NXdata group attribute axes = . . . declares that both dimensions of the data field do not have associated dimension scales (plotting routines should use integer scaling for each axis). Note that [ , ] represents a 2D array.

### NeXus Raw Data Hierarchy

```

1   entry:NXentry
2     @default = data
3     instrument:NXinstrument
4       source:NXsource
5       ....
6       detector:NXdetector
7         data:NX_INT32[512,512]
8       sample:NXsample
9       control:NXmonitor
10      data:NXdata
11        @signal = data
12        @axes = . .
13        data --> /entry/instrument/detector/data

```

An NXentry describing raw data contains at least a NXsample, one NXmonitor, one NXdata and a NXinstrument group. It is good practice to use the names sample for the NXsample group, control for the NXmonitor group holding the experiment controlling monitor and instrument for the NXinstrument group. The NXinstrument group contains further groups describing the individual components of the instrument as appropriate.

The NXdata group contains links to all those data items in the NXentry hierarchy which are required to put up a default plot of the data. As an example consider a SAXS instrument with a 2D detector. The NXdata will then hold a link to the detector image. If there is only one NXdata group, it is good practice to name it data. Otherwise, the name of the detector bank represented is a good selection.

## Content of a processed data NXentry group

Processed data, see figure *Processed Data*, in this context means the results of a data reduction or data analysis program. Note that [ ] represents a 1D array.

### NeXus Processed Data Hierarchy

```

1   entry:NXentry
2     @default = data
3     reduction:NXprocess
4       program_name = "pyDataProc2010"
5       version = "1.0a"
6       input:NXparameters
7         filename = "sn2013287.nxs"
8       sample:NXsample
9       data:NXdata

```

(continues on next page)

(continued from previous page)

```

10      @signal = data
11      @axes = .
12      data

```

NeXus stores such data in a simplified NXentry structure. A processed data NXentry has at minimum a NXsample, a NXdata and a NXprocess group. Again the preferred name for the NXsample group is sample. In the case of processed data, the NXdata group holds the result of the processing together with the associated axis data. The NXprocess group holds the name and version of the program used for this processing step and further NXparameters groups. These groups ought to contain the parameters used for this data processing step in suitable detail so that the processing step can be reproduced.

Optionally a processed data NXentry can hold a NXinstrument group with further groups holding relevant information about the instrument. The preferred name is again instrument. Whereas for a raw data file, NeXus strives to capture as much data as possible, a NXinstrument group for processed data may contain a much-reduced subset.

### NXsubentry or Multi-Method Data

Especially at synchrotron facilities, there are experiments which perform several different methods on the sample at the same time. For example, combine a powder diffraction experiment with XAS. This may happen in the same scan, so the data needs to be grouped together. A suitable NXentry would need to adhere to two different application definitions. This leads to name clashes which cannot be resolved easily. In order to solve this issue, the following scheme was implemented in NeXus:

- The complete beamline (all data) is stored in an appropriate hierarchy in an NXentry.
- The NXentry group contains further NXsubentry groups, one for each method.
- Each *NXsubentry* group is constructed like a NXentry group. It contains links to all those data items required to fulfill the application definition for the particular method it represents.
- The name of the application definition is stored in the `definition` field of the *NXsubentry* group
- Each NXsubentry group contains a NXdata group describing the default plottable data for that experimental method. To satisfy the NeXus requirement of finding the default plottable data from a NXentry group, the NXdata group from one of these NXsubentry groups (the fluorescence data) was linked.

See figure [NeXus Multi Method Hierarchy](#) for an example hierarchy. Note that `[ , ]` represents a 2D array.

### NeXus Multi Method Hierarchy

```

1      entry:NXentry
2          @default = data
3          user:NXuser
4          sample:NXsample
5          instrument:NXinstrument
6              SASdet:NXdetector
7                  data:[,]
8                  fluordet:NXdetector
9                      data:[,]
10                 large_area:NXdetector
11                     data:[,]
12             SAS:NXsubentry
13                 definition = "NXsas"
14                 instrument:NXinstrument
15                     detector:NXdetector

```

(continues on next page)

(continued from previous page)

```

16      data --> /entry/instrument/SASdet/data
17      data:NXdata
18      data --> /entry/instrument/SASdet/data
19      Fluo:NXsubentry
20          definition = "NXfluo"
21          instrument:NXinstrument
22              detector --> /entry/instrument/fluordet/data
23              detector2 --> /entry/instrument/large_area/data
24          data:NXdata
25              @signal = detector
26              @axes = . .
27              detector --> /entry/instrument/fluordet/data
28      data:NXdata --> /entry/Fluo/data

```

## Rules for Special Cases

### Scans

Scans are difficult to capture because they have great variety. Basically, any variable can be scanned. Such behaviour cannot be captured in application definitions. Therefore NeXus solves this difficulty with a set of rules. In this section, NP is used as a symbol for the number of scan points.

- The scan dimension NP is always the first dimension of any multi-dimensional dataset. The reason for this is that HDF allows the first dimension of a dataset to be unlimited. Which means, that data can be appended to the dataset during the scan.
- All data is stored as arrays of dimensions NP, original dimensions of the data at the appropriate position in the NXentry hierarchy.
- The NXdata group has to contain links to all variables varied during the scan and the detector data. Thus the NXdata group mimics the usual tabular representation of a scan.
- The NXdata group has attributes to enable the default plotting, as described in the section titled [NXdata Facilitates Automatic Plotting](#).

### Simple scan

Examples may be in order here. Let us start with a simple case, the sample is rotated around its rotation axis and data is collected in a single point detector. See figure [Simple Scan](#) for an overview. Then we have:

- A dataset at NXentry/NXinstrument/NXdetector/data of length NP containing the count data.
- A dataset at NXentry/NXsample/rotation\_angle of length NP containing the positions of rotation\_angle at the various steps of the scan.
- NXdata contains links to:
  - NXentry/NXinstrument/NXdetector/data
  - NXentry/NXsample/rotation\_angle
- All other fields have their normal dimensions.

## NeXus Simple Scan Example

```
1 entry:NXentry
2     @default = data
3     instrument:NXinstrument
4         detector:NXdetector
5             data[NP]
6             sample:NXsample
7                 rotation_angle[NP]
8                 control:NXmonitor
9                     data[NP]
10                    data:NXdata
11                        @signal = data
12                        @axes = rotation_angle
13                        @rotation_angle_indices = 0
14                        data --> /entry/instrument/detector/data
15                        rotation_angle --> /entry/sample/rotation_angle
```

### Simple scan with area detector

The next example is the same scan but with an area detector with `xsize` times `ysize` pixels. The only thing which changes is that `/NXentry/NXinstrument/NXdetector/data` will have the dimensions `NP`, `xsize`, `ysize`. See figure [Simple Scan with Area Detector](#) for an overview.

## NeXus Simple Scan Example with Area Detector

```
1 entry:NXentry
2     instrument:NXinstrument
3         detector:NXdetector
4             data:[NP,xsize,ysize]
5             sample:NXsample
6                 rotation_angle[NP]
7                 control:NXmonitor
8                     data[NP]
9                     data:NXdata
10                        @signal = data
11                        @axes = rotation_angle ..
12                        @rotation_angle_indices = 0
13                        data --> /entry/instrument/detector/data
14                        rotation_angle --> /entry/sample/rotation_angle
```

The `NXdata` group attribute `axes = rotation_angle ..` declares that only the first dimension of the plot-table data has a dimension scale (by name, `rotation_angle`). The other two dimensions have no associated dimension scales and should be plotted against integer bin numbers.

## Complex *hkl* scan

The next example involves a complex movement along the *h* axis in reciprocal space which requires multiple motors of a four-circle diffractometer to be varied during the scan. We then have:

- A dataset at NXentry/NXinstrument/NXdetector/data of length NP containing the count data.
- A dataset at NXentry/NXinstrument/NXdetector/polar\_angle of length NP containing the positions of the detector's polar\_angle at the various steps of the scan.
- A dataset at NXentry/NXsample/rotation\_angle of length NP containing the positions of rotation\_angle at the various steps of the scan.
- A dataset at NXentry/NXsample/chi of length NP containing the positions of chi at the various steps of the scan.
- A dataset at NXentry/NXsample/phi of length NP containing the positions of phi at the various steps of the scan.
- A dataset at NXentry/NXsample/h of length NP containing the positions of the reciprocal coordinate *h* at the various steps of the scan.
- A dataset at NXentry/NXsample/k of length NP containing the positions of the reciprocal coordinate *k* at the various steps of the scan.
- A dataset at NXentry/NXsample/l of length NP containing the positions of the reciprocal coordinate *l* at the various steps of the scan.
- NXdata contains links to:
  - NXentry/NXinstrument/NXdetector/data
  - NXentry/NXinstrument/NXdetector/polar\_angle
  - NXentry/NXsample/rotation\_angle
  - NXentry/NXsample/chi
  - NXentry/NXsample/phi
  - NXentry/NXsample/h
  - NXentry/NXsample/k
  - NXentry/NXsample/l

The NXdata also contains appropriate attributes as described in [Associating plottable data using attributes applied to the NXdata group](#).

- All other fields have their normal dimensions.

## NeXus Complex *hkl* Scan

```

1   entry:NXentry
2     @default = data
3     instrument:NXinstrument
4       detector:NXdetector
5         data[NP]
6         polar_angle[NP]
7         name
8       sample:NXsample
9         name

```

(continues on next page)

(continued from previous page)

```

10         rotation_angle[NP]
11         chi[NP]
12         phi[NP]
13         h[NP]
14         k[NP]
15         l[NP]
16     control:NXmonitor
17         data[NP]
18     data:NXdata
19         @signal = data
20         @axes = h
21         @h_indices = 0
22         @k_indices = 0
23         @l_indices = 0
24         @chi_indices = 0
25         @phi_indices = 0
26         @polar_angle_indices = 0
27         @rotation_angle_indices = 0
28     data --> /entry/instrument/detector/data
29     rotation_angle --> /entry/sample/rotation_angle
30     chi --> /entry/sample/chi
31     phi --> /entry/sample/phi
32     polar_angle --> /entry/instrument/detector/polar_angle
33     h --> /entry/sample/h
34     k --> /entry/sample/k
35     l --> /entry/sample/l

```

## Multi-parameter scan: XAS

Data can be stored almost anywhere in the NeXus tree. While the previous examples showed data arrays in either NXdetector or NXsample, this example demonstrates that data can be stored in other places. Links are used to reference the data.

The example is for X-ray Absorption Spectroscopy (XAS) data where the monochromator energy is step-scanned and counts are read back from detectors before (`I0`) and after (`I`) the sample. These energy scans are repeated at a sequence of sample temperatures to map out, for example, a phase transition. While it is customary in XAS to plot  $\log(I_0/I)$ , we show them separately here in two different NXdata groups to demonstrate that such things are possible. Note that the length of the 1-D energy array is `NE` while the length of the 1-D temperature array is `NT`

### NeXus Multi-parameter scan: XAS

```

1     entry:NXentry
2         @default = I_data
3         instrument:NXinstrument
4             I:NXdetector
5                 data:NX_NUMBER[NE,NT]
6                 energy --> /entry/monochromator/energy
7                 temperature --> /entry/sample/temperature
8             I0:NXdetector
9                 data:NX_NUMBER[NE,NT]
10                energy --> /entry/monochromator/energy
11                temperature --> /entry/sample/temperature
12             sample:NXsample

```

(continues on next page)

(continued from previous page)

```

13      temperature:NX_NUMBER[NT]
14      monochromator:NXmonochromator
15      energy:NX_NUMBER[NE]
16      I_data:NXdata
17          @signal = data
18          @axes = energy temperature
19          @energy_indices = 0
20          @temperature_indices = 0
21          data --> /entry/instrument/I/data
22          energy --> /entry/monochromator/energy
23          temperature --> /entry/sample/temperature
24      I0_data:NXdata
25          @signal = data
26          @axes = energy temperature
27          @energy_indices = 0
28          @temperature_indices = 0
29          data --> /entry/instrument/I00/data
30          energy --> /entry/monochromator/energy
31          temperature --> /entry/sample/temperature

```

## Rastering

Rastering is the process of making experiments at various locations in the sample volume. Again, rasterisation experiments can be variable. Some people even raster on spirals! Rasterisation experiments are treated the same way as described above for scans. Just replace NP with P, the number of raster points.

Special rules apply if a rasterisation happens on a regular grid of size xraster, yraster. Then the variables varied in the rasterisation will be of dimensions xraster, yraster and the detector data of dimensions xraster, yraster, (original dimensions) of the detector. For example, an area detector of size xsize, ysize then it is stored with dimensions xraster, yraster, xsize, ysize.

**Warning:** Be warned: if you use the 2D rasterisation method with xraster, yraster you may end up with invalid data if the scan is aborted prematurely. This cannot happen if the first method is used.

## Streaming Data Acquisition And Logging

More and more data is collected in streaming mode. This means that time stamped data is logged for one or more inputs, possibly together with detector data. Another use case is the logging of parameters, for example temperature, while a long running data collection is in progress. NeXus covers this case too. There is one simple rule for structuring such files:

Just use the standard NeXus raw data file structure, but replace the corresponding data object with an [NXlog](#) or [NXevent\\_data](#) structure of the same name.

For example, consider your instrument is streaming detector images against a magnetic\_field on the sample. In this case both NXsample/magnetic\_field and NXdetector/data would become NXlog structures instead of simple arrays i.e. the NXlog structure will have the same name as the NeXus field involved.

## NXcollection

On demand from the community, NeXus introduced a more informal method of storing information in a NeXus file. This is the NXcollection class which can appear anywhere underneath NXentry. NXcollection is a container for holding other data. The foreseen use is to document collections of similar data which do not otherwise fit easily into the NXinstrument or NXsample hierarchy, such as the intent to record *all* motor positions on a synchrotron beamline. Thus, NXcollection serves as a quick point of access to data for an instrument scientist or another expert. NXcollection is also a feature for those who are too lazy to build up the complete NeXus hierarchy. An example usage case is documented in figure [NXcollection example](#).

### NXcollection Example

```
1   entry:NXentry
2       positioners:NXcollection
3           mxx:NXpositioner
4           mzz:NXpositioner
5           sgu:NXpositioner
6           ttv:NXpositioner
7           hugo:NXpositioner
8           ....
9       scalars:NXcollection
10          title (dataset)
11          lieselotte (dataset)
12          ...
13       detectors:NXcollection
14          Pilatus:NXdata
15          MXX-45:NXdata
16          ....
```

## Rules for Storing Data Items in NeXus Files

This section describes the rules which apply for storing single data items.

### Naming Conventions

Group and field names used within NeXus follow a naming convention described by the following rules:

- The names of NeXus *group* and *field* items must only contain a restricted set of characters. This set may be described by a regular expression syntax [regular expression syntax](#), as described below.
- For the class names<sup>1</sup> of NeXus *group* items, the prefix *NX* is reserved. Thus all NeXus class names start with *NX*. The chapter titled [NeXus: Reference Documentation](#) lists the available NeXus class names as either *base classes*, *application definitions*, or *contributed definitions*.

<sup>1</sup> The *class name* is the value assigned to the *NX\_class* attribute of an HDF5 group in the NeXus data file. This *class name* is different than the *name* of the HDF5 group. This is important when not using the NAPI to either read or write the HDF5 data file.

## Regular expression pattern for NeXus group and field names

It is recommended that all group and field names contain only these characters:

- lower case letters
- digits
- “\_” (underscore character)

and that they begin with a lower case letter. This is the regular expression used to check this recommendation.

```
[a-z_] [a-z\d_] *
```

The length should be limited to no more than 63 characters (imposed by the HDF5 rules for names).

It is recognized that some facilities will construct group and field names with upper case letters. *NeXus data files with upper case characters in the group or field names might not be accepted by all software that reads NeXus data files.* Hence, group and field names that do not pass the regular expression above but pass this expression (named *validItemName* in the XML Schema file: *nxdl.xsd*):

```
[A-Za-z_] [\w_] *
```

will be flagged as a warning during data file validation.

## Use of underscore in descriptive names

Sometimes it is necessary to combine words in order to build a descriptive name for a field or a group. In such cases lowercase words are connected by underscores.

```
number_of_lenses
```

For all fields, only names from the NeXus base class dictionaries should be used. If a field name or even a complete component is missing, please suggest the addition to the [NIAC: The NeXus International Advisory Committee](#). The addition will usually be accepted provided it is not a duplication of an existing field and adequately documented.

---

**Note:** The NeXus base classes provide a comprehensive dictionary of terms that can be used for each class. The expected spelling and definition of each term is specified in the base classes. It is not required to provide all the terms specified in a base class. Terms with other names are permitted but might not be recognized by standard software. Rather than persist in using names not specified in the standard, please suggest additions to the [NIAC: The NeXus International Advisory Committee](#).

---

The data stored in NeXus fields must be readback values. This means values as read from the detector, other hardware etc. There are occasions where it is sensible to store the target value the variable was supposed to have. In this case the target value is stored with a name built by appending \_set to the normal NeXus field name. An example:

```
1 temperature
2 temperature_set
```

The temperature field will hold the readback from the cryostat/furnace/whatever. The field temperature\_set will hold the target value for the temperature as set by the experiment control software.

## Variants

Sometimes it is necessary to store alternate values of a NeXus dataset in a NeXus file. A common example may be the beam center of which a rough value is available at data acquisition. But later on, a better beam center is calculated as part of the data reduction. In order to store this without losing the historical information, the original field can be given a variant attribute that points to a new dataset containing the obsolete value. If even better values become available, further datasets can be inserted into the chain of variant attributes pointing to the preceding value for the dataset. A reader can thus keep the best value in the pre-defined dataset, and also be able to follow the variant chain and locate older variants.

A little example is in order to illustrate the scheme:

```
beam_center_x
    @variant=beam_center_x_refined
beam_center_x_refined
    @variant=beam_center_x_initial_guess
beam_center_x_initial_guess
```

NeXus borrowed this scheme from CIF. In this way all the different variants of a dataset can be preserved. The expectation is that variants will be rarely used and NXprocess groups with the results of data reduction will be written instead.

## NeXus Array Storage Order

NeXus stores multi-dimensional arrays of physical values in C language storage order, where the first dimension has the slowest varying index when iterating through the array in storage order, and the last dimension is the fastest varying. This is the rule. *Good reasons are required to deviate from this rule.*

Where the array contains data from a detector, the array dimensions may correspond to physical directions or axes. The slowest, slow, fast, fastest qualifiers can then apply to these axes too.

It is possible to store data in storage orders other than C language order.

As well it is possible to specify that the data needs to be converted first before being useful. Consider one situation, when data must be streamed to disk as fast as possible and conversion to C language storage order causes unnecessary latency. This case presents a good reason to make an exception to the standard rule.

## Non C Storage Order

In order to indicate that the storage order is different from C storage order two additional data set attributes, offset and stride, have to be stored which together define the storage layout of the data. Offset and stride contain rank numbers according to the rank of the multidimensional data set. Offset describes the step to make when the dimension is multiplied by 1. Stride defines the step to make when incrementing the dimension. This is best explained by some examples.

## Offset and Stride for 1 D data:

```

1   * raw data = 0 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9
2     size[1] = { 10 } // assume uniform overall array dimensions
3
4   * default stride:
5     stride[1] = { 1 }
6     offset[1] = { 0 }
7     for i:
8       result[i]:
9         0 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9
10
11  * reverse stride:
12    stride[1] = { -1 }
13    offset[1] = { 9 }
14    for i:
15      result[i]:
16        9 8 7 6 5 4 3 2 1 0

```

## Offset and Stride for 2D Data

```

1   * raw data = 0 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9 10 11 12 13 14 15 16 17 18 19
2     size[2] = { 4, 5 } // assume uniform overall array dimensions
3
4   * row major (C) stride:
5     stride[2] = { 5, 1 }
6     offset[2] = { 0, 0 }
7     for i:
8       for j:
9         result[i][j]:
10           0 1 2 3 4
11           5 6 7 8 9
12           10 11 12 13 14
13           15 16 17 18 19
14
15   * column major (Fortran) stride:
16     stride[2] = { 1, 4 }
17     offset[2] = { 0, 0 }
18     for i:
19       for j:
20         result[i][j]:
21           0 4 8 12 16
22           1 5 9 13 17
23           2 6 10 14 18
24           3 7 11 15 19
25
26   * "crazy reverse" row major (C) stride:
27     stride[2] = { -5, -1 }
28     offset[2] = { 4, 5 }
29     for i:
30       for j:
31         result[i][j]:
32           19 18 17 16 15
33           14 13 12 11 10
34           9 8 7 6 5
35           4 3 2 1 0

```

## Offset and Stride for 3D Data

```
1  * raw data = 0 1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8 9 10 11 12 13 14 15 16 17 18 19
2      20 21 22 23 24 25 26 27 28 29 30 31 32 33 34 35 36 37 38 39
3      40 41 42 43 44 45 46 47 48 49 50 51 52 53 54 55 56 57 58 59
4      size[3] = { 3, 4, 5 } // assume uniform overall array dimensions
5
6  * row major (C) stride:
7      stride[3] = { 20, 5, 1 }
8      offset[3] = { 0, 0, 0 }
9      for i:
10         for j:
11             for k:
12                 result[i][j][k]:
13                     0 1 2 3 4
14                     5 6 7 8 9
15                     10 11 12 13 14
16                     15 16 17 18 19
17
18                     20 21 22 23 24
19                     25 26 27 28 29
20                     30 31 32 33 34
21                     35 36 37 38 39
22
23                     40 41 42 43 44
24                     45 46 47 48 49
25                     50 51 52 53 54
26                     55 56 57 58 59
27
28  * column major (Fortran) stride:
29      stride[3] = { 1, 3, 12 }
30      offset[3] = { 0, 0, 0 }
31      for i:
32         for j:
33             for k:
34                 result[i][j][k]:
35                     0 12 24 36 48
36                     3 15 27 39 51
37                     6 18 30 42 54
38                     9 21 33 45 57
39
40                     1 13 25 37 49
41                     4 16 28 40 52
42                     7 19 31 43 55
43                     10 22 34 46 58
44
45                     2 14 26 38 50
46                     5 17 29 41 53
47                     8 20 32 44 56
48                     11 23 35 47 59
```

## NeXus Data Types

description	matching regular expression
integer	NX_INT(8 16 32 64)
floating-point	NX_FLOAT(32 64)
array	(\\ [0-9\\])?
valid item name	^ [A-Za-z_] [A-Za-z0-9_]*\$
valid class name	^NX [A-Za-z0-9_]*\$

NeXus supports numeric data as either integer or floating-point numbers. A number follows that indicates the number of bits in the word. The table above shows the regular expressions that matches the data type specifier.

**integers** NX\_INT8, NX\_INT16, NX\_INT32, or NX\_INT64

**floating-point numbers** NX\_FLOAT32 or NX\_FLOAT64

**date / time stamps** NX\_DATE\_TIME or ISO8601: Dates and times are specified using ISO-8601 standard definitions. Refer to [NeXus dates and times](#).

**strings** NX\_CHAR: The preferred string representation is UTF-8. Both fixed-length strings and variable-length strings are valid. String arrays cannot be used where only a string is expected (title, start\_time, end\_time, NX\_class attribute,...). Fields or attributes requiring the use of string arrays will be clearly marked as such (like the NXdata attribute auxiliary\_signals).

**binary data** Binary data is to be written as UINT8.

**images** Binary image data is to be written using UINT8, the same as binary data, but with an accompanying image mime-type. If the data is text, the line terminator is [CR] [LF].

## NeXus dates and times

NeXus dates and times should be stored using the ISO 8601<sup>2</sup> format, e.g. 1996-07-31T21:15:22+0600. The standard also allows for time intervals in fractional seconds with *1 or more digits of precision*. This avoids confusion, e.g. between U.S. and European conventions, and is appropriate for machine sorting.

### strftime() format specifiers for ISO-8601 time

```
%Y-%m-%dT%H:%M:%S%z
```

---

**Note:** Note that the T appears literally in the string, to indicate the beginning of the time element, as specified in ISO 8601. It is common to use a space in place of the T, such as 1996-07-31 21:15:22+0600. While human-readable (and later allowed in a relaxed revision of the standard), compatibility with libraries supporting the ISO 8601 standard is not assured with this substitution. The strftime() format specifier for this is “%Y-%m-%dT:H:%M:%S%z”.

---

<sup>2</sup> ISO 8601: <http://www.w3.org/TR/NOTE-datetime>

## NeXus Data Units

Given the plethora of possible applications of NeXus, it is difficult to define units to use. Therefore, the general rule is that you are free to store data in any unit you find fit. However, any field must have a units attribute which describes the units. Wherever possible, SI units are preferred. NeXus units are written as a string attribute (NX\_CHAR) and describe the engineering units. The string should be appropriate for the value. Values for the NeXus units must be specified in a format compatible with [Unidata UDunits<sup>3</sup>](#). Application definitions may specify units to be used for fields using an enumeration.

## Storing Detectors

There are very different types of detectors out there. Storing their data can be a challenge. As a general guide line: if the detector has some well defined form, this should be reflected in the data file. A linear detector becomes a linear array, a rectangular detector becomes an array of size `xsize` times `ysize`. Some detectors are so irregular that this does not work. Then the detector data is stored as a linear array, with the index being detector number till `ndet`. Such detectors must be accompanied by further arrays of length `ndet` which give `azimuthal_angle`, `polar_angle` and `distance` for each detector.

If data from a time of flight (TOF) instrument must be described, then the TOF dimension becomes the last dimension, for example an area detector of `xsize` vs. `ysize` is stored with TOF as an array with dimensions `xsize`, `ysize`, `ntof`.

## Monitors are Special

Monitors, detectors that measure the properties of the experimental probe rather than the probe's interaction with the sample, have a special place in NeXus files. Monitors are crucial to normalize data. To emphasize their role, monitors are not stored in the `NXinstrument` hierarchy but on `NXentry` level in their own groups as there might be multiple monitors. Of special importance is the monitor in a group called `control`. This is the main monitor against which the data has to be normalized. This group also contains the counting control information, i.e. counting mode, times, etc.

Monitor data may be multidimensional. Good examples are scan monitors where a monitor value per scan point is expected or time-of-flight monitors.

## Find the plottable data

*Simple plotting* is one of the motivations for the NeXus standard. To implement *simple plotting*, a mechanism must exist to identify the default data for visualization (plotting) in any NeXus data file. Over its history the NIAC has agreed upon a method of applying metadata to identify the default plottable data. This metadata has always been specified as HDF attributes. With the evolution of the underlying file formats and the NeXus data standard, the method to identify the default plottable data has evolved, undergoing three distinct versions.

**version 1** *Associating plottable data by dimension number using the axis attribute*

**version 2** *Associating plottable data by name using the axes attribute*

**version 3** *Associating plottable data using attributes applied to the NXdata group*

Consult the [NeXus API](#) section, which describes the routines available to program these operations. In the course of time, generic NeXus browsers will provide this functionality automatically.

---

<sup>3</sup> The UDunits specification also includes instructions for derived units. At present, the contents of NeXus `units` attributes are not validated in data files.

For programmers who may encounter NeXus data files written using any of these methods, we present the algorithm for each method to find the default plottable data. It is recommended to start with the most recent method, *Version 3*, first.

### Version 3

The third (current) method to identify the default plottable data is as follows:

1. Start at the top level of the NeXus data file (the *root* of the HDF5 hierarchy).
2. Pick the default *NXentry* group.

If the *root* has an attribute `default`, then its value is the name of the *NXentry* group to be used. Otherwise, pick any *NXentry* group. This is trivial if there is only one *NXentry* group.

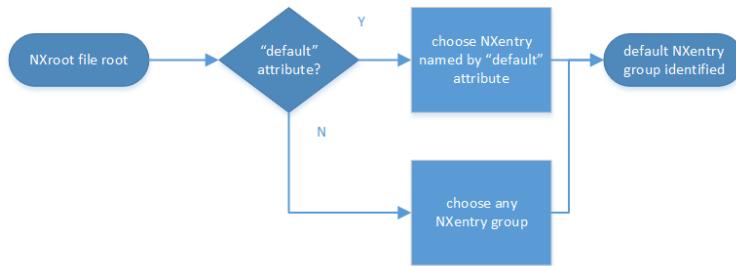


Fig. 6: Find plottable data: select the *NXentry* group

3. Pick the default *NXdata* group.

Open the *NXentry* group selected above. If it has an attribute `default`, then its value is the name of the *NXdata* group to be used. Otherwise, pick any *NXdata* group. This is trivial if there is only one *NXdata* group.

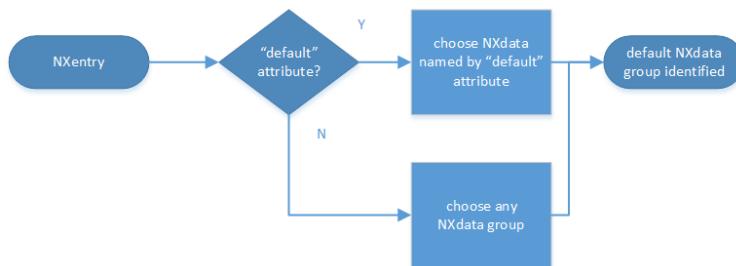


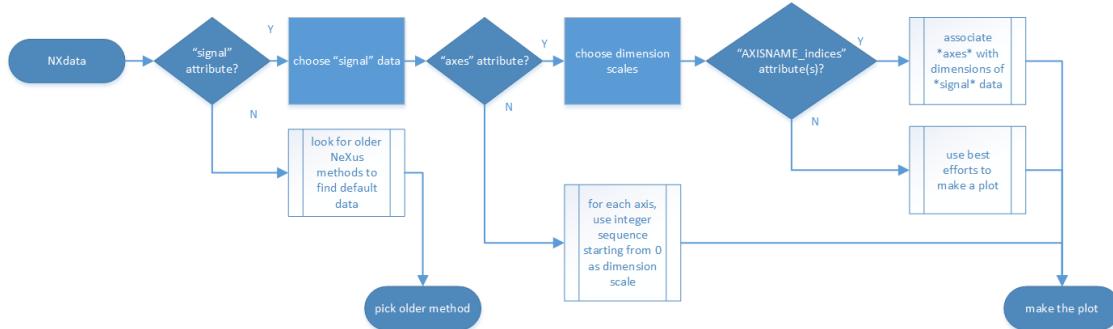
Fig. 7: Find plottable data: select the *NXdata* group

1. Pick the default plottable field (the *signal* data).

Open the *NXdata* group selected above. If it has an attribute `signal`, then its value is the name of the field (dataset) to be plotted. If no `signal` attribute is not present on the *NXdata* group, then proceed to try an *older NeXus method* to find the default plottable data.

1. Pick the fields with the dimension scales (the *axes*).

If the same *NXdata* group has an attribute `axes`, then its value is a string (*signal* data is 1-D) or string array (*signal* data is 2-D or higher rank) naming the field **in this group** to be used as dimension scales of the default plottable data. The number of values given must be equal to the *rank* of the *signal* data. These are the *abscissae* of the plottable *signal* data.

Fig. 8: Find plottable data: select the *signal* data

If no field is available to provide a dimension scale for a given dimension, then a “.” will be used in that position. In such cases, programmers are expected to use an integer sequence starting from 0 for each position along that dimension.

## 2. Associate the dimension scales with each dimension of the plottable data.

For each field (its name is *AXISNAME*) in *axes* that provides a dimension scale, there will be an `NXdata` group attribute `AXISNAME_indices` which value is an .. integer or integer array with value of the dimensions of the *signal* data to which this dimension scale applies.

If no `AXISNAME_indices` attribute is provided, a programmer is encouraged to make best efforts assuming the intent of this `NXdata` group to provide a default plot.

It is possible there may be more than one `AXISNAME_indices` attribute with the same value or values. This indicates the possibility of using alternate abscissae along this (these) dimension(s). The field named in the *axes* attribute indicates the intention of the data file writer as to which field should be used by default.

## 2. Plot the *signal* data, given *axes* and *AXISNAME\_indices*.

When all the default and *signal* attributes are present, this Python code will identify directly the default plottable data (assuming a `plot()` function has been defined by some code):

```

root = h5py.File(hdf5_file_name, "r")

default_nxentry_group_name = root.attrs["default"]
nxentry = root[default_nxentry_group_name]

default_nxdata_group_name = nxentry.attrs["default"]
nxdata = nxentry[default_nxdata_group_name]

signal_dataset_name = nxdata.attrs["signal"]
data = nxdata[signal_dataset_name]

plot(data)

```

## Version 2

**Tip:** Try this method for older NeXus data files and [Version 3](#) fails..

The second method to identify the default plottable data is as follows:

1. Start at the top level of the NeXus data file.
2. Loop through the groups with class NXentry until the next step succeeds.



Fig. 9: Find plottable data: pick a NXentry group

3. Open the NXentry group and loop through the subgroups with class NXdata until the next step succeeds.

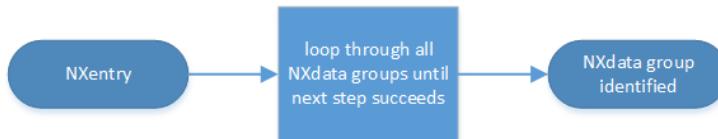


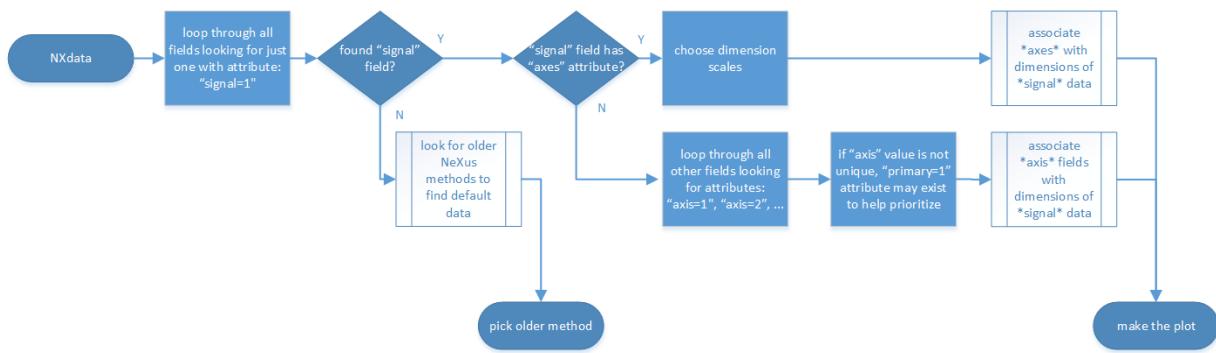
Fig. 10: Find plottable data: pick a NXdata group

4. Open the NXdata group and loop through the fields for the one field with attribute signal="1". Note: There should be *only one* field that matches.

This is the default plottable data.

If there is no such signal="1" field, proceed to try an [older NeXus method](#) to find the default plottable data.

1. If this field has an attribute axes:
  1. The axes attribute value contains a colon (or comma) delimited list (in the C-order of the data array) with the names of the dimension scales associated with the plottable data. Such as: `axes="polar_angle:time_of_flight"`
  2. Parse axes and open the datasets to describe your dimension scales
2. If this field has no attribute axes:
  1. Search for datasets with attributes axis=1, axis=2, etc.
  2. These are the fields describing your axis. There may be several fields for any axis, i.e. there may be multiple fields with the attribute axis=1. Among them the field with the attribute primary=1 is the preferred one. All others are alternative dimension scales.
5. Having found the default plottable data and its dimension scales: make the plot.

Fig. 11: Find plottable data: select the *signal* data**Version 1**

**Tip:** Try this method for older NeXus data files.

The first method to identify the default plottable data is as follows:

1. Open the first top level NeXus group with class NXentry.

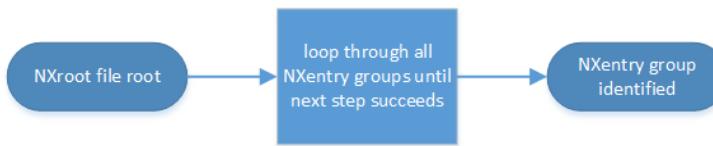


Fig. 12: Find plottable data: pick the first NXentry group

2. Open the first NeXus group with class NXdata.



Fig. 13: Find plottable data: pick the first NXdata group

3. Loop through NeXus fields in this group searching for the item with attribute `signal="1"` indicating this field has the plottable data.
4. Search for the one-dimensional NeXus fields with attribute `primary=1`. These are the dimension scales to label the axes of each dimension of the data.
5. Link each dimension scale to the respective data dimension by the `axis` attribute (`axis=1, axis=2, ...` up to the rank of the data).
6. If necessary, close this NXdata group, search the next NXdata group, repeating steps 3 to 5.
7. If necessary, close the NXentry group, search the next NXentry group, repeating steps 2 to 6.

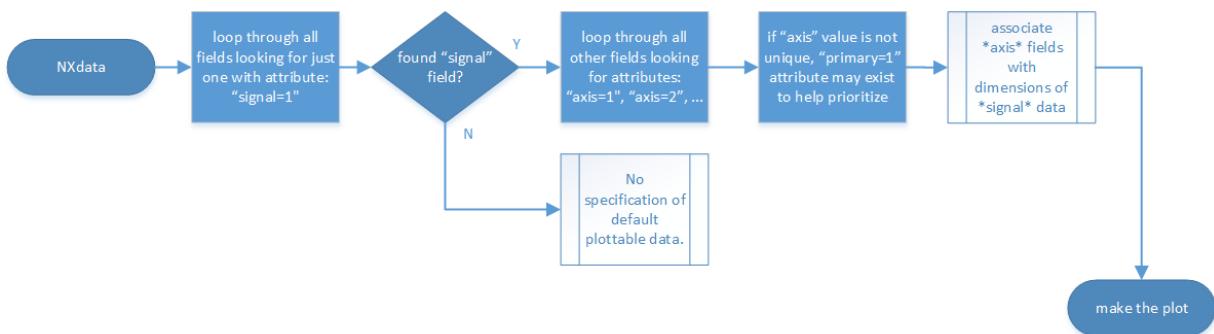


Fig. 14: Find plottable data: select the *signal* data

### Associating Multi Dimensional Data with Axis Data

NeXus allows for storage of multi dimensional arrays of data. It is this data that presents the most challenge for description. In most cases it is not sufficient to just have the indices into the array as a label for the dimensions of the data. Usually the information which physical value corresponds to an index into a dimension of the multi dimensional data set. To this purpose a means is needed to locate appropriate data arrays which describe what each dimension of a multi dimensional data set actually corresponds too. There is a standard HDF facility to do this: it is called dimension scales. Unfortunately, when NeXus was first designed, there was only one global namespace for dimension scales. Thus NeXus had to devise its own scheme for locating axis data which is described here. A side effect of the NeXus scheme is that it is possible to have multiple mappings of a given dimension to physical data. For example, a TOF data set can have the TOF dimension as raw TOF or as energy.

There are now three methods of associating each data dimension to its respective dimension scale. Only the first method is recommended now, the other two (older methods) are now discouraged.

1. *Associating plottable data using attributes applied to the NXdata group*
2. *Associating plottable data by name using the axes attribute*
3. *Associating plottable data by dimension number using the axis attribute*

The recommended method uses the `axes` attribute applied to the `NXdata` group to specify the names of each dimension scale. A prerequisite is that the fields describing the axes of the plottable data are stored together with the plottable data in the same NeXus group. If this leads to data duplication, use *links*.

### Associating plottable data using attributes applied to the NXdata group

**Tip:** Recommended: This is the “NIAC2014” method recommended for all new NeXus data files.

The default data to be plotted (and any associated axes) is specified using attributes attached to the `NXdata` group.

**signal** Defines the name of the default dataset *in the NXdata group*. A field of this name *must* exist (either as dataset or link to dataset).

It is recommended to use this attribute rather than adding a `signal` attribute to the dataset.<sup>4</sup> The procedure to identify the default data to be plotted is quite simple. Given any NeXus data file, any `NXentry`, or any `NXdata`, follow the chain as it is described from that point. Specifically:

<sup>4</sup> Summary of the discussion at NIAC2014 to revise how to find default data: [https://www.nexusformat.org/2014\\_How\\_to\\_find\\_default\\_data.html](https://www.nexusformat.org/2014_How_to_find_default_data.html)

- The root of the NeXus file may have a `default` attribute that names the default `NXentry` group. This attribute may be omitted if there is only one NXentry group. If a second NXentry group is later added, the `default` attribute must be added then.
- Every `NXentry` group may have a `default` attribute that names the default `NXdata` group. This attribute may be omitted if there is only one NXdata group or if no NXdata is present. If a second NXdata group is later added, the `default` attribute must be added then.
- Every `NXdata` group will have a `signal` attribute that names the field name to be plotted by default. This attribute is required.

**axes** String array<sup>5</sup> that defines the independent data fields used in the default plot for all of the dimensions of the `signal` field. One entry is provided for every dimension in the `signal` field.

The field(s) named as values (known as “axes”) of this attribute *must* exist. An axis slice is specified using a field named `AXISNAME_indices` as described below (where the text shown here as `AXISNAME` is to be replaced by the actual field name).

When no default axis is available for a particular dimension of the plottable data, use a “.” in that position.

See examples provided on the NeXus webpage (<sup>6</sup>).

If there are no axes at all (such as with a stack of images), the axes attribute can be omitted.

**AXISNAME\_indices** Each `AXISNAME_indices` attribute indicates the dependency relationship of the `AXISNAME` field (where `AXISNAME` is the name of a field that exists in this NXdata group) with one or more dimensions of the plottable data.

Integer array<sup>5</sup> that defines the indices of the `signal` field (that field will be a multidimensional array) which need to be used in the `AXISNAME` dataset in order to reference the corresponding axis value.

The first index of an array is 0 (zero).

Here, `AXISNAME` is to be replaced by the name of each field described in the `axes` attribute. An example with 2-D data,  $d(t, P)$ , will illustrate:

```
data_2d:NXdata
@signal="data"
@axes="time", "pressure"
@time_indices=0
@pressure_indices=1
data: float[1000,20]
time: float[1000]
pressure: float[20]
```

This attribute is to be provided in all situations. However, if the indices attributes are missing (such as for data files written before this specification), file readers are encouraged to make their best efforts to plot the data. Thus the implementation of the `AXISNAME_indices` attribute is based on the model of “strict writer, liberal reader”.

<sup>5</sup> Note on array attributes: Attributes potentially containing multiple values (axes and `_indices`) are to be written as string or integer arrays, to avoid string parsing in reading applications.

<sup>6</sup> NIAC2014 proposition: [https://www.nexusformat.org/2014\\_axes\\_and\\_uncertainties.html](https://www.nexusformat.org/2014_axes_and_uncertainties.html)

## Examples

Several examples are provided to illustrate this method. More examples are available in the NeXus webpage <sup>(6)</sup>.

### simple 1-D data example showing how to identify the default data (*counts* vs. *mr*)

In the first example, storage of a 1-D data set (*counts* vs. *mr*) is described.

```

1 datafile.hdf5:Nexus data file
2   @default="entry"
3   entry:NXentry
4     @default="data"
5     data:NXdata
6       @signal="counts"
7       @axes="mr"
8       @mr_indices=0
9       counts: float[100] --> the default dependent data
10      mr: float[100] --> the default independent data

```

### 2-D data example showing how to identify the default data and associated dimension scales

A 2-D data set, *data* as a function of *time* and *pressure* is described. By default as indicated by the *axes* attribute, *pressure* is to be used. The *temperature* array is described as a substitute for *pressure* (so it replaces dimension 1 of *data* as indicated by the *temperature\_indices* attribute).

```

1 datafile.hdf5:Nexus data file
2   @default="entry"
3   entry:NXentry
4     @default="data_2d"
5     data_2d:NXdata
6       @signal="data"
7       @axes="time", "pressure"
8       @pressure_indices=1
9       @temperature_indices=1
10      @time_indices=0
11      data: float[1000,20]
12      pressure: float[20]
13      temperature: float[20]
14      time: float[1000]

```

---

### Associating plottable data by name using the *axes* attribute

**Warning:** Discouraged: See this method: *Associating plottable data using attributes applied to the NXdata group*.

This method defines an attribute of the data field called *axes*. The *axes* attribute contains the names of each dimension scale as a colon (or comma) separated list in the order they appear in C. For example:

## denoting axes by name

```
1 data:NXdata
2   time_of_flight = 1500.0 1502.0 1504.0 ...
3   polar_angle = 15.0 15.6 16.2 ...
4   some_other_angle = 0.0 0.0 2.0 ...
5   data = 5 7 14 ...
6   @axes = polar_angle:time_of_flight
7   @signal = 1
```

---

## Associating plottable data by dimension number using the `axis` attribute

**Warning:** Discouraged: See this method: *Associating plottable data by name using the axes attribute*

The original method defines an attribute of each dimension scale field called `axis`. It is an integer whose value is the number of the dimension, in order of fastest varying dimension. That is, if the array being stored is data with elements `data[j][i]` in C and `data(i,j)` in Fortran, where `i` is the time-of-flight index and `j` is the polar angle index, the NXdata group would contain:

## denoting axes by integer number

```
1 data:NXdata
2   time_of_flight = 1500.0 1502.0 1504.0 ...
3   @axis = 1
4   @primary = 1
5   polar_angle = 15.0 15.6 16.2 ...
6   @axis = 2
7   @primary = 1
8   some_other_angle = 0.0 0.0 2.0 ...
9   @axis = 1
10  data = 5 7 14 ...
11  @signal = 1
```

The `axis` attribute must be defined for each dimension scale. The `primary` attribute is unique to this method.

There are limited circumstances in which more than one dimension scale for the same data dimension can be included in the same NXdata group. The most common is when the dimension scales are the three components of an (*hkl*) scan. In order to handle this case, we have defined another attribute of type integer called `primary` whose value determines the order in which the scale is expected to be chosen for plotting, i.e.

- 1st choice: `primary=1`
- 2nd choice: `primary=2`
- etc.

If there is more than one scale with the same value of the `axis` attribute, one of them must have set `primary=1`. Defining the `primary` attribute for the other scales is optional.

---

### Note:

The `primary` attribute can only be used with the first method of defining

---

**dimension scales** discussed above. In addition to the `signal` data, this group could contain a data set of the same rank and dimensions called `errors` containing the standard deviations of the data.

---

## Physical File format

This section describes how NeXus structures are mapped to features of the underlying physical file format. This is a guide for people who wish to create NeXus files without using the NeXus-API.

### Choice of HDF as Underlying File Format

At its beginnings, the founders of NeXus identified the Hierarchical Data Format (HDF) as a capable and efficient multi-platform data storage format. HDF was designed for large data sets and already had a substantial user community. HDF was developed and maintained initially by the National Center for Supercomputing Applications (NCSA) at the University of Illinois at Urbana-Champaign (UIUC) and later spun off into its own group called The HDF Group (THG: <http://www.hdfgroup.org/>). Rather than developing its own unique physical file format, the NeXus group choose to build NeXus on top of HDF.

HDF (now HDF5) is provided with software to read and write data (this is the application-programmer interface, or API) using a large number of computing systems in common use for neutron and X-ray science. HDF is a binary data file format that supports compression and structured data.

### Mapping NeXus into HDF

NeXus data structures map directly to HDF structures. NeXus *groups* are HDF5 *groups* and NeXus *fields* (or data sets) are HDF5 *datasets*. Attributes map directly to HDF group or dataset attributes. The NeXus class is stored as an attribute to the HDF5 group with the name `NX_class` with value of the NeXus class name. (For legacy NeXus data files using HDF4, groups are HDF4 *vgroups* and fields are HDF4 *SDS* (*scientific data sets*). HDF4 does not support group attributes. HDF4 supports a group class which is set with the `Vsetclass()` call and read with `VGetclass()`.)

A NeXus link directly maps to the HDF hard link mechanisms.

---

**Note:** **Examples** are provided in the [Examples of writing and reading NeXus data files](#) chapter. These examples include software to write and read NeXus data files using the NAPI, as well as other software examples that use native (non-NAPI) libraries. In some cases the examples show the content of the NeXus data files that are produced. Here are links to some of the examples:

- [How do I write a NeXus file?](#)
  - [How do I read a NeXus file?](#)
  - [NAPI Simple 2-D Write Example \(C, F77, F90\)](#)
  - [Writing a simple NeXus file using native HDF5 commands in C](#)
  - [Reading a simple NeXus file using native HDF5 commands in C](#)
  - [Writing the HDF5 file using h5py](#)
  - [Reading the HDF5 file using h5py](#)
- 

Perhaps the easiest way to view the implementation of NeXus in HDF5 is to view how the data structures look. For this, we use the `h5dump` command-line utility provided with the HDF5 support libraries. Short examples are provided for the basic NeXus data components:

- *group*: created in C NAPI by:

```
NXmakegroup (fileID, "entry", "NXentry");
```

- *field*: created in C NAPI by:

```
NXmakedata (fileID, "two_theta", NX_FLOAT32, 1, &n);
    NXopendata (fileID, "two_theta");
NXputdata (fileID, tth);
```

- *attribute*: created in C NAPI by:

```
NXputattr (fileID, "units", "degrees", 7, NX_CHAR);
```

- *link* created in C NAPI by:

```
NXmakelink (fileid, &itemid);
# -or-
NXmakenamedlink (fileid, "linked_name", &itemid);
```

See the sections *NAPI Simple 2-D Write Example (C, F77, F90)* and *NAPI Python Simple 3-D Write Example* in the *Examples of writing and reading NeXus data files* chapter for examples that use the native HDF5 calls to write NeXus data files.

## h5dump of a NeXus NXentry group

```
1 GROUP "entry" {
2     ATTRIBUTE "NX_class" {
3         DATATYPE H5T_STRING {
4             STRSIZE 7;
5             STRPAD H5T_STR_NULLPAD;
6             CSET H5T_CSET_ASCII;
7             CTYPE H5T_C_S1;
8         }
9         DATASPACE SCALAR
10        DATA {
11            (0): "NXentry"
12        }
13    }
14    # ... group contents
15 }
```

## h5dump of a NeXus field (HDF5 dataset)

```
1 DATASET "two_theta" {
2     DATATYPE H5T_IEEE_F64LE
3     DATASPACE SIMPLE { ( 31 ) / ( 31 ) }
4     DATA {
5         (0): 17.9261, 17.9259, 17.9258, 17.9256, 17.9254, 17.9252,
6         (6): 17.9251, 17.9249, 17.9247, 17.9246, 17.9244, 17.9243,
7         (12): 17.9241, 17.9239, 17.9237, 17.9236, 17.9234, 17.9232,
8         (18): 17.9231, 17.9229, 17.9228, 17.9226, 17.9224, 17.9222,
9         (24): 17.9221, 17.9219, 17.9217, 17.9216, 17.9214, 17.9213,
10        (30): 17.9211
```

(continues on next page)

(continued from previous page)

```

11    }
12    ATTRIBUTE "units" {
13        DATATYPE H5T_STRING {
14            STRSIZE 7;
15            STRPAD H5T_STR_NULLPAD;
16            CSET H5T_CSET_ASCII;
17            CTYPE H5T_C_S1;
18        }
19        DATASPACE SCALAR
20        DATA {
21            (0): "degrees"
22        }
23    }
24    # ... other attributes
25 }
```

### **h5dump of a NeXus attribute**

```

1 ATTRIBUTE "axes" {
2     DATATYPE H5T_STRING {
3         STRSIZE 9;
4         STRPAD H5T_STR_NULLPAD;
5         CSET H5T_CSET_ASCII;
6         CTYPE H5T_C_S1;
7     }
8     DATASPACE SCALAR
9     DATA {
10        (0): "two_theta"
11    }
12 }
```

### **h5dump of a NeXus link**

```

1 # NeXus links have two parts in HDF5 files.
2
3 # The dataset is created in some group.
4 # A "target" attribute is added to indicate the HDF5 path to this dataset.
5
6 ATTRIBUTE "target" {
7     DATATYPE H5T_STRING {
8         STRSIZE 21;
9         STRPAD H5T_STR_NULLPAD;
10        CSET H5T_CSET_ASCII;
11        CTYPE H5T_C_S1;
12    }
13    DATASPACE SCALAR
14    DATA {
15        (0): "/entry/data/two_theta"
16    }
17 }
18
19 # then, the hard link is created that refers to the original dataset
20 # (Since the name is "two_theta" in this example, it is understood that
```

(continues on next page)

(continued from previous page)

```
21 # this link is created in a different HDF5 group than "/entry/data".)
22
23 DATASET "two_theta" {
24     HARDLINK "/entry/data/two_theta"
25 }
```

## 1.3 Constructing NeXus Files and Application Definitions

In *NeXus Design*, we discussed the design of the NeXus format in general terms. In this section a more tutorial style introduction in how to construct a NeXus file is given. As an example a hypothetical instrument named WONI will be used.

---

**Note:** If you are looking for a tutorial on reading or writing NeXus data files using the NeXus API, consult the [NAPI: NeXus Application Programmer Interface \(frozen\)](#) chapter. For code examples, refer to [Code Examples that use the NeXus API \(NAPI\)](#) chapter. Alternatively, there are examples in the [Example NeXus C programs using native HDF5 commands](#) chapter of writing and reading NeXus data files using the native HDF5 interfaces in C. Further, there are also some Python examples using the h5py package in the [Python Examples using h5py](#) section.

---

### 1.3.1 The WOnderful New Instrument (WONI)

Consider yourself to be responsible for some hypothetical WOnderful New Instrument (WONI). You are tasked to ensure that WONI will record data according to the NeXus standard. For the sake of simplicity, WONI bears a strong resemblance to a simple powder diffractometer, but let's pretend that WONI cannot use any of the existing NXDL application definitions.

WONI uses collimators and a monochromator to illuminate the sample with neutrons of a selected wavelength as described in [The \(fictional\) WONI example powder diffractometer](#). The diffracted beam is collected in a large, banana-shaped, position sensitive detector. Typical data looks like [Example Powder Diffraction Plot from \(fictional\) WONI at HYNES](#). There is a generous background to the data plus quite a number of diffraction peaks.

### 1.3.2 Constructing a NeXus file for WONI

The starting point for a NeXus file for WONI will be an empty basic NeXus file hierarchy as documented in the next figure. In order to arrive at a full NeXus file, the following steps are required:

1. For each instrument component, decide which parameters need to be stored
2. Map the component parameters to NeXus groups and parameters and add the components to the NXinstrument hierarchy
3. Decide what needs to go into NXdata. While this group is optional, you are urged strongly to provide an NXdata group to support default plotting.
4. Fill the NXsample and NXmonitor groups

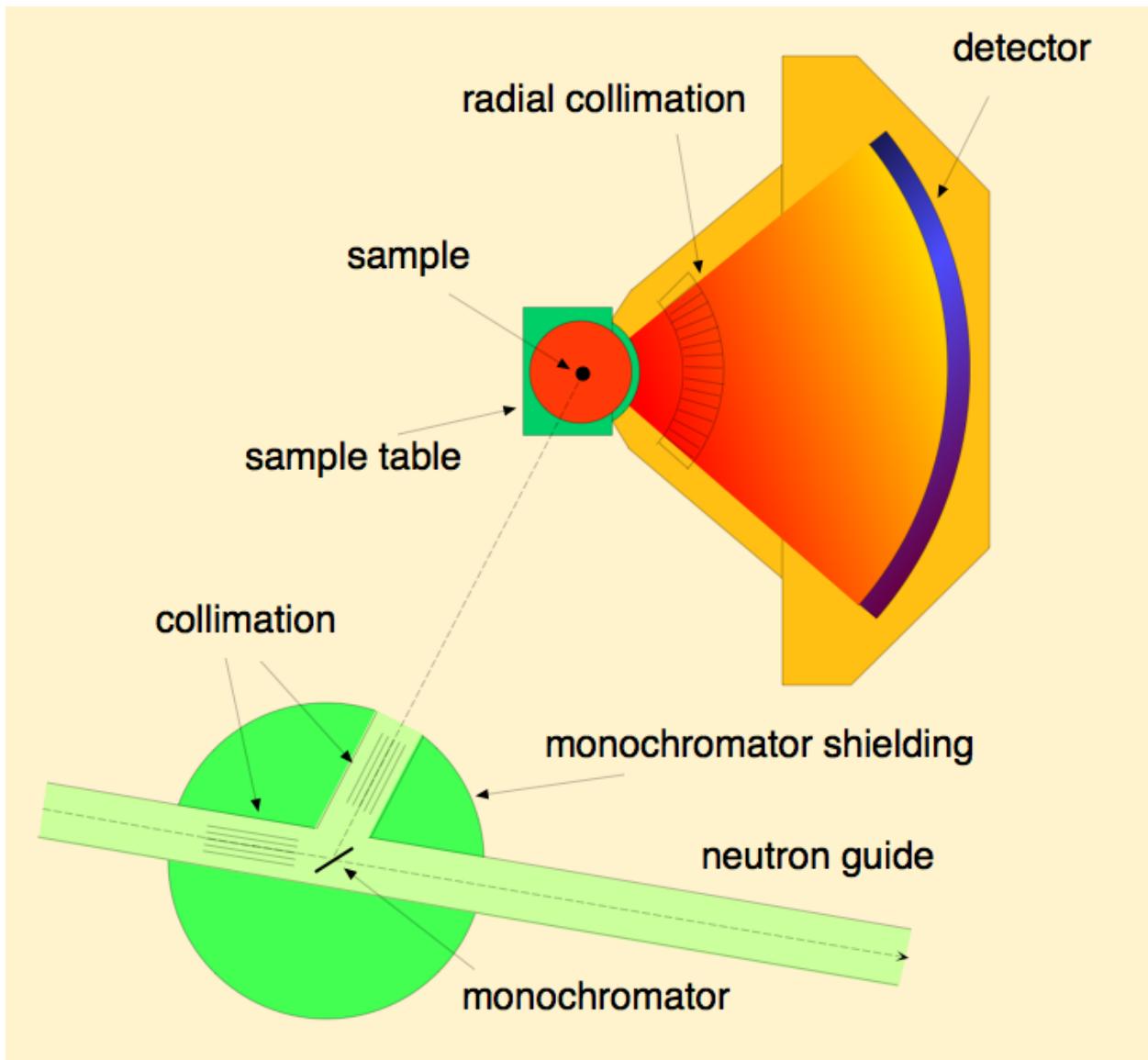


Fig. 15: The (fictional) WONI example powder diffractometer

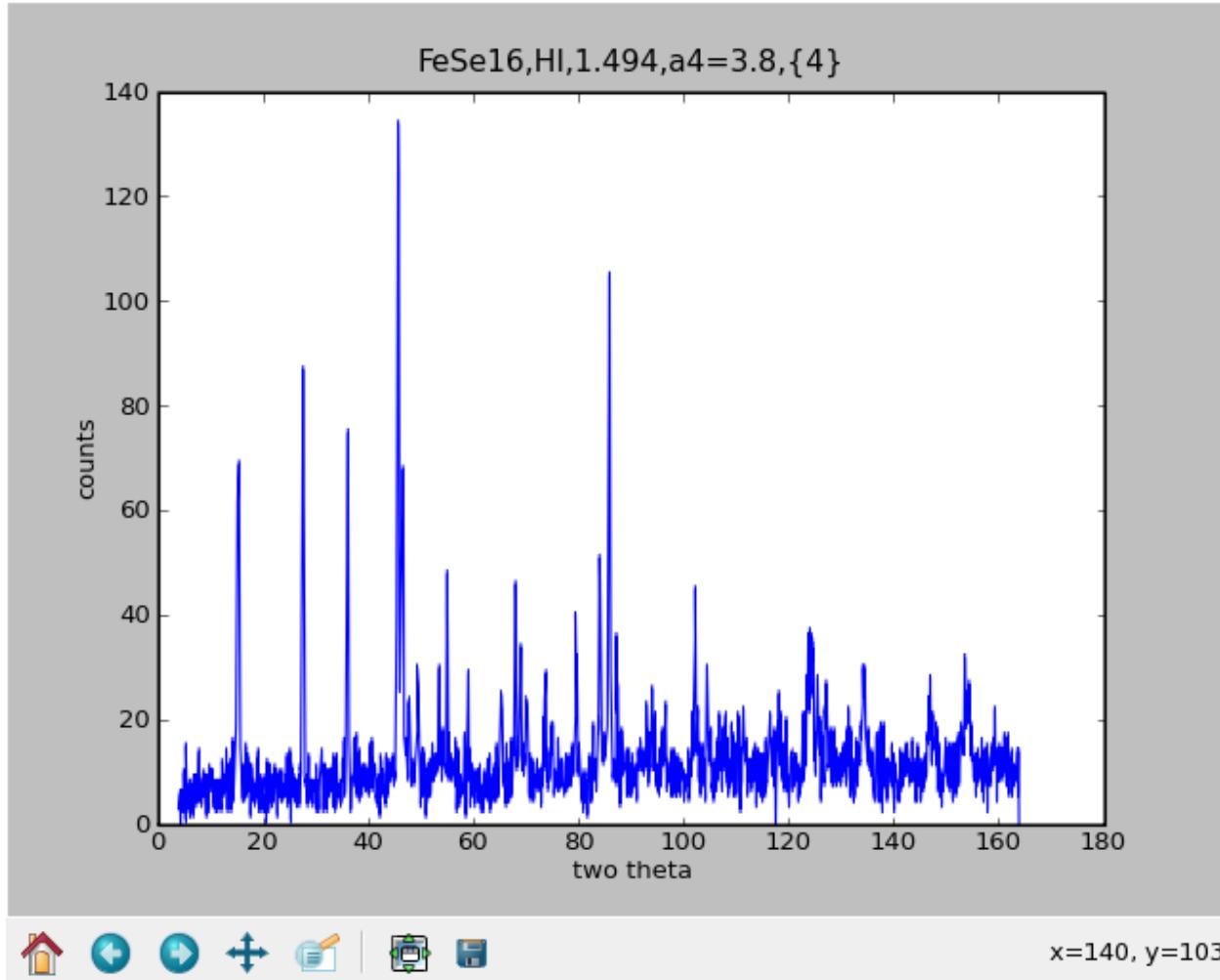


Fig. 16: Example Powder Diffraction Plot from (fictional) WONI at HYNES

## Basic structure of a NeXus file

```

1 entry:NXentry
2   NXdata
3   NXinstrument
4   NXmonitor
5   NXsample

```

### Decide which parameters need to be stored

Now the various groups of this empty NeXus file shell need to be filled. The next step is to look at a design drawing of WONI. Identify all the instrument components like collimators, detectors, monochromators etc. For each component decide which values need to be stored. As NeXus aims to describe the experiment as good as possible, strive to capture as much information as practical.

### Mapping parameters to NeXus

With the list of parameters to store for each component, consult the reference manual section on the NeXus base classes. You will find that for each of your instruments components there will be a suitable NeXus base class. Add this base class together with a name as a group under NXinstrument in your NeXus file hierarchy. Then consult the possible parameter names in the NeXus base class and match them with the parameters you wish to store for your instruments components.

As an example, consider the monochromator. You may wish to store: the wavelength, the d-value of the reflection used, the type of the monochromator and its angle towards the incoming beam. The reference manual tells you that NXcrystal is the right base class to use. Suitable fields for your parameters can be found in there to. After adding them to the basic NeXus file, the file looks like in the next figure:

### Basic structure of a NeXus file with a monochromator added

```

1 entry:NXentry
2   NXdata
3   NXinstrument
4     monochromator:Nxcrystal
5       wavelength
6       d_spacing
7       rotation_angle
8       reflection
9       type
10      NXmonitor
11      NXsample

```

If a parameter or even a whole group is missing in order to describe your experiment, do not despair! Contact the NIAC and suggest to add the group or parameter. Give a little documentation what it is for. The NIAC will check that your suggestion is no duplicate and sufficiently documented and will then proceed to enhance the base classes with your suggestion.

A more elaborate example of the mapping process is given in the section [Creating a NXDL Specification](#).

## Decide on NXdata

The NXdata / group is supposed to contain the data required to put up a quick plot. For WONI this is a plot of counts versus two theta (polar\_angle in NeXus) as can be seen in [Example Powder Diffraction Plot from \(fictional\) WONI at HYNES](#). Now, in NXdata, create links to the appropriate data items in the NXinstrument hierarchy. In the case of WONI, both parameters live in the detector:NXdetector group.

## Fill in auxiliary Information

Look at the section on NXsample in the NeXus reference manual. Choose appropriate parameters to store for your samples. Probably at least the name will be needed.

In order to normalize various experimental runs against each other it is necessary to know about the counting conditions and especially the monitor counts of the monitor used for normalization. The NeXus convention is to store such information in a control:NXmonitor group at NXentry level. Consult the reference for NXmonitor for field names. If additional monitors exist within your experiment, they will be stored as additional NXmonitor groups at entry level.

Consult the documentation for NXentry in order to find out under which names to store information such as titles, user names, experiment times etc.

A more elaborate example of this process can be found in the following section on creating an application definition.

### 1.3.3 Creating a NXDL Specification

An NXDL specification for a NeXus file is required if you desire to standardize NeXus files from various sources. Another name for a NXDL description is application definition. A NXDL specification can be used to verify NeXus files to conform to the standard encapsulated in the application definition. The process for constructing a NXDL specification is similar to the one described above for the construction of NeXus files.

One easy way to describe how to store data in the NeXus class structure and to create a NXDL specification is to work through an example. Along the way, we will describe some key decisions that influence our particular choices of metadata selection and data organization. So, on with the example ...

#### Application Definition Steps

With all this introductory stuff out of the way, let us look at the process required to define an application definition:

1. *Think!* hard about what has to go into the data file.
2. *Map* the required fields into the NeXus hierarchy
3. *Describe* this map in a NXDL file
4. *Standardize* your definition through communication with the NIAC

## Step 1: *Think!* hard about data

This is actually the hard bit. There are two things to consider:

1. What has to go into the data file?
2. What is the normal plot for this type of data?

For the first part, one of the NeXus guiding principles gives us - Guidance! “A NeXus file must contain all the data necessary for standard data analysis.”

Not more and not less for an application definition. Of course the definition of *standard* data for analysis or a *standard* plot depends on the science and the type of data being described. Consult senior scientists in the field about this if you are unsure. Perhaps you must call an international meeting with domain experts to haggle that out. When considering this, people tend to put in everything which might come up. This is not the way to go.

A key test question is: Is this data item necessary for common data analysis? Only these necessary data items belong in an application definition.

The purpose of an application definition is that an author of upstream software who consumes the file can expect certain data items to be there at well defined places. On the other hand if there is a development in your field which analyzes data in a novel way and requires more data to do it, then it is better to err towards the side of more data.

Now for the case of WONI, the standard data analysis is either Rietveld refinement or profile analysis. For both purposes, the kind of radiation used to probe the sample (for WONI, neutrons), the wavelength of the radiation, the monitor (which tells us how long we counted) used to normalize the data, the counts and the two theta angle of each detector element are all required. Usually, it is desirable to know what is being analyzed, so some metadata would be nice: a title, the sample name and the sample temperature. The data typically being plotted is two theta against counts, as shown in [Example Powder Diffraction Plot from \(fictional\) WONI at HYNES](#) above. Summarizing, the basic information required from WONI is given next.

- *title* of measurement
- *sample name*
- *sample temperature*
- counts from the incident beam *monitor*
- type of radiation *probe*
- *wavelength* ( $\lambda$ ) of radiation incident on sample
- angle ( $2\theta$  or *two theta*) of detector elements
- *counts* for each detector element

If you start to worry that this is too little information, hold on, the section on Using an Application Definition ([Using an Application Definition](#)) will reveal the secret how to go from an application definition to a practical file.

## Step 2: Map Data into the NeXus Hierarchy

This step is actually easier than the first one. We need to map the data items which were collected in Step 1 into the NeXus hierarchy. A NeXus file hierarchy starts with an NXentry group. At this stage it is advisable to pull up the base class definition for NXentry and study it. The first thing you might notice is that NXentry contains a field named *title*. Reading the documentation, you quickly realize that this is a good place to store our title. So the first mapping has been found.

```
title = /NXentry/title
```

---

**Note:** In this example, the mapping descriptions just contain the path strings into the NeXus file hierarchy with the class names of the groups to use. As it turns out, this is the syntax used in NXDL link specifications. How convenient!

---

Another thing to notice in the NXentry base class is the existence of a group of class NXsample. This looks like a great place to store information about the sample. Studying the NXsample base class confirms this view and there are two new mappings:

```
1 sample name = /NXentry/NXsample/name
2 sample temperature = /NXentry/NXsample/temperature
```

Scanning the NXentry base class further reveals there can be a NXmonitor group at this level. Looking up the base class for NXmonitor reveals that this is the place to store our monitor information.

```
monitor = /NXentry/NXmonitor/data
```

For the other data items, there seem to be no solutions in NXentry. But each of these data items describe the instrument in more detail. NeXus stores instrument descriptions in the /NXentry/NXinstrument branch of the hierarchy. Thus, we continue by looking at the definition of the NXinstrument base class. In there we find further groups for all possible instrument components. Looking at the schematic of WONI (*The (fictional) WONI example powder diffractometer*), we realize that there is a source, a monochromator and a detector. Suitable groups can be found for these components in NXinstrument and further inspection of the appropriate base classes reveals the following further mappings:

```
1 probe = /NXentry/NXinstrument/NXsource/probe
2 wavelength = /NXentry/NXinstrument/NXcrystal/wavelength
3 two theta of detector elements = /NXentry/NXinstrument/NXdetector/polar_angle
4 counts for each detector element = /NXentry/NXinstrument/NXdetector/data
```

Thus we mapped all our data items into the NeXus hierarchy! What still needs to be done is to decide upon the content of the NXdata group in NXentry. This group describes the data necessary to make a quick plot of the data. For WONI this is counts versus two theta. Thus we add this mapping:

```
1 two theta of detector elements = /NXentry/NXdata/polar_angle
2 counts for each detector element = /NXentry/NXdata/data
```

The full mapping of WONI data into NeXus is documented in the next table:

WONI data	NeXus path
<i>title</i> of measurement	/NXentry/title
<i>sample name</i>	/NXentry/NXsample/name
<i>sample temperature</i>	/NXentry/NXsample/temperature
<i>monitor</i>	/NXentry/NXmonitor/data
<i>type of radiation probe</i>	/NXentry/MXinstrument/NXsource/probe
<i>wavelength</i> of radiation incident on sample	/NXentry/MXinstrument/NXcrystal/wavelength
<i>two theta</i> of detector elements	/NXentry/NXinstrument/NXdetector/polar_angle
<i>counts</i> for each detector element	/NXentry/NXinstrument/NXdetector/data
<i>two theta</i> of detector elements	/NXentry/NXdata/polar_angle
<i>counts</i> for each detector element	/NXentry/NXdata/data

Looking at this table, one might get concerned that the two theta and counts data is stored in two places and thus duplicated. Stop worrying, this problem is solved at the NeXus API level. Typically NXdata will only hold links to the corresponding data items in /NXentry/NXinstrument/NXdetector.

In this step problems might occur. The first is that the base class definitions contain a bewildering number of parameters. This is on purpose: the base classes serve as dictionaries which define names for most things which possibly can occur. You do not have to give all that information. Keep it simple and only require data that is needed for typical data analysis for this type of application.

Another problem which can occur is that you require to store information for which there is no name in one of the existing base classes or you have a new instrument component for which there is no base class altogether. New fields and base classes can be introduced if necessary.

In any case please feel free to contact the NIAC via the mailing list with questions or suggestions.

### **Step 3: *Describe this map in a NXDL file***

This is even easier. Some XML editing is necessary. Fire up your XML editor of choice and open a file. If your XML editor supports XML schema while editing XML, it is worth to load nxdl.xsd. Now your XML editor can help you to create a proper NXDL file. As always, the start is an empty template file. This looks like the XML code below.

---

**Note:** This is just the basic XML for a NXDL definition. It is advisable to change some of the documentation strings.

---

### **NXDL template file**

```

1 <?xml version="1.0" encoding="UTF-8"?>
2 <!--
3 # NeXus - Neutron and X-ray Common Data Format
4 #
5 # Copyright (C) 2008-2020 NeXus International Advisory Committee (NIAC)
6 #
7 # This library is free software; you can redistribute it and/or
8 # modify it under the terms of the GNU Lesser General Public
9 # License as published by the Free Software Foundation; either
10 # version 3 of the License, or (at your option) any later version.
11 #
12 # This library is distributed in the hope that it will be useful,
13 # but WITHOUT ANY WARRANTY; without even the implied warranty of
14 # MERCHANTABILITY or FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE. See the GNU
15 # Lesser General Public License for more details.
16 #
17 # You should have received a copy of the GNU Lesser General Public
18 # License along with this library; if not, write to the Free Software
19 # Foundation, Inc., 59 Temple Place, Suite 330, Boston, MA 02111-1307 USA
20 #
21 # For further information, see https://www.nexusformat.org/
22 -->
23 <definition name="NX_template_" extends="NXobject" type="group"
24   category="application"
25   xmlns="http://definition.nexusformat.org/nxdl/3.1"
26   xmlns:xsi="http://www.w3.org/2001/XMLSchema-instance"
27   xsi:schemaLocation="http://definition.nexusformat.org/nxdl/3.1 ..../nxdl.xsd"
28   version="1.0b"
29   >
30   <doc>template for a NXDL application definition</doc>
31 </definition>
```

For example, copy and rename the file to `NXwoni.nxdl.xml`. Then, locate the XML root element `definition` and change the name attribute (the XML shorthand for this attribute is `/definition/@name`) to `NXwoni`. Change the doc as well.

The next thing which needs to be done is adding groups into the definition. A group is defined by some XML, as in this example:

```
1 <group type="NXdata">
2
3 </group>
```

The type is the actual NeXus base class this group belongs to. Optionally a name attribute may be given (default is `data`).

Next, one needs to include data items, too. The XML for such a data item looks similar to this:

```
1 <field name="polar_angle" type="NX_FLOAT units="NX_ANGLE">
2   <doc>Link to polar angle in /NXentry/NXinstrument/NXdetector</doc>
3   <dimensions rank="1">
4     <dim index="1" value="ndet"/>
5   </dimensions>
6 </field>
```

The meaning of the `name` attribute is intuitive, the `type` can be looked up in the relevant base class definition. A `field` definition can optionally contain a `doc` element which contains a description of the data item. The `dimensions` entry specifies the dimensions of the data set. The `size` attribute in the `dimensions` tag sets the rank of the data, in this example: `rank="1"`. In the `dimensions` group there must be `rank dim` fields. Each `dim` tag holds two attributes: `index` determines to which dimension this tag belongs, the 1 means the first dimension. The `value` attribute then describes the size of the dimension. These can be plain integers, variables, such as in the example `ndet` or even expressions like `tof+1`.

Thus a NXDL file can be constructed. The full NXDL file for the WONI example is given in [Full listing of the WONI Application Definition](#). Clever readers may have noticed the strong similarity between our working example `NXwoni` and `NXmonopd` since they are essentially identical. Give yourselves a cookie if you spotted this.

#### Step 4: Standardize with the NIAC

Basically you are done. Your first application definition for NeXus is constructed. In order to make your work a standard for that particular application type, some more steps are required:

- Send your application definition to the NIAC for review
- Correct your definition per the comments of the NIAC
- Cure and use the definition for a year
- After a final review, it becomes the standard

The NIAC must review an application definition before it is accepted as a standard. The one year curation period is in place in order to gain practical experience with the definition and to sort out bugs from Step 1. In this period, data shall be written and analyzed using the new application definition.

## Full listing of the WONI Application Definition

```

1  <?xml version="1.0" encoding="UTF-8"?>
2  <?xml-stylesheet type="text/xsl" href="nxdlformat.xsl" ?>
3  <!--
4  # NeXus - Neutron and X-ray Common Data Format
5  #
6  # Copyright (C) 2008-2020 NeXus International Advisory Committee (NIAC)
7  #
8  # This library is free software; you can redistribute it and/or
9  # modify it under the terms of the GNU Lesser General Public
10 # License as published by the Free Software Foundation; either
11 # version 3 of the License, or (at your option) any later version.
12 #
13 # This library is distributed in the hope that it will be useful,
14 # but WITHOUT ANY WARRANTY; without even the implied warranty of
15 # MERCHANTABILITY or FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE. See the GNU
16 # Lesser General Public License for more details.
17 #
18 # You should have received a copy of the GNU Lesser General Public
19 # License along with this library; if not, write to the Free Software
20 # Foundation, Inc., 59 Temple Place, Suite 330, Boston, MA 02111-1307 USA
21 #
22 # For further information, see http://www.nexusformat.org
23 -->
24 <definition name="NXmonopd" extends="NXobject" type="group"
25   category="application"
26   xmlns="http://definition.nexusformat.org/nxdl/3.1"
27   xmlns:xsi="http://www.w3.org/2001/XMLSchema-instance"
28   xsi:schemaLocation="http://definition.nexusformat.org/nxdl/3.1 ../nxdl.xsd"
29   >
30   <doc>
31     Monochromatic Neutron and X-Ray Powder diffractometer
32
33     Instrument
34     definition for a powder diffractometer at a monochromatic neutron
35     or X-ray beam. This is both suited for a powder diffractometer
36     with a single detector or a powder diffractometer with a position
37     sensitive detector.
38   </doc>
39   <group type="NXentry" name="entry">
40     <field name="title"/>
41     <field name="start_time" type="NX_DATE_TIME"/>
42     <field name="definition">
43       <doc> Official NeXus NXDL schema to which this file conforms </doc>
44       <enumeration>
45         <item value="NXmonopd"/>
46       </enumeration>
47     </field>
48     <group type="NXinstrument">
49       <group type="NXsource">
50         <field name="type"/>
51         <field name="name"/>
52         <field name="probe">
53           <enumeration>
54             <item value="neutron"/>
55             <item value="x-ray"/>

```

(continues on next page)

(continued from previous page)

```

56             <item value="electron"/>
57         </enumeration>
58     </field>
59 </group>
60 <group type="NXcrystal">
61     <field name="wavelength" type="NX_FLOAT" units="NX_WAVELENGTH">
62         <doc>Optimum diffracted wavelength</doc>
63         <dimensions rank="1">
64             <dim index="1" value="i"/>
65         </dimensions>
66     </field>
67 </group>
68 <group type="NXdetector">
69     <field name="polar_angle" type="NX_FLOAT" axis="1">
70         <doc>where ndet = number of detectors</doc>
71         <dimensions rank="1">
72             <dim index="1" value="ndet" />
73         </dimensions>
74     </field>
75     <field name="data" type="NX_INT" signal="1">
76         <doc>
77             detector signal (usually counts) are already
78             corrected for detector efficiency
79         </doc>
80         <dimensions rank="1">
81             <dim index="1" value="ndet" />
82         </dimensions>
83     </field>
84 </group>
85 </group>
86 <group type="NXsample">
87     <field name="name">
88         <doc>Descriptive name of sample</doc>
89     </field>
90     <field name="rotation_angle" type="NX_FLOAT" units="NX_ANGLE">
91         <doc>
92             Optional rotation angle for the case when the powder diagram
93             has been obtained through an omega-2theta scan like from a
94             traditional single detector powder diffractometer
95         </doc>
96     </field>
97 </group>
98 <group type="NXmonitor">
99     <field name="mode">
100         <doc>
101             Count to a preset value based on either clock time (timer)
102             or received monitor counts (monitor).
103         </doc>
104         <enumeration>
105             <item value="monitor"/>
106             <item value="timer"/>
107         </enumeration>
108     </field>
109     <field name="preset" type="NX_FLOAT">
110         <doc>preset value for time or monitor</doc>
111     </field>
112     <field name="integral" type="NX_FLOAT" units="NX_ANY">
```

(continues on next page)

(continued from previous page)

```

113     <doc>Total integral monitor counts</doc>
114   </field>
115 </group>
116 <group type="NXdata">
117   <link name="polar_angle" target="/NXentry/NXinstrument/NXdetector/polar_
118   ↳angle">
119     <doc>Link to polar angle in /NXentry/NXinstrument/NXdetector</doc>
120   </link>
121   <link name="data" target="/NXentry/NXinstrument/NXdetector/data">
122     <doc>Link to data in /NXentry/NXinstrument/NXdetector</doc>
123   </link>
124 </group>
125 </group>
</definition>
```

## Using an Application Definition

The application definition is like an interface for your data file. In practice files will contain far more information. For this, the extendable capability of NeXus comes in handy. More data can be added, and upstream software relying on the interface defined by the application definition can still retrieve the necessary information without any changes to their code.

NeXus application definitions only standardize classes. You are free to decide upon names of groups, subject to them matching regular expression for NeXus name attributes (see the [regular expression pattern for NXDL group and field names](#) in the [Naming Conventions](#) section). Note the length limit of 63 characters imposed by HDF5. Please use sensible, descriptive names and separate multi worded names with underscores.

Something most people wish to add is more metadata, for example in order to index files into a database of some sort. Go ahead, do so, if applicable, scan the NeXus base classes for standardized names. For metadata, consider to use the NXarchive definition. In this context, it is worth to mention that a practical NeXus file might adhere to more than one application definition. For example, WONI data files may adhere to both the NXmonopd and NXarchive definitions. The first for data analysis, the second for indexing into the database.

Often, instrument scientists want to store the complete state of their instrument in data files in order to be able to find out what went wrong if the data is unsatisfactory. Go ahead, do so, please use names from the NeXus base classes.

Site policy might require you to store the names of all your bosses up to the current head of state in data files. Go ahead, add as many NXuser classes as required to store that information. Knock yourselves silly over this.

Your Scientific Accounting Department (SAD) may ask of you the preposterous; to store billing information into data files. Go ahead, do so if your judgment allows. Just do not expect the NIAC to provide base classes for this and do not use the prefix NX for your classes.

In most cases, NeXus files will just have one NXentry class group. But it may be required to store multiple related data sets of the results of data analysis into the same data file. In this case create more entries. Each entry should be interpretable standalone, i.e. contain all the information of a complete NXentry class. Please keep in mind that groups or data items which stay constant across entries can always be linked in.

### 1.3.4 Processed Data

Data reduction and analysis programs are encouraged to store their results in NeXus data files. As far as the necessary, the normal NeXus hierarchy is to be implemented. In addition, processed data files must contain a [NXprocess](#) group. This group, that documents and preserves data provenance, contains the name of the data processing program and the parameters used to run this program in order to achieve the results stored in this entry. Multiple processing steps must have a separate entry each.

## 1.4 Strategies for storing information in NeXus data files

NeXus may appear daunting, at first, to use. The number of base classes is quite large as well as is the number of application definitions. This chapter describes some of the strategies that have been recommended for how to store information in NeXus data files.

When we use the term *storing*, some might be helped if they consider this as descriptions for how to *classify* their data. It is intended for this chapter to grow, with the addition of different use cases as they are presented for suggestions.

### 1.4.1 Strategies: The simplest case(s)

Perhaps the simplest case might be either a step scan with two or more columns of data. Another simple case might be a single image acquired by an area detector. In either of these hypothetical cases, the situation is so simple that there is little addition information available to be described (for whatever reason).

#### Step scan with two or more data columns

Consider the case where we wish to store the data from a step scan. This case may involve two or more *related* 1-D arrays of data to be saved, each having the same length. For our hypothetical case, we'll have these positioners as arrays and assume that a default plot of *photodiode* vs. *ar*:

positioner arrays	detector arrays
ar, ay, dy	I0, I100, time, Epoch, photodiode

#### Data file structure for Step scan with two or more data columns

```
1 file.nxs: NeXus HDF5 data file
2     @default = entry
3     entry: NXentry
4         @NX_class = NXentry
5         @default = data
6         data: NXdata
7             @NX_class = NXdata
8             @signal = photodiode
9             @axes = ar
10            ar: NX_FLOAT[]
11            ay: NX_FLOAT[]
12            dy: NX_FLOAT[]
13            I0: NX_FLOAT[]
14            I100: NX_FLOAT[]
15            time: NX_FLOAT[]
```

(continues on next page)

(continued from previous page)

```
16    Epoch: NX_FLOAT []
17    photodiode: NX_FLOAT []
```

## 1.4.2 Strategies: The wavelength

*Where should the wavelength of my experiment be written?* This is one of the [Frequently Asked Questions](#). The canonical location to store wavelength has been:

```
/NXentry/NXinstrument/NXcrystal/wavelength
```

### Partial data file structure for *canonical location to store wavelength*

```
1 entry: NXentry
2   @NX_class = NXentry
3   instrument: NXinstrument
4     @NX_class = NXinstrument
5     crystal: NXcrystal
6       @NX_class = NXcrystal
7       wavelength: NX_FLOAT
```

More recently, this location makes more sense to many:

```
/NXentry/NXinstrument/NXmonochromator/wavelength
```

### Partial data file structure for *location which makes more sense to many to store wavelength*

```
1 entry: NXentry
2   @NX_class = NXentry
3   instrument: NXinstrument
4     @NX_class = NXinstrument
5     monochromator: NXmonochromator
6       @NX_class = NXmonochromator
7       wavelength: NX_FLOAT
```

*NXcrystal* describes a crystal monochromator or analyzer. Recently, scientists with monochromatic radiation not defined by a crystal, such as from an electron-beam undulator or a neutron helical velocity selector, were not satisfied with creating a fictitious instance of a crystal just to preserve the wavelength from their instrument. Thus, the addition of the *NXmonochromator* base class to NeXus, which also allows “energy” to be specified if one is so inclined.

---

**Note:** See the [Class path specification](#) section for a short discussion of the difference between the HDF5 path and the NeXus symbolic class path.

---

### 1.4.3 Strategies: Time-stamped data

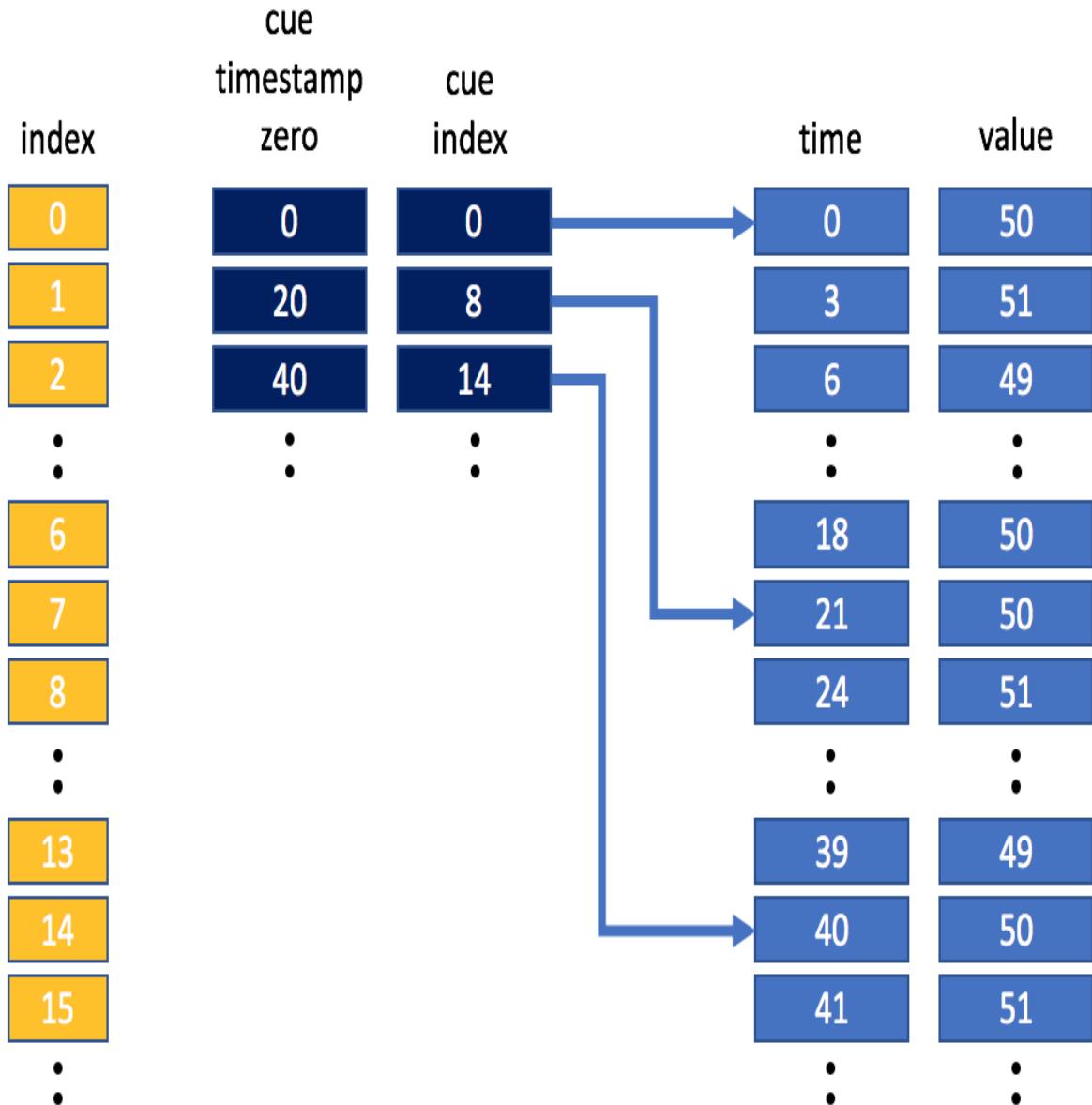
*How should I store time-stamped data?*

Time-stamped data can be stored in either [NXlog](#) and [NXevent\\_data](#) structures. Of the two, [NXlog](#) is the most important one, [NXevent\\_data](#) is normally only used for storing detector time of flight event data and [NXlog](#) would be used for storing any other time-stamped data, e.g. sample temperature, chopper top-dead-centre, motor position, detector images etc.

Regarding the NeXus file structure to use, there is one simple rule: just use the standard NeXus file structure but insert/replace the fields for streamed data elements through [NXlog](#) or [NXevent\\_data](#) structures. For example, consider the collection of detector images against a change in the magnetic field on the sample. Then, both NXsample/magnetic\_field and NXdetector/data would be [NXlog](#) structures containing the time stamped data.

Both [NXlog](#) and [NXevent\\_data](#) have additional support for storing time-stamped data in the form of cues; cues can be used to place markers in the data that allow one to quickly look up coarse time ranges of interest. This coarse range of data can then be manually trimmed to be more selective, if required. The application writing the NeXus file is responsible for writing cues and when they are written. For example, the cue could be written every 10 seconds, every pulse, every 100 datapoints and so on.

Let's consider the case where [NXlog](#) is being used to store sample temperature data that has been sampled once every three seconds. The application that wrote the data has added cues every 20 seconds. Pictorially, this may look something like this:



If we wanted to retrieve the mean temperature between 30 and 40 seconds, we would use the cues to grab the data between 20 seconds and 40 seconds, and then trim that data to get the data we want. Obviously in this simple example this does not gain us a lot, but it is easy to see that in a large dataset having appropriately placed cues can save significant computational time when looking up values in a certain time-stamp range. NeXus has actually borrowed the cueing table concept from video file formats where it allows viewing software to quickly access your favourite scene. Correspondingly, cueing in NeXus allows you to quickly access your favourite morsel of time stamped data.

In the NeXus Features repository, the feature [ECB064453EDB096D](#) shows example code that uses cues to select time-stamped data.

#### 1.4.4 Strategies: The next case

The *NIAC: The NeXus International Advisory Committee* welcomes suggestions for additional sections in this chapter.

### 1.5 Verification and validation of files

The intent of verification and validation of files is to ensure, in an unbiased way, that a given file conforms to the relevant specifications. Validation does not check that the data content of the file is sensible; this requires scientific interpretation based on the technique.

Validation is useful to anyone who manipulates or modifies the contents of NeXus files. This includes scientists/users, instrument staff, software developers, and those who might mine the files for metadata. First, the scientist or user of the data must be certain that the information in a file can be located reliably. The instrument staff or software developer must be confident the information they have written to the file has been located and formatted properly. At some time, the content of the NeXus file may contribute to a larger body of work such as a metadata catalog for a scientific instrument, a laboratory, or even an entire user facility.

#### 1.5.1 nxvalidate

The `cnxvalidate` utility<sup>1</sup>, new in 2016, is available for testing. Refer to the GitHub location for the most recent information.

This utility only works on HDF5 files and is aimed to be faster, simpler, more portable and robust than previous programmes for NeXus file validation.

#### 1.5.2 punx

Python Utilities for NeXus HDF5 files

`punx` can validate both NXDL files and NeXus HDF5 data files, as well as print the structure of any HDF5 file, even non-NeXus files.

NOTE: project is under initial construction, not yet released for public use, but is useful in its present form (version 0.0.9).

See the program documentation for more details: <https://punx.readthedocs.io>

### 1.6 Frequently Asked Questions

This is a list of commonly asked questions concerning the NeXus data format.

1. Is it Nexus, NeXus or NeXuS?

NeXus is correct. It is a format for data from **Neutron** and **X-ray** facilities, hence those first letters are capitalised. The format is also used for muon experiments, but there is no *mu* (or m) in NeXus and no s in muon. So the s stays in lower case.

2. How many facilities use NeXus?

---

<sup>1</sup> `cnxvalidate`: from <https://github.com/nexusformat/cnxvalidate>

This is not easy to say, not all facilities using NeXus actively participate in the committee. Some facilities have reported their adoption status on the [Facilities web page](#). Please have a look at this list. Keep in mind that it is never fully complete or up to date.

### 3. NeXus files are binary? This is crazy! How am I supposed to see my data?

Various tools are listed in the [NeXus Utilities](#) section to inspect NeXus data files. The easiest graphical tool to use is *HDFview* which can open any HDF file. Other tools such as *PyMCA* and *NeXPY* provide visualization of scientific data while *h5dump* and *punx tree* provide text renditions of content and structure. If you want to try, for example *nxbrowse* is a utility provided by the NeXus community that can be very helpful to those who want to inspect their files and avoid graphical applications. For larger data volumes the binary backends used with the appropriate tools are by far superior in terms of efficiency and speed and most users happily accept that after having worked with supersized “human readable” files for a while.

### 4. What on-disk file format should I choose for my data?

HDF5 is the default file container to use for NeXus data. It is the recommended format for all applications. HDF4 is still supported as a on disk format for NeXus but for new installations preference should be given to HDF5.

### 5. Why are the NeXus classes so complicated? I'll never store all that information

The NeXus classes are essentially glossaries of terms. If you need to store a piece of information, consult the class definitions to see if it has been defined. If so, use it. It is not compulsory to include every item that has been defined in the base class if it is not relevant to your experiment. On the other hand, a NeXus application definition lists a smaller set of compulsory items that should allow other researchers or software to analyze your data. You should really follow the application definition that corresponds to your experiment to take full advantage of NeXus.

### 6. I don't like NeXus. It seems much faster and simpler to develop my own file format. Why should I even consider NeXus?

If you consider using an efficient on disk storage format, HDF5 is a better choice than most others. It is fast and efficient and well supported in all mainstream programming languages and a fair share of popular analysis packages. The format is so widely used and backed by a big organisation that it will continue to be supported for the foreseeable future. So if you are going to use HDF5 anyway, why not use the NeXus definition to lay out the data in a standardised way? The NeXus community spent years trying to get the standard right and while you will not agree with every single choice they made in the past, you should be able to store the data you have in a quite reasonable way. If you do not comply with NeXus, chances are most people will perceive your format as different but not necessarily better than NeXus by any large measure. So it may not be worth the effort. Seriously.

If you encounter any problems because the classes are not sufficient to describe your experiment, please contact the [mailing list](#). Pull requests for the definitions repository (for example adding contributed definitions) are also welcome (see next question). The NIAC is always willing to consider new proposals.

### 7. I want to contribute an application definition. How do I go about it?

Read the NXDL Tutorial in [Creating a NXDL Specification](#) and have a try. You can ask for help on the [mailing lists](#). Once you have a definition that is working well for at least your case, you can submit it to the NIAC for acceptance as a standard. The procedures for acceptance are defined in the NIAC constitution.<sup>1</sup>

### 8. What is the purpose of NXdata?

<sup>1</sup> Refer to the most recent version of the NIAC constitution on the NIAC web page: <https://www.nexusformat.org/NIAC.html#constitution>

`NXdata` identifies the default plottable data. This is one of the basic motivations (see [Simple plotting](#)) for the NeXus standard. The choice of the name `NXdata` is historic and does not really reflect its function. The `NXdata` group contains data or links to the data stored elsewhere.

## 9. How do I identify the plottable data?

See the section: [Find the plottable data](#).

## 1. Why aren't `NXsample` and `NXmonitor` groups stored in the `NXinstrument` group?

A NeXus file can contain a number of `NXentry` groups, which may represent different scans in an experiment, or sample and calibration runs, etc. In many cases, though by no means all, the instrument has the same configuration so that it would be possible to save space by storing the `NXinstrument` group once and using multiple links in the remaining `NXentry` groups. It is assumed that the sample and monitor information would be more likely to change from run to run, and so should be stored at the top level.

## 2. Can I use a NXDL specification to parse a NeXus data file?

This should be possible as there is nothing in the NeXus specifications to prevent this but it is not implemented in NAPI. You would need to implement it for yourself.

## 3. Do I have to use the NAPI subroutines? Can't I read (or write) the NeXus data files with my own routines?

You are not required to use the NAPI to write valid NeXus data files. It is possible to avoid the NAPI to write and read valid NeXus data files. But, the programmer who chooses this path must have more understanding of how the NeXus HDF data file is written. Validation of data files written without the NAPI is strongly encouraged.

## 4. I'm using links to place data in two places. Which one should be the data and which one is the link?

---

**Note:** NeXus uses HDF5 hard links

In HDF, a hard link points to a data object. A soft link points to a directory entry. Since NeXus uses hard links, there is no need to distinguish between two (or more) directory entries that point to the same data.

---

Both places have pointers to the actual data. That is the way hard links work in HDF5. There is no need for a preference to either location. NeXus defines a `target` attribute to label one directory entry as the source of the data (in this, the link *target*). This has value in only a few situations such as when converting the data from one format to another. By identifying the original in place, duplicate copies of the data are not converted.

## 5. If I write my data according to the current specification for `NXsas` (substitute any other application definition), will other software be able to read my data?

Yes. `NXsas`, like other [Application Definitions](#), defines and names the *minimum information* required for analysis or data processing. As long as all the information required by the specification is present, analysis software should be able to process the data. If other information is also present, there is no guarantee that small-angle scattering analysis software will notice.

## 6. Where do I store the wavelength of my experiment?

See the [Strategies: The wavelength](#) section.

## 7. Where do I store metadata about my experiment?

See the [Where to Store Metadata](#) section.

## 8. What file extension should I use when writing a NeXus data file?

Any extension is permitted. Common extensions are *.h5*, *.hdf*, *.hdf5*, and *.nxs* while others are possible. See the many examples in the NeXus exampledata repository. (<https://github.com/nexusformat/exampledatal>)



## EXAMPLES OF WRITING AND READING NEXUS DATA FILES

Simple examples of reading and writing NeXus data files are provided in the *NeXus Introduction* chapter and also in the *NAPI: NeXus Application Programmer Interface (frozen)* chapter. Here, three examples are provided showing how to write a NeXus data file without using the NAPI.

### 2.1 Code Examples in Various Languages

Each example in this section demonstrates either reading NeXus files in one of the supported storage containers (HDF5 or one of the legacy container formats: HDF4 or XML) or writing compliant NeXus files in the HDF5 storage containers. Please be aware that not all examples are up to date with the latest format recommendations.

#### 2.1.1 Example NeXus C programs using native HDF5 commands

C-language code examples are provided for writing and reading NeXus-compliant files using the native HDF5 interfaces. These examples are derived from the simple NAPI examples for *writing* and *reading* given in the *Introduction* chapter. Compare these code examples with *Example NeXus programs using NAPI*.

##### Writing a simple NeXus file using native HDF5 commands in C

---

**Note:** This example uses the signal/axes attributes applied to the data field, as described in *Associating plottable data by name using the axes attribute*. New code should use the method described in *Associating plottable data using attributes applied to the NXdata group*.

---

```
1  /**
2   * This is an example how to write a valid NeXus file
3   * using the HDF-5 API alone. Ths structure which is
4   * going to be created is:
5   *
6   * scan:NXentry
7   *   data:NXdata
8   *     counts[]
9   *       @signal=1
10  *       two_theta[]
11  *         @units=degrees
12  *
13  *   WARNING: each of the HDF function below needs to be
14  *   wrapped into something like:
```

(continues on next page)

(continued from previous page)

```

15
16 *   if((hdfid = H5function(...)) < 0) {
17 *     handle error gracefully
18 *
19 * I left the error checking out in order to keep the
20 * code clearer
21 *
22 * This also installs a link from /scan/data/two_theta to /scan/hugo
23 *
24 * Mark Koennecke, October 2011
25 */
26 #include <hdf5.h>
27 #include <stdlib.h>
28 #include <string.h>
29
30 #define LENGTH 400
31 int main(int argc, char *argv[])
32 {
33     float two_theta[LENGTH];
34     int counts[LENGTH], i, rank, signal;
35
36     /* HDF-5 handles */
37     hid_t fid, fapl, gid, attrs, atttype, attid;
38     hid_t datatype, dataspace, dataprop, dataid;
39     hsize_t dim[1], maxdim[1];
40
41
42     /* create some data: nothing NeXus or HDF-5 specific */
43     for(i = 0; i < LENGTH; i++){
44         two_theta[i] = 10. + .1*i;
45         counts[i] = (int)(1000 * ((float)random() / (float)RAND_MAX));
46     }
47     dim[0] = LENGTH;
48     maxdim[0] = LENGTH;
49     rank = 1;
50
51
52     /*
53      * open the file. The file attribute forces normal file
54      * closing behaviour down HDF-5's throat
55      */
56     fapl = H5Pcreate(H5P_FILE_ACCESS);
57     H5Pset_fclose_degree(fapl,H5F_CLOSE_STRONG);
58     fid = H5Fcreate("NXfile.h5", H5F_ACC_TRUNC, H5P_DEFAULT,fapl);
59     H5Pclose(fapl);
60
61
62     /*
63      * create scan:NXentry
64      */
65     gid = H5Gcreate(fid, (const char *)"scan",0);
66     /*
67      * store the NX_class attribute. Notice that you
68      * have to take care to close those hids after use
69      */
70     attrs = H5Screate(H5S_SCALAR);
71

```

(continues on next page)

(continued from previous page)

```

72 atttype = H5Tcopy(H5T_C_S1);
73 H5Tset_size(atttype, strlen("NXentry"));
74 attid = H5Acreate(gid, "NX_class", atttype, atts, H5P_DEFAULT);
75 H5Awrite(attid, atttype, (char *)"NXentry");
76 H5Sclose(atts);
77 H5Tclose(atttype);
78 H5Aclose(attid);

79 /*
80 * same thing for data:Nxdata in scan:NXentry.
81 * A subroutine would be nice to have here.....
82 */
83
84 gid = H5Gcreate(fid, (const char *)"/scan/data", 0);
85 atts = H5Screate(H5S_SCALAR);
86 atttype = H5Tcopy(H5T_C_S1);
87 H5Tset_size(atttype, strlen("NXdata"));
88 attid = H5Acreate(gid, "NX_class", atttype, atts, H5P_DEFAULT);
89 H5Awrite(attid, atttype, (char *)"NXdata");
90 H5Sclose(atts);
91 H5Tclose(atttype);
92 H5Aclose(attid);

93 /*
94 * store the counts dataset
95 */
96
97 dataspace = H5Screate_simple(rank, dim, maxdim);
98 datatype = H5Tcopy(H5T_NATIVE_INT);
99 dataprop = H5Pcreate(H5P_DATASET_CREATE);
100 dataid = H5Dcreate(gid, (char *)"counts", datatype, dataspace, dataprop);
101 H5Dwrite(dataid, datatype, H5S_ALL, H5S_ALL, H5P_DEFAULT, counts);
102 H5Sclose(dataspace);
103 H5Tclose(datatype);
104 H5Pclose(dataprop);
105 /*
106 * set the signal=1 attribute
107 */
108 atts = H5Screate(H5S_SCALAR);
109 atttype = H5Tcopy(H5T_NATIVE_INT);
110 H5Tset_size(atttype, 1);
111 attid = H5Acreate(dataid, "signal", atttype, atts, H5P_DEFAULT);
112 signal = 1;
113 H5Awrite(attid, atttype, &signal);
114 H5Sclose(atts);
115 H5Tclose(atttype);
116 H5Aclose(attid);

117 H5Dclose(dataid);

118 /*
119 * store the two_theta dataset
120 */
121
122 dataspace = H5Screate_simple(rank, dim, maxdim);
123 datatype = H5Tcopy(H5T_NATIVE_FLOAT);
124 dataprop = H5Pcreate(H5P_DATASET_CREATE);
125 dataid = H5Dcreate(gid, (char *)"two_theta", datatype, dataspace, dataprop);
126 H5Dwrite(dataid, datatype, H5S_ALL, H5S_ALL, H5P_DEFAULT, two_theta);
127 H5Sclose(dataspace);
128

```

(continues on next page)

(continued from previous page)

```

129 H5Tclose(datatype);
130 H5Pclose(dataprop);
131
132 /*
133 * set the units attribute
134 */
135 atttype = H5Tcopy(H5T_C_S1);
136 H5Tset_size(atttype, strlen("degrees"));
137 atts = H5Screate(H5S_SCALAR);
138 attid = H5Acreate(dataid, "units", atttype, atts, H5P_DEFAULT);
139 H5Awrite(attid, atttype, (char *)"degrees");
140 H5Sclose(atts);
141 H5Tclose(atttype);
142 H5Aclose(attid);
143 /*
144 * set the target attribute for linking
145 */
146 atttype = H5Tcopy(H5T_C_S1);
147 H5Tset_size(atttype, strlen("/scan/data/two_theta"));
148 atts = H5Screate(H5S_SCALAR);
149 attid = H5Acreate(dataid, "target", atttype, atts, H5P_DEFAULT);
150 H5Awrite(attid, atttype, (char *)"/scan/data/two_theta");
151 H5Sclose(atts);
152 H5Tclose(atttype);
153 H5Aclose(attid);
154
155
156 H5Dclose(dataid);
157
158 /*
159 * make a link in /scan to /scan/data/two_theta, thereby
160 * renaming two_theta to hugo
161 */
162 H5Glink(fid, H5G_LINK_HARD, "/scan/data/two_theta", "/scan/hugo");
163
164 /*
165 * close the file
166 */
167 H5Fclose(fid);
168 }

```

## Reading a simple NeXus file using native HDF5 commands in C

```

1 /**
2 * Reading example for reading NeXus files with plain
3 * HDF-5 API calls. This reads out counts and two_theta
4 * out of the file generated by nxh5write.
5 *
6 * WARNING: I left out all error checking in this example.
7 * In production code you have to take care of those errors
8 *
9 * Mark Koennecke, October 2011
10 */
11 #include <hdf5.h>
12 #include <stdlib.h>

```

(continues on next page)

(continued from previous page)

```

13
14 int main(int argc, char *argv[])
15 {
16     float *two_theta = NULL;
17     int *counts = NULL, rank, i;
18     hid_t fid, dataid, fapl;
19     hsize_t *dim = NULL;
20     hid_t datatype, dataspace, memdataspace;
21
22     /*
23      * Open file, thereby enforcing proper file close
24      * semantics
25     */
26     fapl = H5Pcreate(H5P_FILE_ACCESS);
27     H5Pset_fclose_degree(fapl,H5F_CLOSE_STRONG);
28     fid = H5Fopen("NXfile.h5", H5F_ACC_RDONLY,fapl);
29     H5Pclose(fapl);
30
31     /*
32      * open and read the counts dataset
33     */
34     dataid = H5Dopen(fid,"/scan/data/counts");
35     dataspace = H5Dget_space(dataid);
36     rank = H5Sget_simple_extent_ndims(dataspace);
37     dim = malloc(rank*sizeof(hsize_t));
38     H5Sget_simple_extent_dims(dataspace, dim, NULL);
39     counts = malloc(dim[0]*sizeof(int));
40     memdataspace = H5Tcopy(H5T_NATIVE_INT32);
41     H5Dread(dataid,memdataspace,H5S_ALL, H5S_ALL,H5P_DEFAULT, counts);
42     H5Dclose(dataid);
43     H5Sclose(dataspace);
44     H5Tclose(memdataspace);
45
46     /*
47      * open and read the two_theta data set
48     */
49     dataid = H5Dopen(fid,"/scan/data/two_theta");
50     dataspace = H5Dget_space(dataid);
51     rank = H5Sget_simple_extent_ndims(dataspace);
52     dim = malloc(rank*sizeof(hsize_t));
53     H5Sget_simple_extent_dims(dataspace, dim, NULL);
54     two_theta = malloc(dim[0]*sizeof(float));
55     memdataspace = H5Tcopy(H5T_NATIVE_FLOAT);
56     H5Dread(dataid,memdataspace,H5S_ALL, H5S_ALL,H5P_DEFAULT, two_theta);
57     H5Dclose(dataid);
58     H5Sclose(dataspace);
59     H5Tclose(memdataspace);
60
61
62     H5Fclos
63
64     for(i = 0; i < dim[0]; i++) {
65         printf("%8.2f %10d\n", two_theta[i], counts[i]);
66     }
67
68
69 }
```

## 2.1.2 Python Examples using h5py

One way to gain a quick familiarity with NeXus is to start working with some data. For at least the first few examples in this section, we have a simple two-column set of 1-D data, collected as part of a series of alignment scans by the APS USAXS instrument during the time it was stationed at beam line 32ID. We will show how to write this data using the Python language and the h5py package<sup>1</sup> (using h5py calls directly rather than using the NeXus NAPI). The actual data to be written was extracted (elsewhere) from a spec<sup>2</sup> data file and read as a text block from a file by the Python source code. Our examples will start with the simplest case and add only mild complexity with each new case since these examples are meant for those who are unfamiliar with NeXus.

The data shown plotted in the next figure will be written to the NeXus HDF5 file using only two NeXus base classes, NXentry and NXdata, in the first example and then minor variations on this structure in the next two examples. The data model is identical to the one in the *Introduction* chapter except that the names will be different, as shown below:

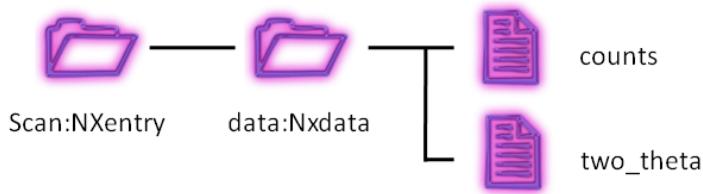


Fig. 1: data structure, (from Introduction)

### our h5py example

```

1 /entry:NXentry
2   /mr_scan:Nxdata
3     /mr : float64[31]
4     /I00 : int32[31]
  
```

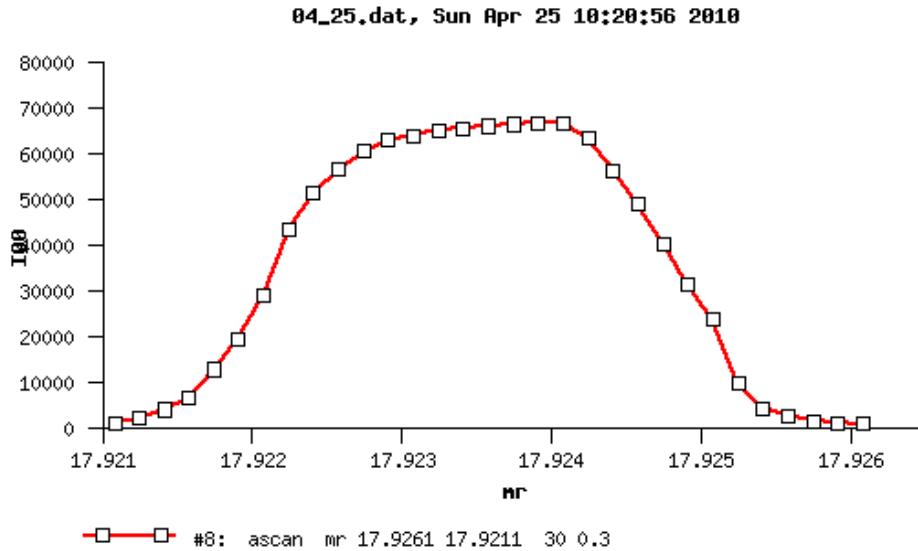
### two-column data for our mr\_scan

1	17.92608	1037
2	17.92591	1318
3	17.92575	1704
4	17.92558	2857
5	17.92541	4516
6	17.92525	9998
7	17.92508	23819
8	17.92491	31662
9	17.92475	40458
10	17.92458	49087
11	17.92441	56514
12	17.92425	63499
13	17.92408	66802
14	17.92391	66863
15	17.92375	66599
16	17.92358	66206
17	17.92341	65747

(continues on next page)

<sup>1</sup> h5py: <http://code.google.com/p/h5py>

<sup>2</sup> SPEC: <http://certif.com/spec.html>

Fig. 2: plot of our *mr\_scan*

(continued from previous page)

18	17.92325	65250
19	17.92308	64129
20	17.92291	63044
21	17.92275	60796
22	17.92258	56795
23	17.92241	51550
24	17.92225	43710
25	17.92208	29315
26	17.92191	19782
27	17.92175	12992
28	17.92158	6622
29	17.92141	4198
30	17.92125	2248
31	17.92108	1321

### Writing the simplest data using h5py

These two examples show how to write the simplest data (above). One example writes the data directly to the *NXdata* group while the other example writes the data to *NXinstrument/NXdetector/data* and then creates a soft link to that data in *NXdata*.

### h5py example writing the simplest NeXus data file

In this example, the 1-D scan data will be written into the simplest possible NeXus HDF5 data file, containing only the required NeXus components. NeXus requires at least one *NXentry* group at the root level of an HDF5 file. The NXentry group contains *all the data and associated information that comprise a single measurement*. NXdata is used to describe the plottable data in the NXentry group. The simplest place to store data in a NeXus file is directly in the NXdata group, as shown in the next figure.

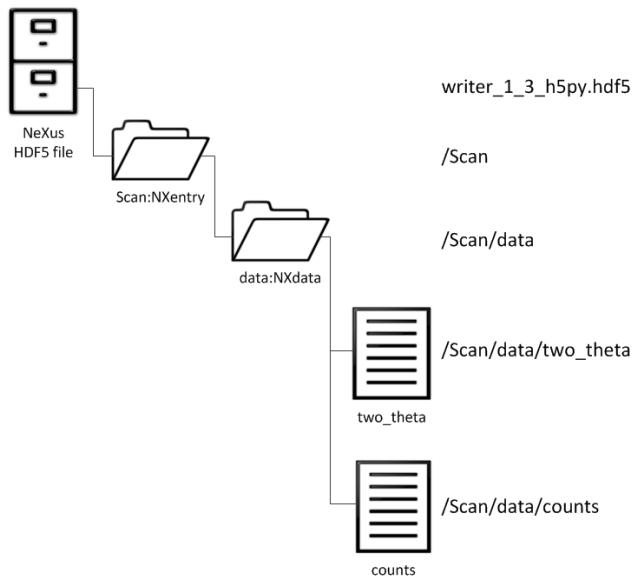


Fig. 3: Simple Example

In the *above figure*, the data file (`writer_1_3_h5py.hdf5`) contains a hierarchy of items, starting with an NXentry named `entry`. (The full HDF5 path reference, `/entry` in this case, is shown to the right of each component in the data structure.) The next h5py code example will show how to build an HDF5 data file with this structure. Starting with the numerical data described above, the only information written to the file is the *absolute minimum information* NeXus requires. In this example, you can see how the HDF5 file is created, how *Groups* and datasets (*Fields*) are created, and how *Attributes* are assigned. Note particularly the `NX_class` attribute on each HDF5 group that describes which of the NeXus *Base Class Definitions* is being used. When the next Python program (`writer_1_3_h5py.py`) is run from the command line (and there are no problems), the `writer_1_3_h5py.hdf5` file is generated.

```

1 #!/usr/bin/env python
2 '''
3 Writes the simplest NeXus HDF5 file using h5py
4
5 Uses method accepted at 2014NIAC
6 according to the example from Figure 1.3
7 in the Introduction chapter
8 '''
9
10 import h5py
11 import numpy
12
13 buffer = numpy.loadtxt("input.dat").T
14 tthData = buffer[0]                      # float[]
15 countsData = numpy.asarray(buffer[1], 'int32')  # int[]
16
  
```

(continues on next page)

(continued from previous page)

```

17 f = h5py.File("writer_1_3.hdf5", "w")    # create the HDF5 NeXus file
18 # since this is a simple example, no attributes are used at this point
19
20 nxentry = f.create_group(u"Scan")
21 nxentry.attrs[u"NX_class"] = u"NXentry"
22
23 nxdata = nxentry.create_group(u"data")
24 nxdata.attrs["NX_class"] = u"NXdata"
25 nxdata.attrs[u"signal"] = u"counts"
26 nxdata.attrs[u"axes"] = u"two_theta"
27 nxdata.attrs[u"two_theta_indices"] = [0,]
28
29 tth = nxdata.create_dataset(u"two_theta", data=tthData)
30 tth.attrs[u"units"] = u"degrees"
31
32 counts = nxdata.create_dataset(u"counts", data=countsData)
33 counts.attrs[u"units"] = u"counts"
34
35 f.close()    # be CERTAIN to close the file

```

One of the tools provided with the HDF5 support libraries is the `h5dump` command, a command-line tool to print out the contents of an HDF5 data file. With no better tool in place (the output is verbose), this is a good tool to investigate what has been written to the HDF5 file. View this output from the command line using `h5dump writer_1_3.hdf5`. Compare the data contents with the numbers shown above. Note that the various HDF5 data types have all been decided by the `h5py` support package.

---

**Note:** The only difference between this file and one written using the NAPI is that the NAPI file will have some additional, optional attributes set at the root level of the file that tells the original file name, time it was written, and some version information about the software involved.

---

Since the output of `h5dump` is verbose (see the *Downloads* section below), the *punx tree* tool<sup>1</sup> was used to print out the structure of HDF5 data files. This tool provides a simplified view of the NeXus file. Here is the output:

```

1 writer_1_3.hdf5
2   Scan:NXentry
3     @NX_class = NXentry
4     data:NXdata
5       @NX_class = NXdata
6       @signal = counts
7       @axes = two_theta
8       @two_theta_indices = [0]
9       counts:int32[31] = [1037, 1318, 1704, ..., 1321]
10      @units = counts
11      two_theta:float64[31] = [17.926079999999999, 17.925909999999998, 17.
12        ↪925750000000001, ..., 17.92108]
13      @units = degrees

```

As the data files in these examples become more complex, you will appreciate the information density provided by *punx tree*.

---

<sup>1</sup> *punx tree* : [https://punx.readthedocs.io/en/latest/source\\_code/h5tree.html#how-to-use-h5tree](https://punx.readthedocs.io/en/latest/source_code/h5tree.html#how-to-use-h5tree)

## downloads

The Python code and files related to this section may be downloaded from the following table.

file	description
writer_1_3.py	python code to write example <i>writer_1_3</i>
writer_1_3.hdf5	NeXus file written by this code
writer_1_3_h5dump.txt	<i>h5dump</i> analysis of the NeXus file
writer_1_3_structure.txt	<i>punx tree</i> analysis of the NeXus file

### h5py example writing a simple NeXus data file with links

Building on the previous example, we wish to identify our measured data with the detector on the instrument where it was generated. In this hypothetical case, since the detector was positioned at some angle *two\_theta*, we choose to store both datasets, *two\_theta* and *counts*, in a NeXus group. One appropriate NeXus group is *NXdetector*. This group is placed in a *NXinstrument* group which is placed in a *NXentry* group. To support a default plot, we provide a *NXdata* group. Rather than duplicate the same data already placed in the detector group, we choose to link to those datasets from the *NXdata* group. (Compare the next figure with *Linking in a NeXus file* in the *NeXus Design* chapter of the NeXus User Manual.) The *NeXus Design* chapter provides a figure (*Linking in a NeXus file*) with a small variation from our previous example, placing the measured data within the /entry/instrument/detector group. Links are made from that data to the /entry/data group.

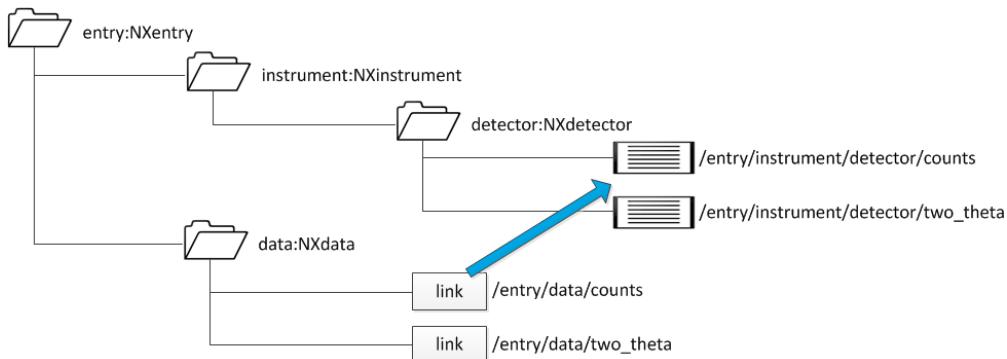


Fig. 4: h5py example showing linking in a NeXus file

The Python code to build an HDF5 data file with that structure (using numerical data from the previous example) is shown below.

```

1 #!/usr/bin/env python
2 """
3 Writes a simple NeXus HDF5 file using h5py with links
4 according to the example from Figure 2.1 in the Design chapter
5 """
6
7 import h5py
8 import numpy
9
10 buffer = numpy.loadtxt("input.dat").T
11 tthData = buffer[0] # float[]
12 countsData = numpy.asarray(buffer[1], 'int32') # int[]
13
  
```

(continues on next page)

(continued from previous page)

```

14 f = h5py.File("writer_2_1.hdf5", "w")    # create the HDF5 NeXus file
15 f.attrs[u"default"] = u"entry"
16
17 nxentry = f.create_group(u"entry")
18 nxentry.attrs[u"NX_class"] = u"NXentry"
19 nxentry.attrs[u"default"] = u"data"
20
21 nxinstrument = nxentry.create_group(u"instrument")
22 nxinstrument.attrs[u"NX_class"] = u"NXinstrument"
23
24 nxdetector = nxinstrument.create_group(u"detector")
25 nxdetector.attrs[u"NX_class"] = u"NXdetector"
26
27 # store the data in the NXdetector group
28 ds_tth = nxdetector.create_dataset(u"two_theta", data=tthData)
29 ds_tth.attrs[u"units"] = u"degrees"
30 ds_counts = nxdetector.create_dataset(u"counts", data=countsData)
31 ds_counts.attrs[u"units"] = u"counts"
32
33 # create the NXdata group to define the default plot
34 nxdata = nxentry.create_group(u"data")
35 nxdata.attrs[u"NX_class"] = u"NXdata"
36 nxdata.attrs[u"signal"] = u"counts"
37 nxdata.attrs[u"axes"] = u"two_theta"
38 nxdata.attrs[u"two_theta_indices"] = [0,]
39
40 source_addr = u"/entry/instrument/detector/two_theta"      # existing data
41 target_addr = u"two_theta"                                # new location
42 ds_tth.attrs[u"target"] = source_addr                    # a NeXus API convention for
43     #links
44 f[target_addr] = f[source_addr]                         # hard link
45 # nxdata._id.link(source_addr, target_addr, h5py.h5g.LINK_HARD)
46
47 source_addr = u"/entry/instrument/detector/counts"       # existing data
48 target_addr = u"counts"                                  # new location
49 ds_counts.attrs[u"target"] = source_addr                # a NeXus API convention for
50     #links
51 f[target_addr] = f[source_addr]                         # hard link
52 # nxdata._id.link(source_addr, target_addr, h5py.h5g.LINK_HARD)
53
54 f.close()      # be CERTAIN to close the file

```

It is interesting to compare the output of the `h5dump` of the data file `writer_2_1.hdf5` with our Python instructions. See the *downloads* section below.

Look carefully! It *appears* in the output of `h5dump` that the actual data for `two_theta` and `counts` has *moved* into the `NXdata` group at HDF5 path `/entry/data`! But we stored that data in the `NXdetector` group at `/entry/instrument/detector`. This is normal for `h5dump` output.

A bit of explanation is necessary at this point. The data is not stored in either HDF5 group directly. Instead, HDF5 creates a DATA storage element in the file and posts a reference to that DATA storage element as needed. An HDF5 *hard link* requests another reference to that same DATA storage element. The `h5dump` tool describes in full that DATA storage element the first time (alphabetically) it is called. In our case, that is within the `NXdata` group. The next time it is called, within the `NXdetector` group, `h5dump` reports that a hard link has been made and shows the HDF5 path to the description.

NeXus recognizes this behavior of the HDF5 library and adds an additional structure when building hard links, the `target` attribute, to preserve the original location of the data. Not that it actually matters. The `punx tree` tool

knows about the additional NeXus target attribute and shows the data to appear in its original location, in the NXdetector group.

```
1 writer_2_1.hdf5
2     @default = entry
3     counts --> /entry/instrument/detector/counts
4     two_theta --> /entry/instrument/detector/two_theta
5     entry:NXentry
6         @NX_class = NXentry
7         @default = data
8         data:NXdata
9             @NX_class = NXdata
10            @signal = counts
11            @axes = two_theta
12            @two_theta_indices = [0]
13            instrument:NXinstrument
14                @NX_class = NXinstrument
15                detector:NXdetector
16                    @NX_class = NXdetector
17                    counts:int32[31] = [1037, 1318, 1704, ..., 1321]
18                    @units = counts
19                    @target = /entry/instrument/detector/counts
20                    two_theta:float64[31] = [17.926079999999999, 17.925909999999998, 17.
21        ↪925750000000001, ..., 17.92108]
22                    @units = degrees
22                    @target = /entry/instrument/detector/two_theta
```

## downloads

The Python code and files related to this section may be downloaded from the following table.

file	description
writer_2_1.py	python code to write example <i>writer_2_1</i>
writer_2_1.hdf5	NeXus file written by this code
writer_2_1_h5dump.txt	<i>h5dump</i> analysis of the NeXus file
writer_2_1_structure.txt	<i>punx tree</i> analysis of the NeXus file

## Complete h5py example writing and reading a NeXus data file

### Writing the HDF5 file using h5py

In the main code section of [BasicWriter.py](#), a current time stamp is written in the format of *ISO 8601* (yyyy-mm-ddTHH:MM:SS). For simplicity of this code example, we use a text string for the time, rather than computing it directly from Python support library calls. It is easier this way to see the exact type of string formatting for the time. When using the Python `datetime` package, one way to write the time stamp is:

```
1 timestamp = "T".join( str( datetime.datetime.now() ).split() )
```

The data (`mr` is similar to “two\_theta” and `I00` is similar to “counts”) is collated into two Python lists. We use the `numpy` package to read the file and parse the two-column format.

The new HDF5 file is opened (and created if not already existing) for writing, setting common NeXus attributes in the same command from our support library. Proper HDF5+NeXus groups are created for `/entry:NXentry/`

`mr_scan:NXdata`. Since we are not using the NAPI, our support library must create and set the `NX_class` attribute on each group.

---

**Note:** We want to create the desired structure of `/entry:NXentry/mr_scan:NXdata/`.

1. First, our support library calls `f = h5py.File()` to create the file and root level NeXus structure.
  2. Then, it calls `nxentry = f.create_group("entry")` to create the NXentry group called `entry` at the root level.
  3. Then, it calls `nxdata = nxentry.create_group("mr_scan")` to create the NXentry group called `entry` as a child of the NXentry group.
- 

Next, we create a dataset called `title` to hold a title string that can appear on the default plot.

Next, we create datasets for `mr` and `I00` using our support library. The data type of each, as represented in numpy, will be recognized by `h5py` and automatically converted to the proper HDF5 type in the file. A Python dictionary of attributes is given, specifying the engineering units and other values needed by NeXus to provide a default plot of this data. By setting `signal="I00"` as an attribute on the group, NeXus recognizes `I00` as the default y axis for the plot. The `axes="mr"` attribute on the `NXdata` group connects the dataset to be used as the `x` axis.

Finally, we *must* remember to call `f.close()` or we might corrupt the file when the program quits.

### BasicWriter.py: Write a NeXus HDF5 file using Python with h5py

```

1 #!/usr/bin/env python
2 '''Writes a NeXus HDF5 file using h5py and numpy'''
3
4 import h5py      # HDF5 support
5 import numpy
6 import six
7
8 print("Write a NeXus HDF5 file")
9 fileName = u"prj_test.nexus.hdf5"
10 timestamp = u"2010-10-18T17:17:04-0500"
11
12 # load data from two column format
13 data = numpy.loadtxt(u"input.dat").T
14 mr_arr = data[0]
15 i00_arr = numpy.asarray(data[1], 'int32')
16
17 # create the HDF5 NeXus file
18 f = h5py.File(fileName, "w")
19 # point to the default data to be plotted
20 f.attrs[u'default'] = u'entry'
21 # give the HDF5 root some more attributes
22 f.attrs[u'file_name'] = fileName
23 f.attrs[u'file_time'] = timestamp
24 f.attrs[u'instrument'] = u'APS USAXS at 32ID-B'
25 f.attrs[u'creator'] = u'BasicWriter.py'
26 f.attrs[u'NeXus_version'] = u'4.3.0'
27 f.attrs[u'HDF5_Version'] = six.u(h5py.version.hdf5_version)
28 f.attrs[u'h5py_version'] = six.u(h5py.version.version)
29
30 # create the NXentry group
31 nxentry = f.create_group(u'entry')
```

(continues on next page)

(continued from previous page)

```

32 nxentry.attrs[u'NX_class'] = u'NXentry'
33 nxentry.attrs[u'default'] = u'mr_scan'
34 nxentry.create_dataset(u'title', data=u'1-D scan of I00 v. mr')
35
36 # create the NXentry group
37 nxdata = nxentry.create_group(u'mr_scan')
38 nxdata.attrs[u'NX_class'] = u'NXdata'
39 nxdata.attrs[u'signal'] = u'I00'          # Y axis of default plot
40 nxdata.attrs[u'axes'] = u'mr'           # X axis of default plot
41 nxdata.attrs[u'mr_indices'] = [0,]     # use "mr" as the first dimension of I00
42
43 # X axis data
44 ds = nxdata.create_dataset(u'mr', data=mr_arr)
45 ds.attrs[u'units'] = u'degrees'
46 ds.attrs[u'long_name'] = u'USAXS mr (degrees)'      # suggested X axis plot label
47
48 # Y axis data
49 ds = nxdata.create_dataset(u'I00', data=i00_arr)
50 ds.attrs[u'units'] = u'counts'
51 ds.attrs[u'long_name'] = u'USAXS I00 (counts)'      # suggested Y axis plot label
52
53 f.close()    # be CERTAIN to close the file
54
55 print("wrote file:", fileName)

```

## Reading the HDF5 file using h5py

The file reader, *BasicReader.py*, is very simple since the bulk of the work is done by h5py. Our code opens the HDF5 we wrote above, prints the HDF5 attributes from the file, reads the two datasets, and then prints them out as columns. As simple as that. Of course, real code might add some error-handling and extracting other useful stuff from the file.

---

**Note:** See that we identified each of the two datasets using HDF5 absolute path references (just using the group and dataset names). Also, while coding this example, we were reminded that HDF5 is sensitive to upper or lowercase. That is, I00 is not the same as i00.

---

## *BasicReader.py*: Read a NeXus HDF5 file using Python with h5py

```

1 #!/usr/bin/env python
2  '''Reads NeXus HDF5 files using h5py and prints the contents'''
3
4 import h5py      # HDF5 support
5
6 fileName = "prj_test.nexus.hdf5"
7 f = h5py.File(fileName, "r")
8 for item in f.attrs.keys():
9     print(item + ":", f.attrs[item])
10 mr = f['/entry/mr_scan/mr']
11 i00 = f['/entry/mr_scan/I00']
12 print("%s\t%s\t%" % ("#", "mr", "I00"))
13 for i in range(len(mr)):
14     print("%d\t%g\t%" % (i, mr[i], i00[i]))
15 f.close()

```

Output from `BasicReader.py` is shown next.

### Output from `BasicReader.py`

```

1 file_name: prj_test.nexus.hdf5
2 file_time: 2010-10-18T17:17:04-0500
3 creator: BasicWriter.py
4 HDF5_Version: 1.8.5
5 NeXus_version: 4.3.0
6 h5py_version: 1.2.1
7 instrument: APS USAXS at 32ID-B
8 #     mr   I00
9 0    17.9261 1037
10 1    17.9259 1318
11 2    17.9258 1704
12 3    17.9256 2857
13 4    17.9254 4516
14 5    17.9252 9998
15 6    17.9251 23819
16 7    17.9249 31662
17 8    17.9247 40458
18 9    17.9246 49087
19 10   17.9244 56514
20 11   17.9243 63499
21 12   17.9241 66802
22 13   17.9239 66863
23 14   17.9237 66599
24 15   17.9236 66206
25 16   17.9234 65747
26 17   17.9232 65250
27 18   17.9231 64129
28 19   17.9229 63044
29 20   17.9228 60796
30 21   17.9226 56795
31 22   17.9224 51550
32 23   17.9222 43710
33 24   17.9221 29315
34 25   17.9219 19782
35 26   17.9217 12992
36 27   17.9216 6622
37 28   17.9214 4198
38 29   17.9213 2248
39 30   17.9211 1321

```

### Plotting the HDF5 file

Now that we are certain our file conforms to the NeXus standard, let's plot it using the `NeXpy`<sup>3</sup> client tool. To help label the plot, we added the `long_name` attributes to each of our datasets. We also added metadata to the root level of our HDF5 file similar to that written by the NAPI. It seemed to be a useful addition. Compare this with [plot of our `mr\_scan`](#) and note that the horizontal axis of this plot is mirrored from that above. This is because the data is stored in the file in descending `mr` order and `NeXpy` has plotted it that way (in order of appearance) by default.

---

<sup>3</sup> `NeXpy`: <http://nexpypy.github.io/nexpypy/>

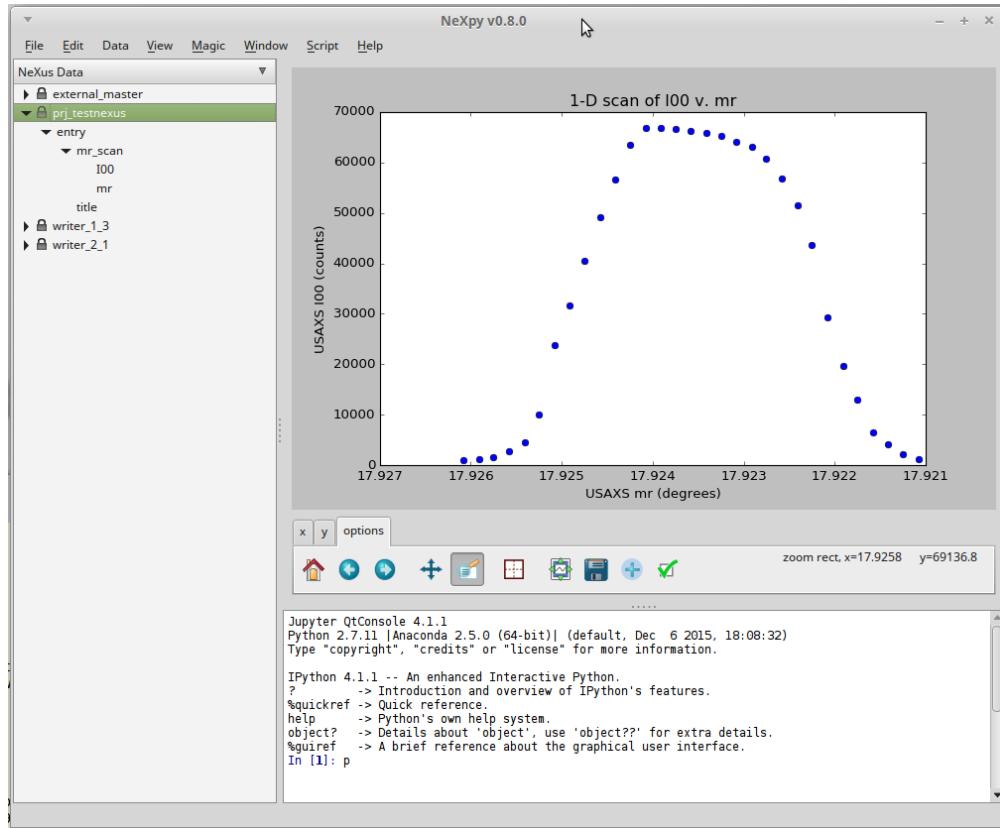


Fig. 5: plot of our `mr_scan` using NeXpy

## Links to Data in External HDF5 Files

HDF5 files may contain links to data (or groups) in other files. This can be used to advantage to refer to data in existing HDF5 files and create NeXus-compliant data files. Here, we show such an example, using the same `counts` v. `two_theta` data from the examples above.

We use the *HDF5 external file* links with NeXus data files.

```
f[local_addr] = h5py.ExternalLink(external_file_name, external_addr)
```

where `f` is an open `h5py.File()` object in which we will create the new link, `local_addr` is an HDF5 path address, `external_file_name` is the name (relative or absolute) of an existing HDF5 file, and `external_addr` is the HDF5 path address of the existing data in the `external_file_name` to be linked.

### file: external\_angles.hdf5

Take for example, the structure of `external_angles.hdf5`, a simple HDF5 data file that contains just the `two_theta` angles in an HDF5 dataset at the root level of the file. Although this is a valid HDF5 data file, it is not a valid NeXus data file:

```
1 angles:float64[31] = [17.92607999999999, ..., 17.92108]
2 @units = degrees
```

### file: external\_counts.hdf5

The data in the file `external_angles.hdf5` might be referenced from another HDF5 file (such as `external_counts.hdf5`) by an HDF5 external link.<sup>4</sup> Here is an example of the structure:

```
1 entry:NXentry
2   instrument:NXinstrument
3   detector:NXdetector
4     counts:NX_INT32[31] = [1037, ..., 1321]
5     @units = counts
6     two_theta --> file="external_angles.hdf5", path="/angles"
```

### file: external\_master.hdf5

A valid NeXus data file could be created that refers to the data in these files without making a copy of the data files themselves.

---

**Note:** It is necessary for all these files to be located together in the same directory for the HDF5 external file links to work properly.

---

To be a valid NeXus file, it must contain a `NXentry` group. For the files above, it is simple to make a master file that links to the data we desire, from structure that we create. We then add the group attributes that describe the default plottable data:

---

<sup>4</sup> see these URLs for further guidance on HDF5 external links: [https://portal.hdfgroup.org/display/HDF5/H5L\\_CREATE\\_EXTERNAL](https://portal.hdfgroup.org/display/HDF5/H5L_CREATE_EXTERNAL), <http://docs.h5py.org/en/stable/high/group.html#external-links>

```
1 data:NXdata
2   @signal = counts
3   @axes = two_theta
4   @two_theta_indices = 0
```

Here is (the basic structure of) `external_master.hdf5`, an example:

```
1 entry:NXentry
2 @default = data
3   instrument --> file="external_counts.hdf5", path="/entry/instrument"
4   data:NXdata
5     @signal = counts
6     @axes = two_theta
7     @two_theta = 0
8   counts --> file="external_counts.hdf5", path="/entry/instrument/detector/counts"
9   two_theta --> file="external_angles.hdf5", path="/angles"
```

### source code: `externalExample.py`

Here is the complete code of a Python program, using `h5py` to write a NeXus-compliant HDF5 file with links to data in other HDF5 files.

#### `externalExample.py`: Write using HDF5 external links

```
1 #!/usr/bin/env python
2 """
3 Writes a NeXus HDF5 file using h5py with links to data in other HDF5 files.
4
5 This example is based on ``writer_2_1``.
6
7
8 import h5py
9 import numpy
10
11 FILE_HDF5_MASTER = u"external_master.hdf5"
12 FILE_HDF5_ANGLES = u"external_angles.hdf5"
13 FILE_HDF5_COUNTS = u"external_counts.hdf5"
14
15 #-----
16
17 # get some data
18 buffer = numpy.loadtxt("input.dat").T
19 tthData = buffer[0]                      # float[]
20 countsData = numpy.asarray(buffer[1], 'int32')    # int[]
21
22 # put the angle data in an external (non-NeXus) HDF5 data file
23 f = h5py.File(FILE_HDF5_ANGLES, "w")
24 ds = f.create_dataset(u"angles", data=tthData)
25 ds.attrs[u"units"] = u"degrees"
26 f.close()      # be CERTAIN to close the file
27
28
29 # put the detector counts in an external HDF5 data file
30 # with *incomplete* NeXus structure (no NXdata group)
```

(continues on next page)

(continued from previous page)

```

31 f = h5py.File(FILE_HDF5_COUNTS, "w")
32 nxentry = f.create_group(u"entry")
33 nxentry.attrs[u"NX_class"] = u"NXentry"
34 nxinstrument = nxentry.create_group(u"instrument")
35 nxinstrument.attrs[u"NX_class"] = u"NXinstrument"
36 nxdetector = nxinstrument.create_group(u"detector")
37 nxdetector.attrs[u"NX_class"] = u"NXdetector"
38 ds = nxdetector.create_dataset(u"counts", data=countsData)
39 ds.attrs[u"units"] = u"counts"
40 # link the "two_theta" data stored in separate file
41 local_addr = nxdetector.name + u"/two_theta"
42 f[local_addr] = h5py.ExternalLink(FILE_HDF5_ANGLES, u"/angles")
43 f.close()

44
45 # create a master NeXus HDF5 file
46 f = h5py.File(FILE_HDF5_MASTER, "w")
47 f.attrs[u"default"] = u"entry"
48 nxentry = f.create_group(u"entry")
49 nxentry.attrs[u"NX_class"] = u"NXentry"
50 nxentry.attrs[u"default"] = u"data"
51 nxdata = nxentry.create_group(u"data")
52 nxdata.attrs[u"NX_class"] = u"NXdata"

53
54 # link in the signal data
55 local_addr = '/entry/data/counts'
56 external_addr = u'/entry/instrument/detector/counts'
57 f[local_addr] = h5py.ExternalLink(FILE_HDF5_COUNTS, external_addr)
58 nxdata.attrs[u"signal"] = u"counts"

59
60 # link in the axes data
61 local_addr = u'/entry/data/two_theta'
62 f[local_addr] = h5py.ExternalLink(FILE_HDF5_ANGLES, u"/angles")
63 nxdata.attrs[u"axes"] = u"two_theta"
64 nxdata.attrs[u"two_theta_indices"] = [0,]

65
66 local_addr = u'/entry/instrument'
67 f[local_addr] = h5py.ExternalLink(FILE_HDF5_COUNTS, u"/entry/instrument")

68
69 f.close()

```

## downloads

The Python code and files related to this section may be downloaded from the following table.

file	description
input.dat	2-column ASCII data used in this section
BasicReader.py	python code to read example <i>prj_test.nexus.hdf5</i>
BasicWriter.py	python code to write example <i>prj_test.nexus.hdf5</i>
external_angles_h5dump.txt	<i>h5dump</i> analysis of <i>external_angles.hdf5</i>
external_angles.hdf5	HDF5 file written by <i>externalExample</i>
external_angles_structure.txt	<i>punx tree</i> analysis of <i>external_angles.hdf5</i>
external_counts_h5dump.txt	<i>h5dump</i> analysis of <i>external_counts.hdf5</i>
external_counts.hdf5	HDF5 file written by <i>externalExample</i>
external_counts_structure.txt	<i>punx tree</i> analysis of <i>external_counts.hdf5</i>
externalExample.py	python code to write external linking examples
external_master_h5dump.txt	<i>h5dump</i> analysis of <i>external_master.hdf5</i>
external_master.hdf5	NeXus file written by <i>externalExample</i>
external_master_structure.txt	<i>punx tree</i> analysis of <i>external_master.hdf5</i>
prj_test.nexus_h5dump.txt	<i>h5dump</i> analysis of the NeXus file
prj_test.nexus.hdf5	NeXus file written by <i>BasicWriter</i>
prj_test.nexus_structure.txt	<i>punx tree</i> analysis of the NeXus file

### 2.1.3 MATLAB Examples

**author** Paul Kienzle, NIST

---

**Note: Editor's Note:** These files were copied directly from an older version of the NeXus documentation (DocBook) and have not been checked that they will run under current Matlab versions.

---

#### input.dat

This is the same data used with *Python Examples using h5py*.

```
1 17.92608 1037
2 17.92591 1318
3 17.92575 1704
4 17.92558 2857
5 17.92541 4516
6 17.92525 9998
7 17.92508 23819
8 17.92491 31662
9 17.92475 40458
10 17.92458 49087
11 17.92441 56514
12 17.92425 63499
13 17.92408 66802
14 17.92391 66863
15 17.92375 66599
16 17.92358 66206
17 17.92341 65747
18 17.92325 65250
19 17.92308 64129
20 17.92291 63044
21 17.92275 60796
```

(continues on next page)

(continued from previous page)

22	17.92258	56795
23	17.92241	51550
24	17.92225	43710
25	17.92208	29315
26	17.92191	19782
27	17.92175	12992
28	17.92158	6622
29	17.92141	4198
30	17.92125	2248
31	17.92108	1321

## writing data

### *basic\_writer.m: Write a NeXus HDF5 file using Matlab*

```

1 % Writes a NeXus HDF5 file using matlab
2
3 disp 'Write a NeXus HDF5 file'
4 filename = 'prj_test.nexus.hdf5';
5 timestamp = '2010-10-18T17:17:04-0500';
6
7 % read input data
8 A = load('input.dat');
9 mr = A(:,1);
10 I00 = int32(A(:,2));
11
12 % clear out old file, if it exists
13
14 delete(filename);
15
16 % using the simple h5 interface, there is no way to create a group without
17 % first creating a dataset; creating the dataset creates all intervening
18 % groups.
19
20 % store x
21 h5create(filename,'/entry/mr_scan/mr',[length(mr)]);
22 h5write(filename,'/entry/mr_scan/mr',mr);
23 h5writeatt(filename,'/entry/mr_scan/mr','units','degrees');
24 h5writeatt(filename,'/entry/mr_scan/mr','long_name','USAXS mr (degrees)');
25
26 % store y
27 h5create(filename,'/entry/mr_scan/I00',[length(I00)],'DataType','int32');
28 h5write(filename,'/entry/mr_scan/I00',I00);
29 h5writeatt(filename,'/entry/mr_scan/I00','units','counts');
30 h5writeatt(filename,'/entry/mr_scan/I00','long_name','USAXS I00 (counts)');
31
32 % indicate that we are plotting y vs. x
33 h5writeatt(filename,'/','default','entry');
34 h5writeatt(filename,'/entry','default','mr_scan');
35 h5writeatt(filename,'/entry/mr_scan','signal','I00');
36 h5writeatt(filename,'/entry/mr_scan','axes','mr_scan');
37 h5writeatt(filename,'/entry/mr_scan','mr_scan_indices', int32(0));
38
39 % add NeXus metadata
40 h5writeatt(filename,'/','file_name',filename);

```

(continues on next page)

(continued from previous page)

```

41 h5writeatt(filename,'/','file_time',timestamp);
42 h5writeatt(filename,'/','instrument','APS USAXS at 32ID-B');
43 h5writeatt(filename,'/','creator','basic_writer.m');
44 h5writeatt(filename,'/','NeXus_version','4.3.0');
45 h5writeatt(filename,'/','HDF5_Version','1.6'); % no 1.8 features used in this example
46 h5writeatt(filename,'/entry','NX_class','NXentry');
47 h5writeatt(filename,'/entry/mr_scan','NX_class','NXdata');

48

49

50 h5disp(filename);

```

## reading data

### ***basic\_reader.m:*** Read a NeXus HDF5 file using Matlab

```

1 % Reads NeXus HDF5 file and print the contents
2
3 filename = 'prj_test.nexus.hdf5';
4 root = h5info(filename,'/');
5 attrs = root.Attributes;
6 for i = 1:length(attrs)
7     fprintf('%s: %s\n', attrs(i).Name, attrs(i).Value);
8 end
9 mr = h5read(filename,'/entry/mr_scan/mr');
10 i00 = h5read(filename, '/entry/mr_scan/I00');
11 fprintf('#\t%s\t%s\n','mr','I00');
12 for i = 1:length(mr)
13     fprintf('%d\t%g\t%d\n', i, mr(i), i00(i));
14 end

```

## writing data file with links

### ***writer\_2\_1.m:*** Write a NeXus HDF5 file with links

```

1 % Writes a simple NeXus HDF5 file with links
2 % according to the example from Figure 2.1 in the Design chapter
3
4 filename = 'writer_2_1.hdf5';
5
6 % read input data
7 A = load('input.dat');
8 two_theta = A(:,1);
9 counts = int32(A(:,2));
10
11 % clear out old file, if it exists
12 delete(filename);
13
14 % store x
15 h5create(filename,'/entry/instrument/detector/two_theta',[length(two_theta)]);
16 h5write(filename,'/entry/instrument/detector/two_theta',two_theta);
17 h5writeatt(filename,'/entry/instrument/detector/two_theta','units','degrees');
18

```

(continues on next page)

(continued from previous page)

```

19 % store y
20 h5create(filename,'/entry/instrument/detector/counts',[length(counts)],'DataType',
21   ↪'int32');
22 h5write(filename,'/entry/instrument/detector/counts',counts);
23 h5writeatt(filename,'/entry/instrument/detector/counts','units','counts');
24
25 % create group NXdata with links to detector
26 % note: requires the additional file h5link.m
27 h5link(filename,'/entry/instrument/detector/two_theta','/entry/data/two_theta');
28 h5link(filename,'/entry/instrument/detector/counts','/entry/data/counts');
29
30 % indicate that we are plotting y vs. x
31 h5writeatt(filename,'/','default','entry');
32 h5writeatt(filename,'/entry','default','data');
33 h5writeatt(filename,'/entry/data','signal','counts');
34 h5writeatt(filename,'/entry/data','axes','two_theta');
35 h5writeatt(filename,'/entry/data','two_theta_indices',int32(0));
36
37 % add Nexus metadata
38 h5writeatt(filename,'/','file_name',filename);
39 h5writeatt(filename,'/','file_time',timestamp);
40 h5writeatt(filename,'/','instrument','APS USAXS at 32ID-B');
41 h5writeatt(filename,'/','creator','writer_2_1.m');
42 h5writeatt(filename,'/','NeXus_version','4.3.0');
43 h5writeatt(filename,'/','HDF5_Version','1.6'); % no 1.8 features used in this example
44 h5writeatt(filename,'/entry','NX_class','NXentry');
45 h5writeatt(filename,'/entry/instrument','NX_class','NXinstrument');
46 h5writeatt(filename,'/entry/instrument/detector','NX_class','NXdetector');
47 h5writeatt(filename,'/entry/data','NX_class','NXdata');
48
49 % show structure of the file that was created
50 h5disp(filename);

```

### ***h5link.m: support module for creating NeXus-style HDF5 hard links***

```

1 function h5link(filename, from, to)
2 %H5LINK Create link to an HDF5 dataset.
3 %     H5LINK(FILENAME,SOURCE,TARGET) creates an HDF5 link from the
4 %     dataset at location SOURCE to a dataset at location TARGET. All
5 %     intermediate groups in the path to target are created.
6 %
7 %     Example: create a link from /hello/world to /goodbye/world
8 %             h5create('myfile.h5','/hello/world',[100 200]);
9 %             h5link('myfile.h5','/hello/world','/goodbye/world');
10 %             hgdisp('myfile.h5');
11 %
12 %     See also: h5create, h5read, h5write, h5info, h5disp
13
14 % split from and to into group/dataset
15 idx = strfind(from,'/');
16 from_path = from(1:idx(end)-1);
17 from_data = from(idx(end)+1:end);
18 idx = strfind(to,'/');
19 to_path = to(1:idx(end)-1);
20 to_data = to(idx(end)+1:end);

```

(continues on next page)

(continued from previous page)

```

21
22 % open the HDF file
23 fid = H5F.open(filename,'H5F_ACC_RDWR','H5P_DEFAULT');
24
25 % create target group if it doesn't already exist
26 create_intermediate = H5P.create('H5P_LINK_CREATE');
27 H5P.set_create_intermediate_group(create_intermediate, 1);
28 try
29     H5G.create(fid,to_path,create_intermediate,'H5P_DEFAULT','H5P_DEFAULT');
30 catch
31 end
32 H5P.close(create_intermediate);
33
34 % open groups and create link
35 from_id = H5G.open(fid, from_path);
36 to_id = H5G.open(fid, to_path);
37 H5L.create_hard(from_id, from_data, to_id, to_data, 'H5P_DEFAULT','H5P_DEFAULT');
38
39 % close all
40 H5G.close(from_id);
41 H5G.close(to_id);
42 H5F.close(fid);
43 end

```

## Downloads

file	description
input.dat	two-column text data file, also used in other examples
basic_writer.m	writes a NeXus HDF5 file using input.dat
basic_reader.m	reads the NeXus HDF5 file written by basic_writer.m
h5link.m	support module for creating NeXus-style HDF5 hard links
writer_2_1.m	like basic_writer.m but stores data in /entry/instrument/detector and then links to NXdata group

### 2.1.4 Viewing 2-D Data from LRMECS

The IPNS LRMECS instrument stored data in NeXus HDF4 data files. One such example is available from the repository of NeXus data file examples.<sup>1</sup> For this example, we will start with a conversion of that original data file into *HDF5* format.

format	file name
HDF4	lrcs3701.nxs
HDF5	lrcs3701.nx5

This dataset contains two histograms with 2-D images (148x750 and 148x32) of 32-bit integers. First, we use the h5dump tool to investigate the header content of the file (not showing any of the data).

<sup>1</sup> LRMECS example data: <https://github.com/nexusformat/exempledata/tree/master/IPNS/LRMECS>

## Visualize Using `h5dump`

Here, the output of the command:

```
h5dump -H lrcs3701.nx5
```

has been edited to only show the first *NXdata* group (*/Histogram1/data*):

### LRMECS lrcs3701 data: h5dump output

```

1 HDF5 "C:\Users\Pete\Documents\eclipse\NeXus\definitions\exampledata\IPNS\LRMECS\
2   ↳lrcs3701.nx5" {
3     GROUP "/Histogram1/data" {
4       DATASET "data" {
5         DATATYPE H5T_STD_I32LE
6         DATASPACE SIMPLE { ( 148, 750 ) / ( 148, 750 ) }
7       }
8       DATASET "polar_angle" {
9         DATATYPE H5T_IEEE_F32LE
10        DATASPACE SIMPLE { ( 148 ) / ( 148 ) }
11      }
12      DATASET "time_of_flight" {
13        DATATYPE H5T_IEEE_F32LE
14        DATASPACE SIMPLE { ( 751 ) / ( 751 ) }
15      }
16      DATASET "title" {
17        DATATYPE H5T_STRING {
18          STRSIZE 44;
19          STRPAD H5T_STR_NULLTERM;
20          CSET H5T_CSET_ASCII;
21          CTYPE H5T_C_S1;
22        }
23        DATASPACE SIMPLE { ( 1 ) / ( 1 ) }
24      }
25    }
}

```

## Visualize Using *HDFview*

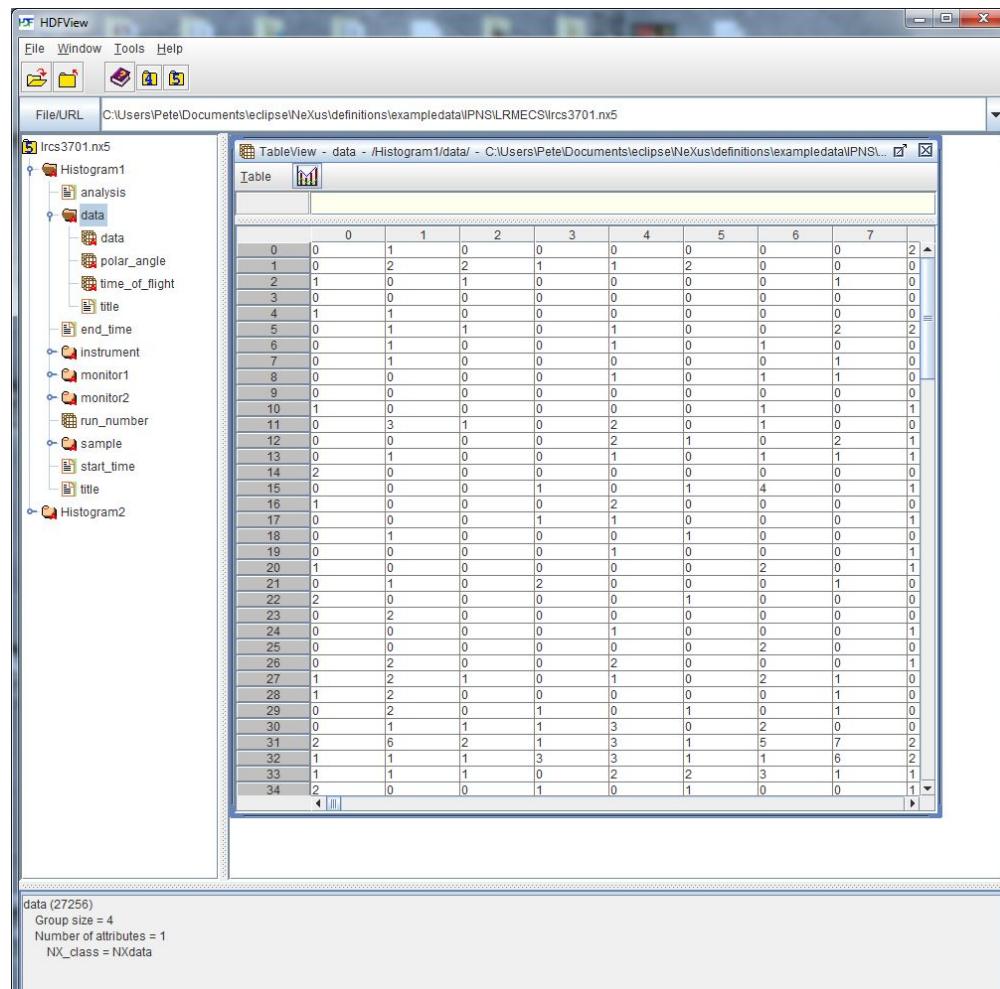
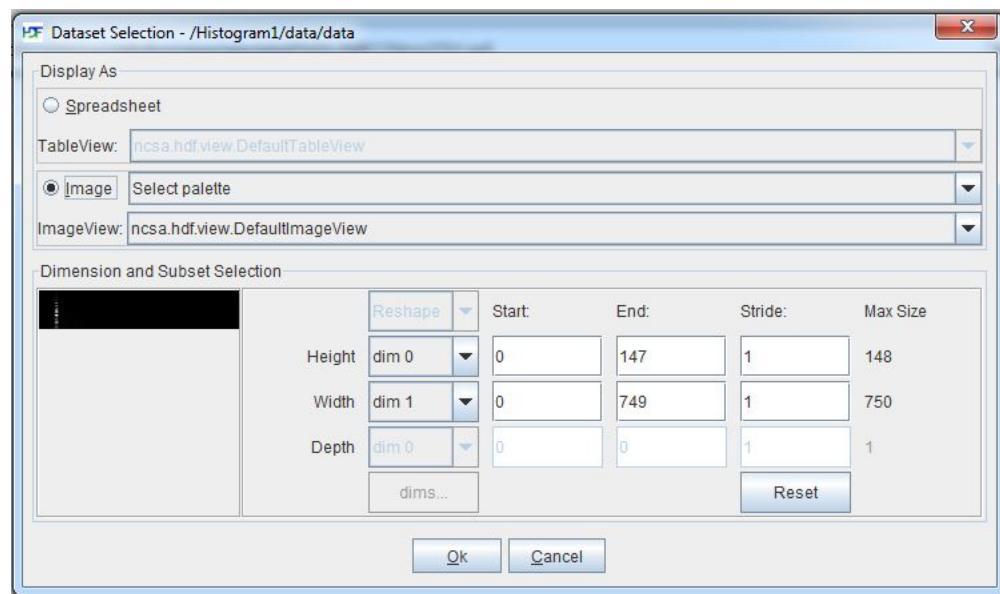
For many, the simplest way to view the data content of an HDF5 file is to use the *HDFview* program (<https://portal.hdfgroup.org/display/HDFVIEW/HDFView>) from The HDF Group. After starting *HDFview*, the data file may be loaded by dragging it into the main HDF window. On opening up to the first *NXdata* group */Histogram1/data* (as above), and then double-clicking the dataset called: *data*, we get our first view of the data.

The data may be represented as an image by accessing the *Open As* menu from *HDFview* (on Windows, right click the dataset called *data* and select the *Open As* item, consult the *HDFview* documentation for different platform instructions). Be sure to select the *Image* radio button, and then (accepting everything else as a default) press the *Ok* button.

---

**Note:** In this image, dark represents low intensity while white represents high intensity.

---

Fig. 6: LRMECS lrcs3701 data: *HDFview*Fig. 7: LRMECS lrcs3701 data: *HDFview Open As* dialog

## LRMECS lrcs3701 data: image

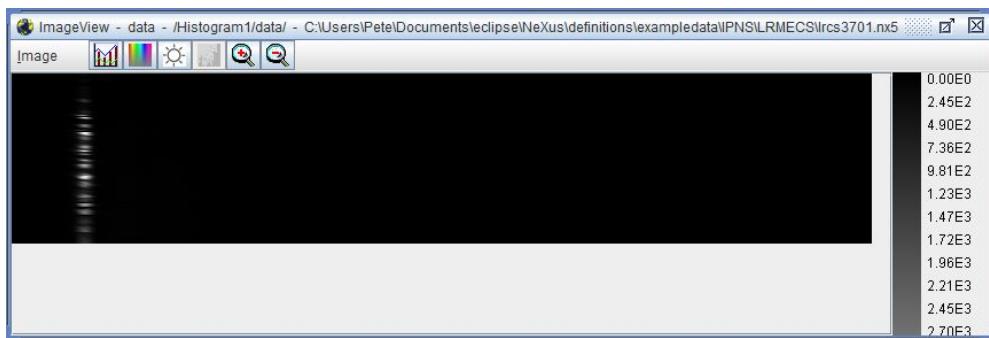


Fig. 8: LRMECS lrcs3701 data: *HDFview* Image

### Visualize Using *IgorPro*

Another way to visualize this data is to use a commercial package for scientific data visualization and analysis. One such package is *IgorPro* from <http://www.wavemetrics.com>

*IgorPro* provides a browser for HDF5 files that can open our NeXus HDF5 and display the image. Follow the instructions from WaveMetrics to install the *HDF5 Browser* package: <http://www.wavemetrics.com/products/igorpro/dataaccess/hdf5.htm>

You may not have to do this step if you have already installed the *HDF5 Browser*. *IgorPro* will tell you if it is not installed properly. To install the *HDF5 Browser*, first start *IgorPro*. Next, select from the menus and submenus: Data; Load Waves; Packages; Install HDF5 Package as shown in the next figure. *IgorPro* may direct you to perform more activities before you progress from this step.

Next, open the *HDF5 Browser* by selecting from the menus and submenus: Data; Load Waves; New HDF5 Browser as shown in the next figure.

Next, click the *Open HDF5 File* button and open the NeXus HDF5 file `lrcs3701.nxs`. In the lower left *Groups* panel, click the *data* dataset. Also, under the panel on the right called *Load Dataset Options*, choose No Table as shown. Finally, click the *Load Dataset* button (in the *Datasets* group) to display the image.

---

**Note:** In this image, dark represents low intensity while white represents high intensity. The image has been rotated for easier representation in this manual.

---

## LRMECS lrcs3701 data: image

### 2.1.5 EPICS Area Detector Examples

Two examples in this section show how to write NeXus HDF5 data files with EPICS Area Detector images. The first shows how to configure the HDF5 File Writing Plugin of the EPICS Area Detector software. The second example shows how to write an EPICS Area Detector image using Python.

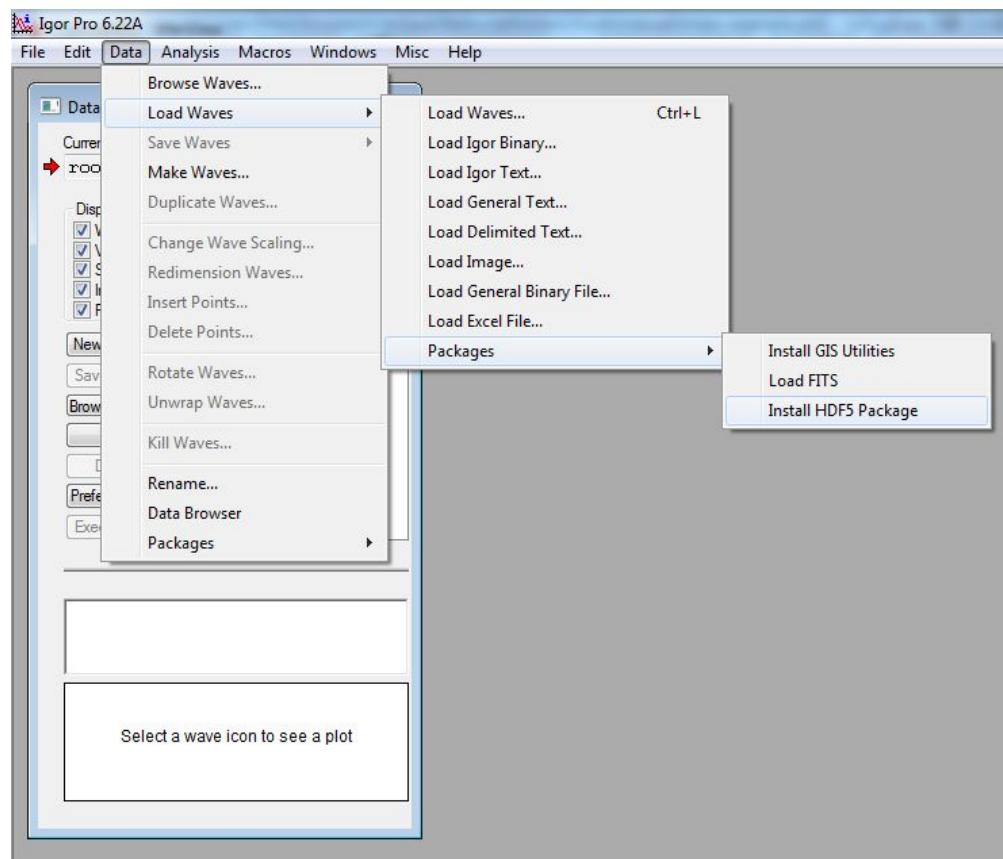


Fig. 9: LRMECS lrcs3701 data: *IgorPro* install HDF5 Browser

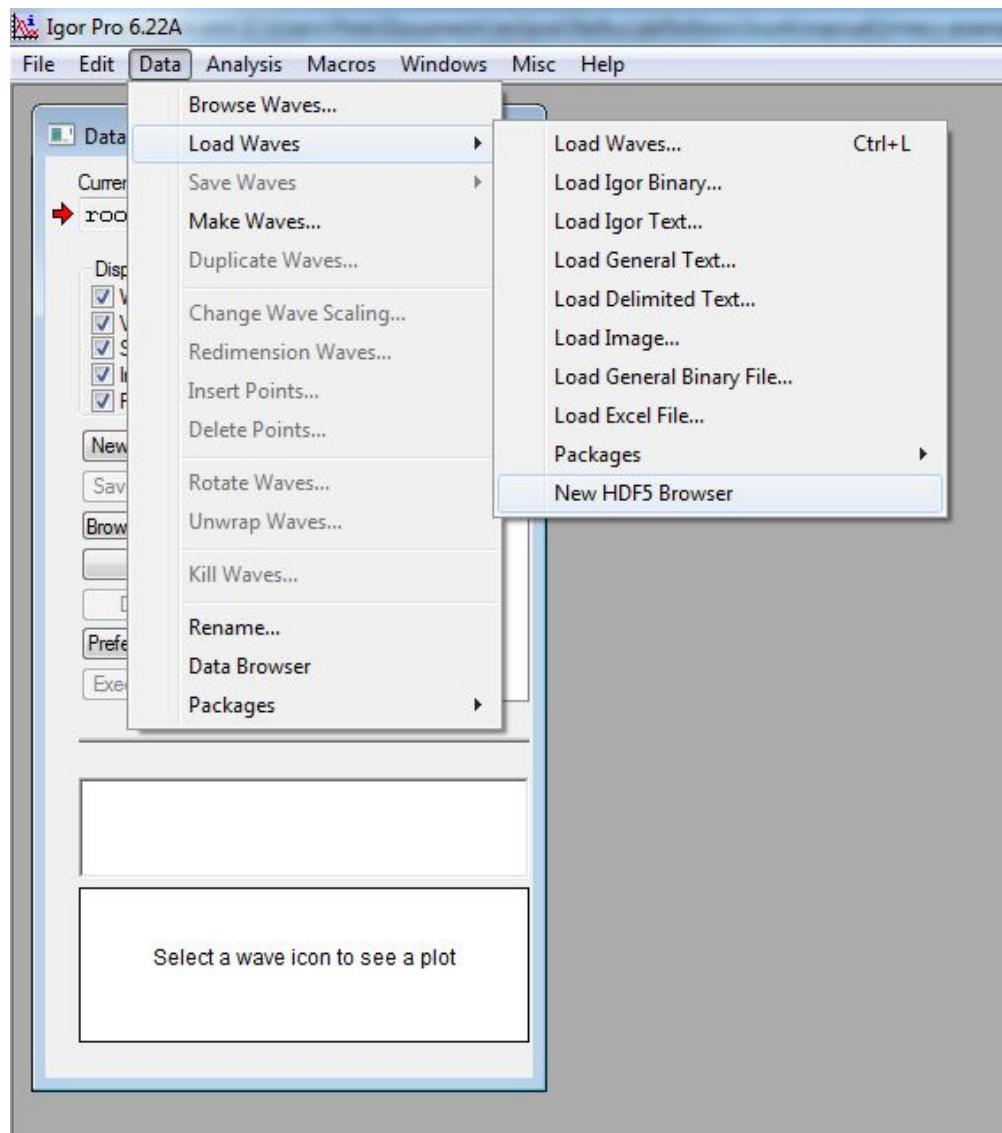


Fig. 10: LRMECS 1rcs3701 data: *IgorPro HDFBrowser* dialog

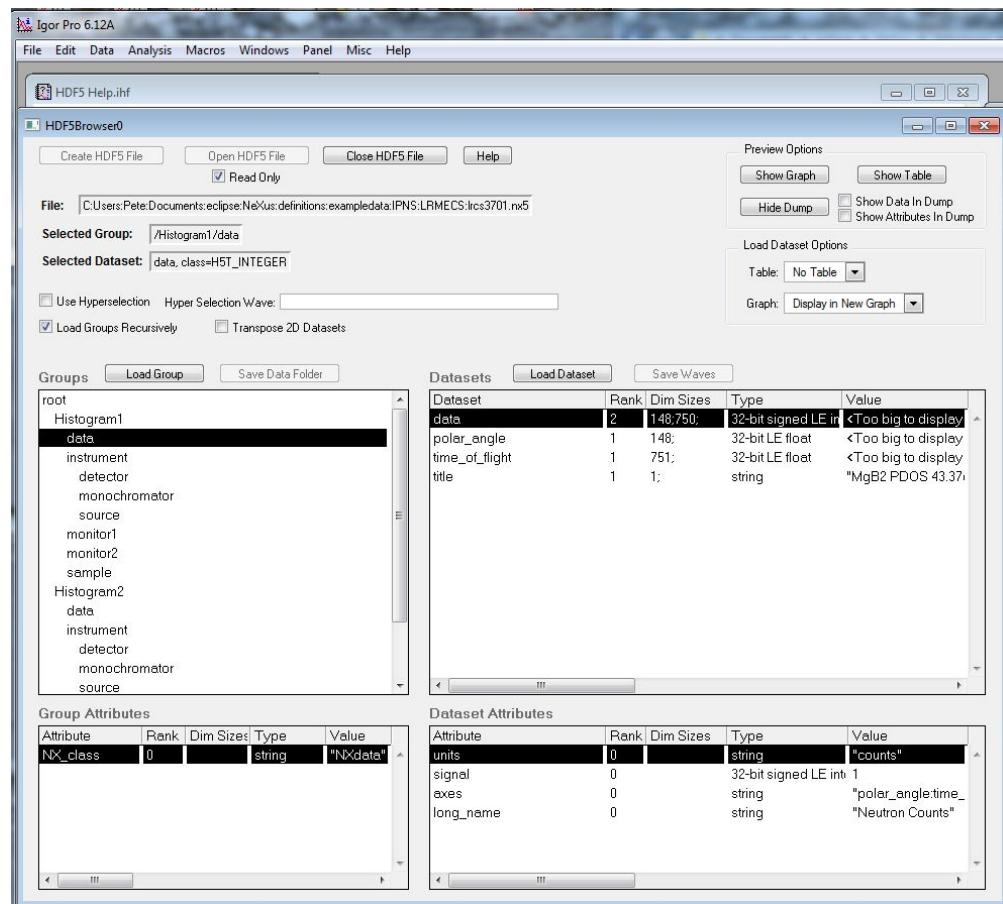


Fig. 11: LRMECS lrcs3701 data: *IgorPro HDFBrowser* dialog

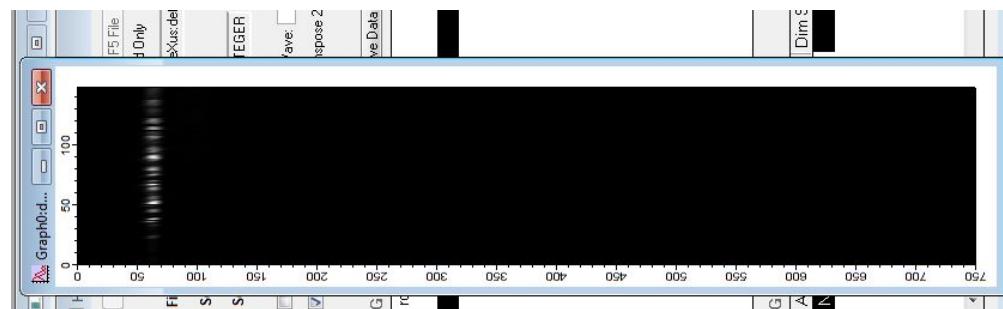


Fig. 12: LRMECS lrcs3701 data: *IgorPro* Image

## HDF5 File Writing Plugin

This example describes how to write a NeXus HDF5 data file using the EPICS<sup>1</sup> Area Detector<sup>2</sup> HDF5 file writing plugin<sup>3</sup>. We will use the EPICS SimDetector<sup>4</sup> as an example. (PV prefix: 13SIM1:) Remember to replace that with the prefix for your detector's IOC.

One data file will be produced for each image generated by EPICS.

You'll need AreaDetector version 2.5 or higher to use this as the procedures for using the HDF5 file writing plugin changed with this release.

### configuration files

There are two configuration files we must edit to configure an EPICS AreaDetector to write NeXus files using the HDF5 File Writer plugin:

file	description
attributes.xml	what information to know about from EPICS and other sources
layout.xml	where to write that information in the HDF5 file

Put these files into a known directory where your EPICS IOC can find them.

#### attributes.xml

The attributes file is easy to edit. Any text editor will do. A wide screen will be helpful.

Each `<Attribute>` element declares a single **ndattribute** which is associated with an area detector image. These **ndattribute** items can be written to specific locations in the HDF5 file or placed by default in a *default location*.

---

**Note:** The attributes file shown here has been reformatted for display in this manual. The *downloads* section below provides an attributes file with the same content using its wide formatting (one complete Attribute per line). Either version of this file is acceptable.

```

1 <?xml version="1.0" standalone="no" ?>
2 <!-- Attributes -->
3 <Attributes
4   xmlns:xsi="http://www.w3.org/2001/XMLSchema-instance"
5   xsi:noNamespaceSchemaLocation=
6   "https://github.com/areaDetector/ADCore/blob/master/iocBoot/NDAttributes.xsd"
7 >
8   <Attribute name="AcquireTime"
9     type="EPICS_PV"
10    source="13SIM1:cam1:AcquireTime"
11    dbrtype="DBR_NATIVE"
12    description="Camera acquire time"/>
13   <Attribute name="ImageCounter"
14     type="PARAM"
15     source="ARRAY_COUNTER"

```

(continues on next page)

<sup>1</sup> EPICS: <https://epics-controls.org/>

<sup>2</sup> EPICS Area Detector: <https://areadetector.github.io/master/index.html>

<sup>3</sup> HDF5 File Writer: <https://areadetector.github.io/master/ADCore/NDFileHDF5.html>

<sup>4</sup> EPICS SimDetector: <https://github.com/areaDetector/ADSimDetector>

(continued from previous page)

```

16      datatype="INT"
17      description="Image counter"/>
18  <Attribute name="calc1_val"
19    type="EPICS_PV"
20    source="prj:userCalc1.VAL"
21    datatype="DBR_NATIVE"
22    description="some calculation result"/>
23  <Attribute name="calc2_val"
24    type="EPICS_PV"
25    source="prj:userCalc2.VAL"
26    datatype="DBR_NATIVE"
27    description="another calculation result"/>
28  <Attribute name="MaxSizeX"
29    type="PARAM"
30    source="MAX_SIZE_X"
31    datatype="INT"
32    description="Detector X size"/>
33  <Attribute name="MaxSizeY"
34    type="PARAM"
35    source="MAX_SIZE_Y"
36    datatype="INT"
37    description="Detector Y size"/>
38  <Attribute name="CameraModel"
39    type="PARAM"
40    source="MODEL"
41    datatype="STRING"
42    description="Camera model"/>
43  <Attribute name="CameraManufacturer"
44    type="PARAM"
45    source="MANUFACTURER"
46    datatype="STRING"
47    description="Camera manufacturer"/>
48</Attributes>

```

If you want to add additional EPICS process variables (PVs) to be written in the HDF5 file, create additional `<Attribute />` elements (such as the `calc1_val`) and modify the `name`, `source`, and `description` values. Be sure to use a unique `name` for each **ndattribute** in the attributes file.

---

**Note:** `ndattribute` : item specified by an `<Attribute />` element in the attributes file.

---

### layout.xml

You might not need to edit the layout file. It will be fine (at least a good starting point) as it is, even if you add PVs (a.k.a. `ndattribute`) to the attributes.xml file.

```

1  <?xml version="1.0" standalone="no" ?>
2  <hdf5_layout>
3    <group name="entry">
4      <attribute name="NX_class" source="constant" value="NXentry" type="string"/>
5      <group name="instrument">
6        <attribute name="NX_class" source="constant" value="NXinstrument" type="string"/>
7        <group name="detector">

```

(continues on next page)

(continued from previous page)

```

8   <attribute name="NX_class" source="constant" value="NXdetector" type="string"/>
9   <dataset name="data" source="detector" det_default="true">
10    <attribute name="NX_class" source="constant" value="SDS" type="string"/>
11    <attribute name="signal" source="constant" value="1" type="int"/>
12    <attribute name="target" source="constant" value="/entry/instrument/
13      <detector/data" type="string"/>
14    </dataset>
15    <group name="NDAttributes">
16      <attribute name="NX_class" source="constant" value="NXcollection" type=
17      "string"/>
18      <dataset name="ColorMode" source="ndattribute" ndattribute="ColorMode"/>
19    </group>          <!-- end group NDAttribute -->
20  </group>          <!-- end group detector -->
21  <group name="NDAttributes" ndattr_default="true">
22    <attribute name="NX_class" source="constant" value="NXcollection" type="string
23      "/>
24    </group>          <!-- end group NDAttribute (default) -->
25    <group name="performance">
26      <dataset name="timestamp" source="ndattribute"/>
27    </group>          <!-- end group performance -->
28  </group>          <!-- end group instrument -->
29  <group name="data">
30    <attribute name="NX_class" source="constant" value="NXdata" type="string"/>
31    <hardlink name="data" target="/entry/instrument/detector/data"/>
32    <!-- The "target" attribute in /entry/instrument/detector/data is used to
33      tell Nexus utilities that this is a hardlink -->
34  </group>          <!-- end group data -->
35  </group>          <!-- end group entry -->
36</hdf5_layout>

```

If you do not specify where in the file to write an *ndattribute* from the attributes file, it will be written within the group that has *ndattr\_default="true"*. This identifies the group to the HDF5 file writing plugin as the *default location* to store content from the attributes file. In the example layout file, that *default location* is the */entry/instrument/NDAttributes* group:

```

<group
  name="NDAttributes"
  ndattr_default="true">
<attribute
  name="NX_class"
  source="constant"
  value="NXcollection"
  type="string"/>
</group>

```

To specify where PVs are written in the HDF5 file, you must create `<dataset />` (or `<attribute />`) elements at the appropriate place in the NeXus HDF5 file layout. See the NeXus manual<sup>5</sup> for placement advice if you are unsure.

You reference each *ndattribute* by its *name* value from the attributes file and use it as the value of the *ndattribute* in the layout file. In this example, *ndattribute="calcl\_val"* in the layout file references *name="calcl\_val"* in the attributes file and will be identified in the HDF5 file by the name *userCalcl*:

<sup>5</sup> NeXus manual: <https://manual.nexusformat.org/>

```
<dataset
  name="userCalc1"
  source="ndattribute"
  ndattribute="calc1_val"/>
```

---

**Note:** A value from the attributes file is only written either in the *default location* or in the location named by a <dataset/> or <attribute/> entry in the layout file. Expect problems if you define the same *ndattribute* in more than one place in the layout file.

---

You can control when a value is written to the file, using *when=""* in the layout file. This can be set to one of these values: OnFileOpen, OnFileClose

Such as:

```
<dataset
  name="userCalc1"
  source="ndattribute"
  ndattribute="calc1_val"
  when="OnFileOpen"/>
```

or:

```
<attribute
  name="exposure_s"
  source="ndattribute"
  ndattribute="AcquireTime"
  when="OnFileClose"/>
```

## additional configuration

Additional configurations of the EPICS Area Detector and the HDF5 File Plugin are done using the EPICS screens (shown here using caQtDM<sup>6</sup>):

Additional configuration on the **ADBBase** screen:

- Set *Image mode* to “Single”
- Set *Exposure time* as you wish
- Set *# Images* to 1
  - for testing, it is common to bin the data to reduce the image size
- The full path to the attributes.xml file goes in the bottom/left **File** box

Additional configuration on the **NDFfileHDF5** screen:

- Set the **File path** and “File name” to your choice.
- Set **Auto save** to “Yes”.
- Set **Compression** to “zlib” if you wish (optional)
- Set **Enable** to “Enable” or the HDF5 plugin won’t get images to write!
- Set **Callbacks block** to “Yes” if you want to wait for HDF5 files to finish writing before collecting the next image

---

<sup>6</sup> caQtDM: <http://epics.web.psi.ch/software/caqtdm/>

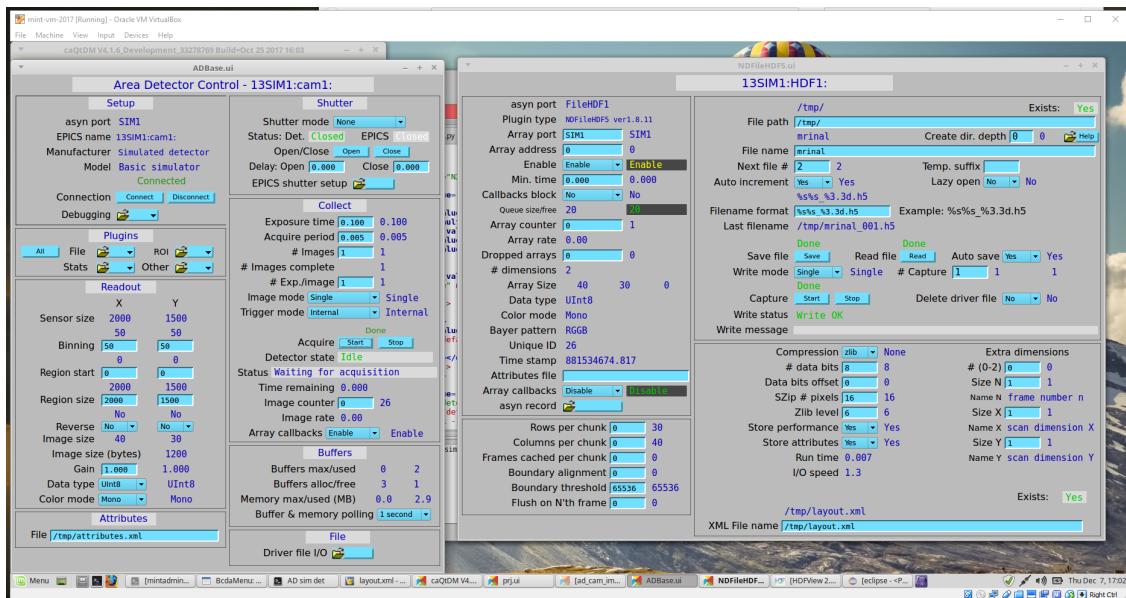


Fig. 13: ADbase and NDFileHDF5 configuration screens

- The full path to the layout.xml file goes into the bottom/right **XML File name** box
- Leave the **Attributes file** box empty in this screen.

When you enter the names of these files in the configuration screen boxes, AreaDetector will check the files for errors and let you know.

### Example view

We collected data for one image, /tmp/mrinal\_001.h5, in the HDF5 file provided in the **downloads** section. You may notice that the values for calc1\_val and calc2\_val were arrays rather than single values. That was due to an error in the original attributes.xml file, which had `type="PARAM"` instead of `type="EPICS_PV"`. This has been fixed in the attributes.xml file presented here.

### Python code to store an image in a NeXus file

Suppose you want to write area detector images into NeXus HDF5 files python code. Let's assume you have the image already in memory in a numpy array, perhaps from reading a TIFF file or from an EPICS PV using PyEpics. The file `write_nexus_file.py` (provided below) reads an image from the sim detector and writes it to a NeXus HDF5 data file, along with some additional metadata.

## using the *h5py* package

This example uses the *h5py*<sup>7</sup> package to write the HDF5 file.

```
1 import numpy as np
2 import h5py
3 import datetime
4
5 def write_nexus_file(fname, image, md={}):
6     """
7         write the image to a NeXus HDF5 data file
8
9     Parameters
10    -----
11     fname : str
12         name of the file (relative or absolute) to be written
13     image : numpy array
14         the image data
15     md : dictionary
16         key: value where value is something that can be written by h5py
17             (such as str, int, float, numpy array, ...)
18     """
19     nexus = h5py.File(fname, "w")
20     nexus.attrs["filename"] = fname
21     nexus.attrs["file_time"] = str(datetime.datetime.now())
22     nexus.attrs["creator"] = "write_nexus_file()"
23     nexus.attrs["H5PY_VERSION"] = h5py.__version__
24
25     # /entry
26     nxentry = nexus.create_group("entry")
27     nxentry.attrs["NX_class"] = "NXentry"
28     nexus.attrs["default"] = nxentry.name
29
30     # /entry/instrument
31     nxinstrument = nxentry.create_group("instrument")
32     nxinstrument.attrs["NX_class"] = "NXinstrument"
33
34     # /entry/instrument/detector
35     nxdetector = nxinstrument.create_group("detector")
36     nxdetector.attrs["NX_class"] = "NXdetector"
37
38     # /entry/instrument/detector/image
39     ds = nxdetector.create_dataset("image", data=image, compression="gzip")
40     ds.attrs["units"] = "counts"
41     ds.attrs["target"] = "/entry/instrument/detector/image"
42
43     # /entry/data
44     nxdata = nxentry.create_group("data")
45     nxdata.attrs["NX_class"] = "NXdata"
46     nxentry.attrs["default"] = nxdata.name
47
48     # /entry/data/data --> /entry/instrument/detector/image
49     nxdata["data"] = nexus["/entry/instrument/detector/image"]
50     nxdata.attrs["signal"] = "data"
51
52     if len(md) > 0:
```

(continues on next page)

---

<sup>7</sup> h5py: <http://docs.h5py.org>

(continued from previous page)

```

53 # /entry/instrument/metadata (optional, for metadata)
54 metadata = nxinstrument.create_group("metadata")
55 metadata.attrs["NX_class"] = "NXcollection"
56 for k, v in md.items():
57     try:
58         metadata.create_dataset(k, data=v)
59     except Exception:
60         metadata.create_dataset(k, data=str(v))
61
62 nexus.close()
63
64
65 if __name__ == "__main__":
66     """demonstrate how to use this code"""
67     import epics
68     prefix = "13SIM1:"
69     img = epics.caget(prefix+"image1:ArrayData")
70     size_x = epics.caget(prefix+"cam1:ArraySizeX_RBV")
71     size_y = epics.caget(prefix+"cam1:ArraySizeY_RBV")
72     # edit the full image for just the binned data
73     img = img[:size_x*size_y].reshape((size_x, size_y))
74
75     extra_information = dict(
76         unique_id = epics.caget(prefix+"image1:UniqueId_RBV"),
77         size_x = size_x,
78         size_y = size_y,
79         detector_state = epics.caget(prefix+"cam1:DetectorState_RBV"),
80         bitcoin_value="15000",
81     )
82     write_nexus_file("example.h5", img, md=extra_information)

```

The output from that code is given in the example.h5 file. It has this tree structure:

```

1 example.h5 : Nexus data file
2     @filename = example.h5
3     @file_time = 2017-12-07 18:22:14.582105
4     @creator = write_nexus_file()
5     @H5PY_VERSION = 2.5.0
6     @default = /entry
7     entry:NXentry
8         @NX_class = NXentry
9         @default = /entry/data
10        data:NXdata
11            @NX_class = NXdata
12            @signal = data
13            data --> /entry/instrument/detector/image
14        instrument:NXinstrument
15            @NX_class = NXinstrument
16        detector:NXdetector
17            @NX_class = NXdetector
18            image:NX_UINT8[40,30] = __array
19                __array = [
20                    [48, 80, 112, '...', 208]
21                    [240, 16, 48, '...', 176]
22                    [208, 240, 16, '...', 144]
23                    ...
24                    [16, 48, 80, '...', 176]

```

(continues on next page)

(continued from previous page)

```

25     ]
26     @units = counts
27     @target = /entry/instrument/detector/image
28 metadata:NXcollection
29     @NX_class = NXcollection
30     bitcoin_value:NX_CHAR = 15000
31     detector_state:NX_INT64[] =
32     size_x:NX_INT64[] =
33     size_y:NX_INT64[] =
34     unique_id:NX_INT64[] =

```

**Note:** Alternatively, the metadata shown in this example might be placed in the `/entry/instrument/detector` (*NXdetector*) group along with the image data since it provides image-related information such as size.

In the interest of keeping this example simpler and similar to the one above using the HDF5 File Writing Plugin, the metadata has been written into a *NXcollection* group at `/entry/instrument/metadata` location. (Compare with the *NXcollection* group `/entry/instrument/NDAttributes` above.)

## using the *nexusformat* package

The *nexusformat*<sup>8</sup> package for python simplifies the work to create a NeXus file. Rewriting the above code using *nexusformat*:

```

1 import numpy as np
2 import nexusformat
3
4
5 def write_nexus_file(fname, image, md={}):
6     """
7         write the image to a NeXus HDF5 data file
8
9     Parameters
10    -----
11     fname : str
12         name of the file (relative or absolute) to be written
13     image : numpy array
14         the image data
15     md : dictionary
16         key: value where value is something that can be written by h5py
17             (such as str, int, float, numpy array, ...)
18     """
19     nx = NXroot()
20     nx['/entry'] = NXentry(NXinstrument(NXdetector()))
21     nx['entry/instrument/detector/image'] = NXfield(image, units='counts',
22                                                     compression='gzip')
23     nx['entry/data'] = NXdata()
24     nx['entry/data'].makelink(nx['entry/instrument/detector/image'])
25     nx['entry/data'].nxsignal = nx['entry/data/image']
26
27     if len(md) > 0:
28         # /entry/instrument/metadata (optional, for metadata)

```

(continues on next page)

<sup>8</sup> *nexusformat*: This Python package is described on the NeXPy web site

(continued from previous page)

```

29     metadata = nx['/entry/instrument/metadata'] = NXcollection()
30     for k, v in md.items():
31         metadata[k] = v
32
33     nx.save(fname, 'w')
34
35
36 if __name__ == "__main__":
37     """demonstrate how to use this code"""
38     import epics
39     prefix = "13SIM1:"
40     img = epics.caget(prefix+"image1:ArrayData")
41     size_x = epics.caget(prefix+"cam1:ArraySizeX_RBV")
42     size_y = epics.caget(prefix+"cam1:ArraySizeY_RBV")
43     # edit the full image for just the binned data
44     img = img[:size_x*size_y].reshape((size_x, size_y))
45
46     extra_information = dict(
47         unique_id = epics.caget(prefix+"image1:UniqueId_RBV"),
48         size_x = size_x,
49         size_y = size_y,
50         detector_state = epics.caget(prefix+"cam1:DetectorState_RBV"),
51         bitcoin_value="15000",
52     )
53     write_nexus_file("example.h5", img, md=extra_information)

```

## Visualization

You can visualize the HDF5 files with several programs, such as: hdfview<sup>9</sup>, nexpy<sup>10</sup>, or pymca<sup>11</sup>. Views of the test image shown using **NeXPY** (from the HDF5 file) and **caQtDM** (the image from EPICS) are shown.

Get the installation instructions for any of these programs from a web search. Other data analysis programs such as MatLab, IgorPro, and IDL can also read HDF5 files but you might have to work a bit more to get the data to a plot.

## Downloads

file	description
attributes.xml	The attributes file
layout.xml	The layout file
mrinal_001.h5	example NeXus HDF5 file written from EPICS
write_nexus_file.py	Python code to get images from EPICS and write a NeXus file
write_nexus_file2.py	<i>write_nexus_file.py</i> rewritten with <i>nexusformat</i> package
example.h5	example NeXus HDF5 file written from Python

<sup>9</sup> hdfview: <https://support.hdfgroup.org/products/java/hdfview/>

<sup>10</sup> nexpy: <https://nexpy.github.io/nexpy/>

<sup>11</sup> pymca: <http://pymca.sourceforge.net/>

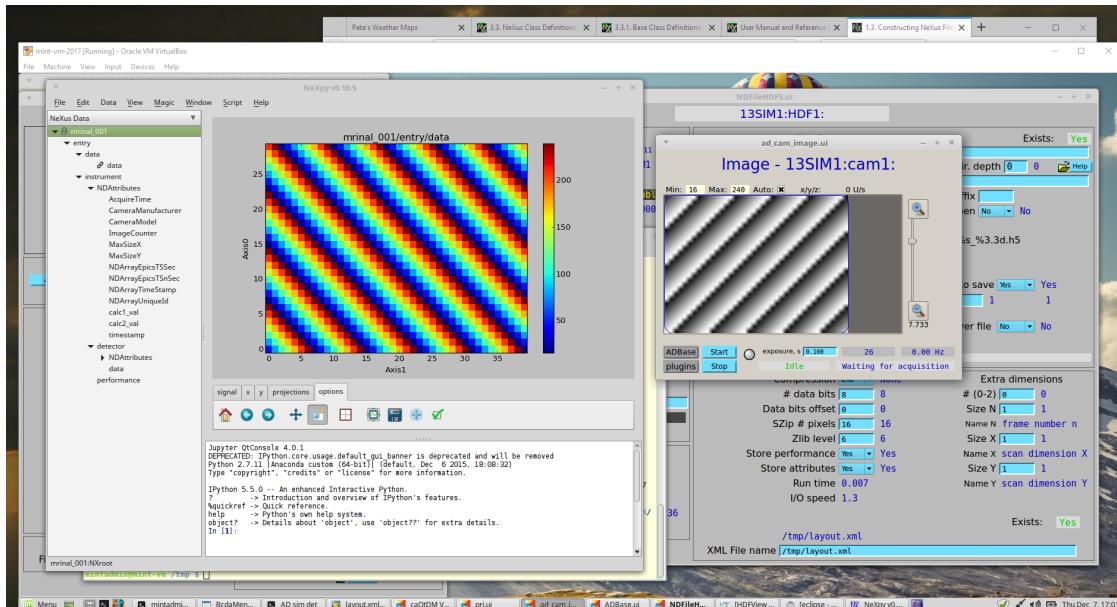


Fig. 14: Views of the image in NeXPy (left) and in caQtDM (right)

## Footnotes

## 2.2 Code Examples that use the NeXus API (NAPI)

These examples illustrate the use of the NAPI *NAPI: NeXus Application Programmer Interface (frozen)*. Please refer to the linked section in the manual for the status of NAPI.

### 2.2.1 Example NeXus programs using NAPI

#### NAPI Simple 2-D Write Example (C, F77, F90)

Code examples are provided in this section that write 2-D data to a NeXus HDF5 file in C, F77, and F90 languages using the NAPI.

The following code reads a two-dimensional set counts with dimension scales of t and phi using local routines, and then writes a NeXus file containing a single NXentry group and a single NXdata group. This is the simplest data file that conforms to the NeXus standard. The same code is provided in C, F77, and F90 versions. Compare these code examples with *Example NeXus C programs using native HDF5 commands*.

#### NAPI C Example: write simple NeXus file

---

**Note:** This example uses the signal/axes attributes applied to the data field, as described in *Associating plottable data by name using the axes attribute*. New code should use the method described in *Associating plottable data using attributes applied to the NXdata group*.

---

```

1 #include "napi.h"
2
3 int main()
4 {
5     int counts[50][1000], n_t=1000, n_p=50, dims[2], i;
6     float t[1000], phi[50];
7     NXhandle file_id;
8
9     /* Read in data using local routines to populate phi and counts
10    */
11    /* for example you may create a getdata() function and call
12    */
13    /*      getdata (n_t, t, n_p, phi, counts); */
14    */
15    /* Open output file and output global attributes */
16    NXopen ("NXfile.nxs", NXACC_CREATE5, &file_id);
17    NXputattr (file_id, "user_name", "Joe Bloggs", 10, NX_CHAR);
18    /* Open top-level NXentry group */
19    NXmakegroup (file_id, "Entry1", "NXentry");
20    NXopengroup (file_id, "Entry1", "NXentry");
21    /* Open NXdata group within NXentry group */
22    NXmakegroup (file_id, "Data1", "NXdata");
23    NXopengroup (file_id, "Data1", "NXdata");
24    /* Output time channels */
25    NXmakedata (file_id, "time_of_flight", NX_FLOAT32, 1, &n_t);
26    NXopendata (file_id, "time_of_flight");
27    NXputdata (file_id, t);
28    NXputattr (file_id, "units", "microseconds", 12, NX_CHAR);
29    NXclosedata (file_id);
30    /* Output detector angles */
31    NXmakedata (file_id, "polar_angle", NX_FLOAT32, 1, &n_p);
32    NXopendata (file_id, "polar_angle");
33    NXputdata (file_id, phi);
34    NXputattr (file_id, "units", "degrees", 7, NX_CHAR);
35    NXclosedata (file_id);
36    /* Output data */
37    dims[0] = n_t;
38    dims[1] = n_p;
39    NXmakedata (file_id, "counts", NX_INT32, 2, dims);
40    NXopendata (file_id, "counts");
41    NXputdata (file_id, counts);
42    i = 1;
43    NXputattr (file_id, "signal", &i, 1, NX_INT32);
44    NXputattr (file_id, "axes", "polar_angle:time_of_flight", 26, NX_CHAR);
45    NXclosedata (file_id);
46    /* Close NXentry and NXdata groups and close file */
47    NXclosegroup (file_id);
48    NXclosegroup (file_id);
49    NXclose (&file_id);
50    return;
51 }
```

## NAPI F77 Example: write simple NeXus file

**Note:** The F77 interface is no longer being developed.

```

1  program WRITEDATA
2
3    include 'NAPIF.INC'
4    integer*4 status, file_id(NXHANDLESIZE), counts(1000,50), n_p, n_t, dims(2)
5    real*4 t(1000), phi(50)
6
7 !Read in data using local routines
8    call getdata (n_t, t, n_p, phi, counts)
9 !Open output file
10   status = NXopen ('NXFILE.NXS', NXACC_CREATE, file_id)
11     status = NXputcharattr
12       + (file_id, 'user', 'Joe Bloggs', 10, NX_CHAR)
13 !Open top-level NXentry group
14   status = NXmakegroup (file_id, 'Entry1', 'NXentry')
15   status = NX.opengroup (file_id, 'Entry1', 'NXentry')
16 !Open NXdata group within NXentry group
17   status = NXmakegroup (file_id, 'Data1', 'NXdata')
18   status = NX.opengroup (file_id, 'Data1', 'NXdata')
19 !Output time channels
20   status = NXmakedata
21     + (file_id, 'time_of_flight', NX_FLOAT32, 1, n_t)
22     status = NXopendata (file_id, 'time_of_flight')
23     status = NXputdata (file_id, t)
24     status = NXputcharattr
25     + (file_id, 'units', 'microseconds', 12, NX_CHAR)
26     status = NXclosedata (file_id)
27 !Output detector angles
28   status = NXmakedata (file_id, 'polar_angle', NX_FLOAT32, 1, n_p)
29   status = NXopendata (file_id, 'polar_angle')
30   status = NXputdata (file_id, phi)
31   status = NXputcharattr (file_id, 'units', 'degrees', 7, NX_CHAR)
32   status = NXclosedata (file_id)
33 !Output data
34   dims(1) = n_t
35   dims(2) = n_p
36   status = NXmakedata (file_id, 'counts', NX_INT32, 2, dims)
37   status = NXopendata (file_id, 'counts')
38   status = NXputdata (file_id, counts)
39   status = NXputattr (file_id, 'signal', 1, 1, NX_INT32)
40   status = NXputattr
41     + (file_id, 'axes', 'polar_angle:time_of_flight', 26, NX_CHAR)
42     status = NXclosedata (file_id)
43 !Close NXdata and NXentry groups and close file
44   status = NXclosegroup (file_id)
45   status = NXclosegroup (file_id)
46   status = NXclose (file_id)
47
48   stop
49 end

```

## NAPI F90 Example: write simple NeXus file

**Note:** This example uses the signal/axes attributes applied to the data field, as described in [Associating plottable data by name using the axes attribute](#). New code should use the method described in [Associating plottable data using attributes applied to the NXdata group](#).

```

1 program WRITEDATA
2
3   use NXUmodule
4
5   type(NXhandle) :: file_id
6   integer, pointer :: counts(:,:,:)
7   real, pointer :: t(:, ), phi(:, )
8
9   !Use local routines to allocate pointers and fill in data
10  call getlocaldata (t, phi, counts)
11  !Open output file
12  if (NXopen ("NXfile.nxs", NXACC_CREATE, file_id) /= NX_OK) stop
13  if (NXUwriteglobals (file_id, user="Joe Bloggs") /= NX_OK) stop
14  !Set compression parameters
15  if (NXUsetcompress (file_id, NX_COMP_LZW, 1000) /= NX_OK) stop
16  !Open top-level NXentry group
17  if (NXUwritegroup (file_id, "Entry1", "NXentry") /= NX_OK) stop
18  !Open NXdata group within NXentry group
19  if (NXUwritegroup (file_id, "Data1", "NXdata") /= NX_OK) stop
20  !Output time channels
21  if (NXUwritedata (file_id, "time_of_flight", t, "microseconds") /= NX_OK) ↵
22  ↵stop
23  !Output detector angles
24  if (NXUwritedata (file_id, "polar_angle", phi, "degrees") /= NX_OK) stop
25  !Output data
26  if (NXUwritedata (file_id, "counts", counts, "counts") /= NX_OK) stop
27  if (NXputattr (file_id, "signal", 1) /= NX_OK) stop
28  if (NXputattr (file_id, "axes", "polar_angle:time_of_flight") /= NX_OK) ↵
29  ↵stop
30  !Close NXdata group
31  if (NXclosegroup (file_id) /= NX_OK) stop
32  !Close NXentry group
33  if (NXclosegroup (file_id) /= NX_OK) stop
34  !Close NeXus file
35  if (NXclose (file_id) /= NX_OK) stop
36
37 end program WRITEDATA

```

## NAPI Python Simple 3-D Write Example

A single code example is provided in this section that writes 3-D data to a NeXus HDF5 file in the Python language using the NAPI.

The data to be written to the file is a simple three-dimensional array (2 x 3 x 4) of integers. The single dataset is intended to demonstrate the order in which each value of the array is stored in a NeXus HDF5 data file.

### NAPI Python Example: write simple NeXus file

```
1 #!/usr/bin/python
2
3 import sys
4 import nxs
5 import numpy
6
7 a = numpy.zeros((2,3,4),dtype=numpy.int)
8 val = 0
9 for i in range(2):
10     for j in range(3):
11         for k in range(4):
12             a[i,j,k] = val
13             val = val + 1
14
15 nf = nxs.open("simple3D.h5", "w5")
16
17 nf.makegroup("entry", "NXentry")
18 nf.opengroup("entry", "NXentry")
19
20 nf.makegroup("data", "NXdata")
21 nf.opengroup("data", "NXdata")
22 nf.putattr("signal","test")
23
24 nf.makedata("test",'int32',[2,3,4])
25 nf.opendata("test")
26 nf.putdata(a)
27 nf.closedata()
28
29 nf.closingroup() # NXdata
30 nf.closingroup() # NXentry
31
32 nf.close()
33
34 exit
```

### View a NeXus HDF5 file using *h5dump*

For the purposes of an example, it is instructive to view the content of the NeXus HDF5 file produced by the above program. Since HDF5 is a binary file format, we cannot show the contents of the file directly in this manual. Instead, we first we view the content by showing the output from the *h5dump* tool provided as part of the HDF5 tool kit:  
*h5dump simple3D.h5*

## NAPI Python Example: h5dump output of NeXus HDF5 file

```

1  HDF5 "simple3D.h5" {
2      GROUP "/" {
3          ATTRIBUTE "NeXus_version" {
4              DATATYPE H5T_STRING {
5                  STRSIZE 5;
6                  STRPAD H5T_STR_NULLTERM;
7                  CSET H5T_CSET_ASCII;
8                  CTYPE H5T_C_S1;
9              }
10             DATASPACE SCALAR
11             DATA {
12                 (0): "4.1.0"
13             }
14         }
15         ATTRIBUTE "file_name" {
16             DATATYPE H5T_STRING {
17                 STRSIZE 11;
18                 STRPAD H5T_STR_NULLTERM;
19                 CSET H5T_CSET_ASCII;
20                 CTYPE H5T_C_S1;
21             }
22             DATASPACE SCALAR
23             DATA {
24                 (0): "simple3D.h5"
25             }
26         }
27         ATTRIBUTE "HDF5_Version" {
28             DATATYPE H5T_STRING {
29                 STRSIZE 5;
30                 STRPAD H5T_STR_NULLTERM;
31                 CSET H5T_CSET_ASCII;
32                 CTYPE H5T_C_S1;
33             }
34             DATASPACE SCALAR
35             DATA {
36                 (0): "1.6.6"
37             }
38         }
39         ATTRIBUTE "file_time" {
40             DATATYPE H5T_STRING {
41                 STRSIZE 24;
42                 STRPAD H5T_STR_NULLTERM;
43                 CSET H5T_CSET_ASCII;
44                 CTYPE H5T_C_S1;
45             }
46             DATASPACE SCALAR
47             DATA {
48                 (0): "2011-11-18 17:26:27+0100"
49             }
50         }
51     GROUP "entry" {
52         ATTRIBUTE "NX_class" {
53             DATATYPE H5T_STRING {
54                 STRSIZE 7;
55                 STRPAD H5T_STR_NULLTERM;

```

(continues on next page)

(continued from previous page)

```

56         CSET H5T_CSET_ASCII;
57         CTYPE H5T_C_S1;
58     }
59     DATASPACE SCALAR
60     DATA {
61         (0): "NXentry"
62     }
63 }
64 GROUP "data" {
65     ATTRIBUTE "NX_class" {
66         DATATYPE H5T_STRING {
67             STRSIZE 6;
68             STRPAD H5T_STR_NULLTERM;
69             CSET H5T_CSET_ASCII;
70             CTYPE H5T_C_S1;
71         }
72         DATASPACE SCALAR
73         DATA {
74             (0): "NXdata"
75         }
76     }
77     DATASET "test" {
78         DATATYPE H5T_STD_I32LE
79         DATASPACE SIMPLE { ( 2, 3, 4 ) / ( 2, 3, 4 ) }
80         DATA {
81             (0,0,0): 0, 1, 2, 3,
82             (0,1,0): 4, 5, 6, 7,
83             (0,2,0): 8, 9, 10, 11,
84             (1,0,0): 12, 13, 14, 15,
85             (1,1,0): 16, 17, 18, 19,
86             (1,2,0): 20, 21, 22, 23
87         }
88         ATTRIBUTE "signal" {
89             DATATYPE H5T_STD_I32LE
90             DATASPACE SCALAR
91             DATA {
92                 (0): 1
93             }
94         }
95     }
96 }
97 }
98 }
99 }
```

## View a NeXus HDF5 file using *punx tree*

The output of `h5dump` contains a lot of structural information about the HDF5 file that can distract us from the actual content we added to the file. Next, we show the output from a custom Python tool (`punx tree`) built for NeXus data file validation and view.<sup>1</sup> The `tree` option of this tool<sup>2</sup> was developed to show the actual data content of an HDF5 file that we create.

<sup>1</sup> **punx** : <https://punx.readthedocs.io/>

<sup>2</sup> **punx tree** : [https://punx.readthedocs.io/en/latest/source\\_code/h5tree.html#how-to-use-h5tree](https://punx.readthedocs.io/en/latest/source_code/h5tree.html#how-to-use-h5tree)

**NAPI Python Example: punx tree simple3D.h5 output of NeXus HDF5 file**

```
1 simple3D.h5:NeXus data file
2   @NeXus_version = 4.1.0
3   @file_name = simple3D.h5
4   @HDF5_Version = 1.6.6
5   @file_time = 2011-11-18 17:26:27+0100
6   entry:NXentry
7     @NX_class = NXentry
8     data:NXdata
9       @NX_class = NXdata
10      test:NX_INT32[2,3,4] = __array
11        @signal = 1
12        __array = [
13          [
14            [0, 1, 2, 3]
15            [4, 5, 6, 7]
16            [8, 9, 10, 11]
17          ]
18          [
19            [12, 13, 14, 15]
20              [16, 17, 18, 19]
21              [20, 21, 22, 23]
22            ]
23          ]
```



## NEXUS: REFERENCE DOCUMENTATION



### 3.1 Introduction to NeXus definitions

While the design principles of NeXus are explained in the *NeXus: User Manual*, this Reference Documentation specifies all allowed *base classes* and all standardized *application definitions*. Furthermore, it also contains *contributed definitions* of new bases classes or application definitions that are currently under review.

Base class definitions and application definitions have basically the same structure, but different semantics:

- Base class definitions define the *complete* set of terms that *might* be used in an instance of that class.
- Application definitions define the *minimum* set of terms that *must* be used in an instance of that class.

Base classes and application definitions are specified using a domain-specific XML scheme, the *NXDL: The NeXus Definition Language*.

#### 3.1.1 Overview of NeXus definitions

For each class definition, the documentation is derived from content provided in the NXDL specification.

The documentation for each class consists of sections describing the *Status*, *Description*, table of *Symbols* (if defined), other NeXus base class *Groups cited*, an annotated *Structure*, and a link to the *NXDL Source* (XML) file.

Each of the NXDL files has its own tag in the version repository. Such as *NXcrystal-1.0* is tagged in GitHub and accessible via URL: <https://github.com/nexusformat/definitions/releases/tag/NXcrystal-1.0>

## Description

General documentation if this NXDL file.

## Symbols table

The symbols table describes keywords used in this NXDL file to designate array dimensions. At present, this list is not guaranteed to be complete (some array dimension names appear only in a *Structure* description and not here).

## Annotated Structure

A representation of the basic structure (groups, fields, dimensions, attributes, and links) is prepared for each NXDL specification. Indentation shows nested structure. Attributes are prepended with the @ symbol. Links use the characters -> to represent the path to the intended source of the information.

Indentation is used to indicate nesting of subgroups (a feature common to application definitions). Within each indentation level, NeXus *fields* are listed first in the order presented in the NXDL file, then *groups*. *Attributes* are listed after the documentation of each item and are prefixed with the letter @ (do not use the @ symbol in the actual attribute name). The name of each item is in **bold**, followed by either *optional* or *required* and then the NXDL base class name (for groups) or the NeXus data type (for fields). If units are to be provided with the *field*, the type of the units is described, such as NX\_DATE\_TIME.

*NeXus Links* (these specifications are typically present only in application definitions) are described by a local name, the text ->, then a suggested path to the source item to be linked to the local name.

## Names (groups, fields, links, and attributes)

Name of the item. Since name needs to be restricted to valid program variable names, no “-” characters can be allowed. Name must satisfy both HDF and XML naming.

```
1  NameStartChar ::= _ | a..z | A..Z
2  NameChar      ::= NameStartChar | 0..9
3  Name          ::= NameStartChar (NameChar)*
4
5  Or, as a regular expression:      [_a-zA-Z] [_a-zA-Z0-9]*
6  equivalent regular expression:  [_a-zA-Z] [\w_]*
```

Attributes, identified with a leading “at” symbol (@) and belong with the preceding field or group, are additional metadata used to define this field or group. In the example above, the `program_name` element has the `configuration` (optional) attribute while the `thumbnail` element has the `mime_type` (optional) attribute.

For groups, the name may not be declared in the NXDL specification. In such instances, the *value shown in parentheses* in the *Name and Attributes* column is a suggestion, obtained from the group by removing the “NX” prefix. See *NXentry* for examples.

When the name is allowed to be *flexible* (the exact name given by this NXDL specification is not required but is set at the time the HDF file is written), the flexible part of the name will be written in all capital letters. For example, in the *NXdata* group, the `DATA`, `VARIABLE`, and `VARIABLE_errors` fields are *flexible*.

## NeXus data type

Type of data to be represented by this variable. The type is one of those specified in [NXDL: The NeXus Definition Language](#). In the case where the variable can take only one value from a known list, the list of known values is presented, such as in the target\_material field above: Ta | W | depleted\_U | enriched\_U | Hg | Pb | C. Selections with included whitespace are surrounded by quotes. See the example above for usage.

For fields, the data type may not be specified in the NXDL file. The *default data type* is NX\_CHAR. See [NXdata](#) for examples.

## Units

Data units, are given as character strings, must conform to the NeXus [units standard](#). See the [NeXus units](#) section for details.

## Description

A simple text description of the field. No markup or formatting is allowed.

NXDL element type	minOccurs	maxOccurs
group	1	unbounded
field	1	unbounded
attribute	1	1

## Choice

The choice element allows one to create a group with a defined name that is one specific NXDL base class from a defined list of possibilities

In some cases when creating an application definition, more than one choice of base class might be used to define a particular subgroup. For this particular situation, the choice was added to the NeXus NXDL Schema.

In this example fragment of an NXDL application definition, the pixel\_shape could be represented by either NXoff\_geometry or NXcylindrical\_geometry.

```

1  <choice name="pixel_shape">
2    <group type="NXoff_geometry">
3      <doc>
4        Shape description of each pixel. Use only if all pixels in the detector
5        are of uniform shape.
6      </doc>
7    </group>
8    <group type="NXcylindrical_geometry">
9      <doc>
10        Shape description of each pixel. Use only if all pixels in the detector
11        are of uniform shape and require being described by cylinders.
12      </doc>
13    </group>
14  </choice>
```

<sup>1</sup> For NXDL *base classes*, minOccurs=0 is the default, for NXDL *application definitions* and *contributed definitions*, minOccurs=1 is the default. In all cases, the minOccurs attribute in the NXDL file will override the default for that element (group, field, attribute, or link).

The @name attribute of the `choice` element specifies the name that will appear in the HDF5 data file using one of the groups listed within the choice. Thus, it is not necessary to specify the name in each group. (At some point, the NXDL Schema may be modified to enforce this rule.)

A `choice` element may be used wherever a `group` element is used. It **must** have at least two groups listed (otherwise, it would not be useful).

## 3.2 NXDL: The NeXus Definition Language

Information in NeXus data files is arranged by a set of rules. These rules facilitate the exchange of data between scientists and software by standardizing common terms such as the way engineering units are described and the names for common things and the way that arrays are described and stored.

The set of rules for storing information in NeXus data files is declared using the NeXus Definition Language. NXDL itself is governed by a set of rules (*a schema*) that should simplify learning the few terms in NXDL. In fact, the NXDL rules, written as an XML Schema, are machine-readable using industry-standard and widely-available software tools for XML files such as `xsltproc` and `xmllint`. This chapter describes the rules and terms from which NXDL files are constructed.

### 3.2.1 Introduction

NeXus Definition Language (NXDL) files allow scientists to define the nomenclature and arrangement of information in NeXus data files. These NXDL files can be specific to a scientific discipline such as tomography or small-angle scattering, specific analysis or data reduction software, or even to define another component (base class) used to design and build NeXus data files.

In addition to this chapter and the *Tutorial* chapter, look at the set of NeXus NXDL files to learn how to read and write NXDL files. These files are available from the NeXus *definitions* repository and are most easily viewed on GitHub: <https://github.com/nexusformat/definitions> in the `base_classes`, `applications`, and `contributed` directories. The rules (expressed as XML Schema) for NXDL files may also be viewed from this URL. See the files `nxdl.xsd` for the main XML Schema and `nxdlTypes.xsd` for the listings of allowed data types and categories of units allowed in NXDL files.

NXDL files can be checked (validated) for syntax and content. With validation, scientists can be certain their definitions will be free of syntax errors. Since NXDL is based on the XML standard, there are many editing programs<sup>1</sup> available to ensure that the files are *well-formed*.<sup>2</sup> There are many standard tools such as `xmllint` and `xsltproc` that can process XML files. Further, NXDL files are backed by a set of rules (*an XML Schema*) that define the language and can be used to check that an NXDL file is both correct by syntax and valid by the NeXus rules.

NXDL files are machine-readable. This enables their automated conversion into schema files that can be used, in combination with other NXDL files, to validate NeXus data files. In fact, all of the tables in the *Class Definitions* Chapter have been generated directly from the NXDL files.

The language of NXDL files is intentionally quite small, to provide only that which is necessary to describe scientific data structures (or to establish the necessary XML structures). Rather than have scientists prepare XML Schema files directly, NXDL was designed to reduce the jargon necessary to define the structure of data files. The two principle objects in NXDL files are: `group` and `field`. Documentation (`doc`) is optional for any NXDL component. Either of these objects may have additional attributes that contribute simple metadata.

The *Class Definitions* Chapter lists the various classes from which a NeXus file is constructed. These classes provide the glossary of items that could, in principle, be stored in a standard-conforming NeXus file (other items may be inserted into the file if the author wishes, but they won't be part of the standard). If you are going to include a particular piece of metadata, refer to the class definitions for the standard nomenclature. However, to assist those writing data

<sup>1</sup> For example *XML Copy Editor* (<http://xml-copy-editor.sourceforge.net/>)

<sup>2</sup> [http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/XML#Well-formedness\\_and\\_error-handling](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/XML#Well-formedness_and_error-handling)

analysis software, it is useful to provide more than a glossary; it is important to define the required contents of NeXus files that contain data from particular classes of neutron, X-ray, or muon instrument.

## NXDL Elements and Field Types

The documentation in this section has been obtained directly from the NXDL Schema file: *nxdl.xsd*. First, the basic elements are defined in alphabetical order. Attributes to an element are indicated immediately following the element and are preceded with an “@” symbol, such as **@attribute**. Then, the common data types used within the NXDL specification are defined. Pay particular attention to the rules for *validItemName* and *validNXClassName*.

### NXDL Elements

#### attribute

An **attribute** element can *only* be a child of a **field** or **group** element. It is used to define **attribute** elements to be used and their data types and possibly an enumeration of allowed values.

For more details, see: [attributeType](#)

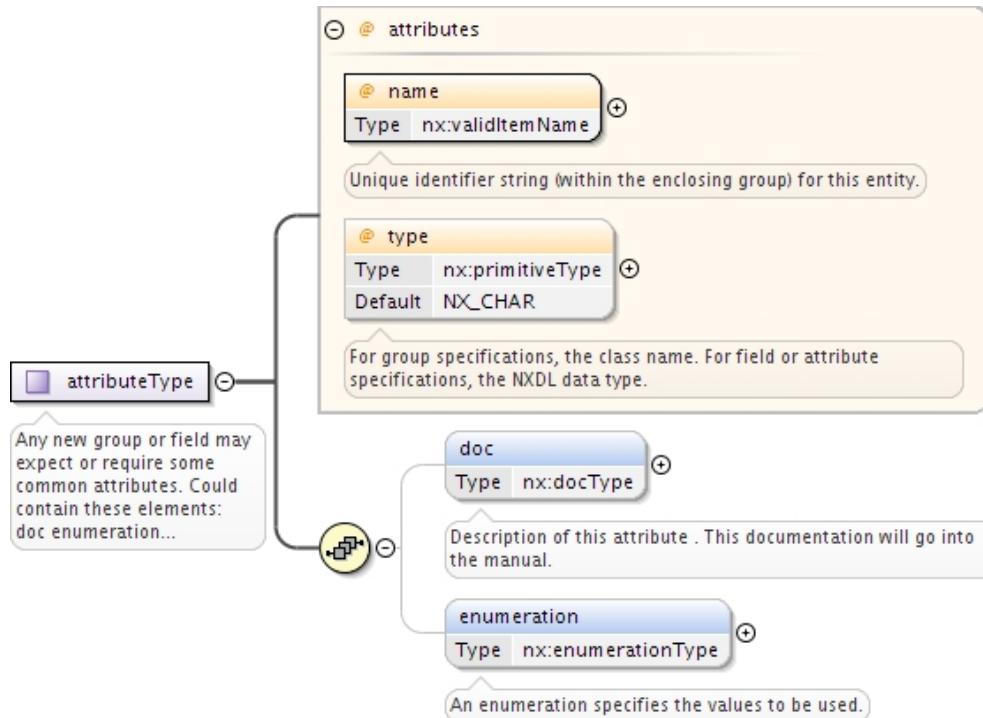


Fig. 1: Graphical representation of the NXDL **attribute** element

## choice

A `choice` element is used when a named group might take one of several possible NeXus base classes. Logically, it must have at least two group children.

For more details, see: [choiceType](#)

## definition

A `definition` element can *only* be used at the root level of an NXDL specification. Note: Due to the large number of attributes of the `definition` element, they have been omitted from the figure below.

For more details, see: [definition](#), [definitionType](#), and [definitionTypeAttr](#)

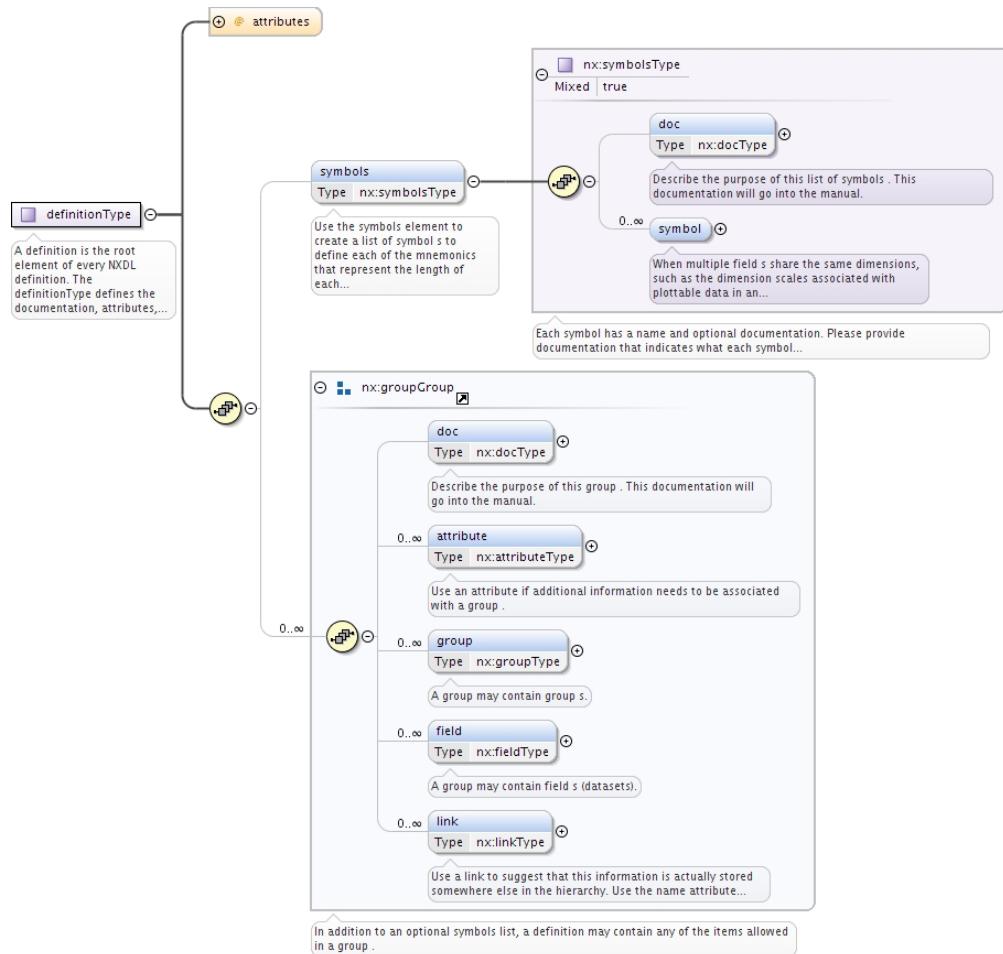


Fig. 2: Graphical representation of the NXDL `definition` element

## dimensions

The dimensions element describes the *shape* of an array. It is used *only* as a child of a field element.

For more details, see: [dimensionsType](#)

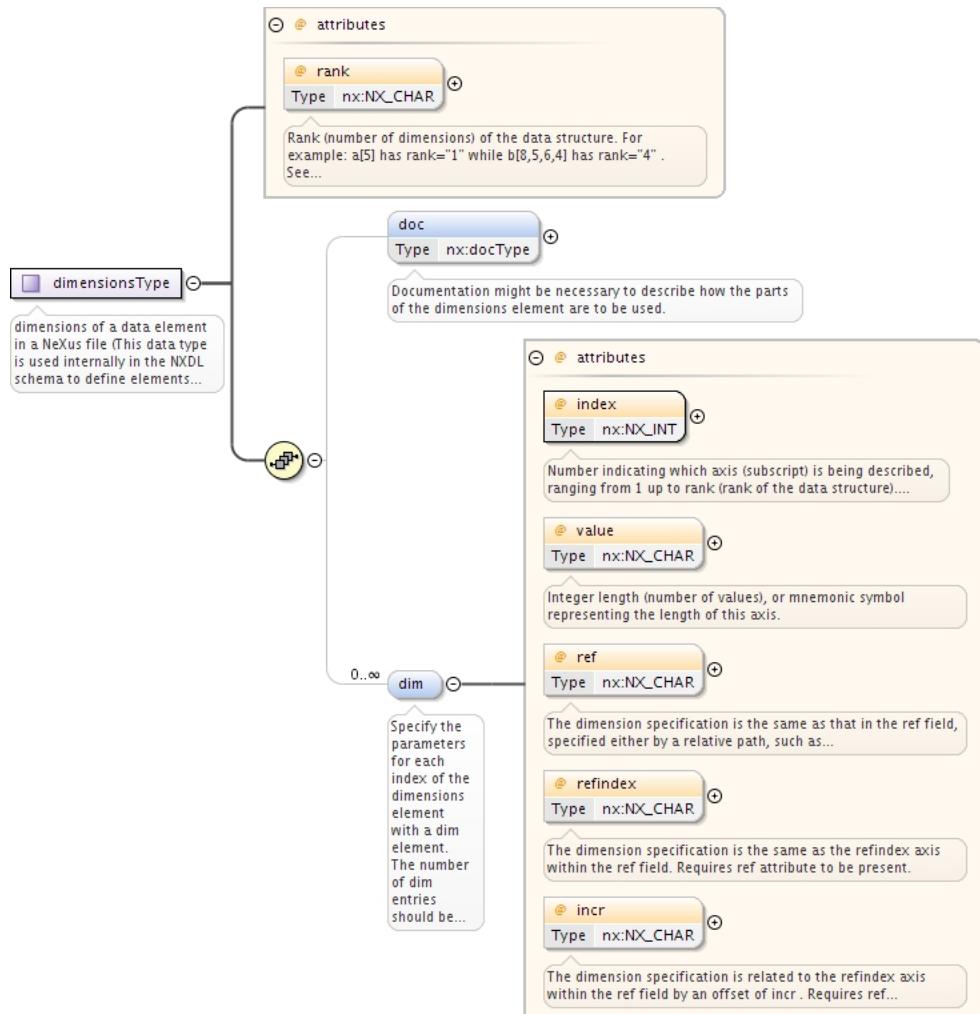


Fig. 3: Graphical representation of the NXDL dimensions element

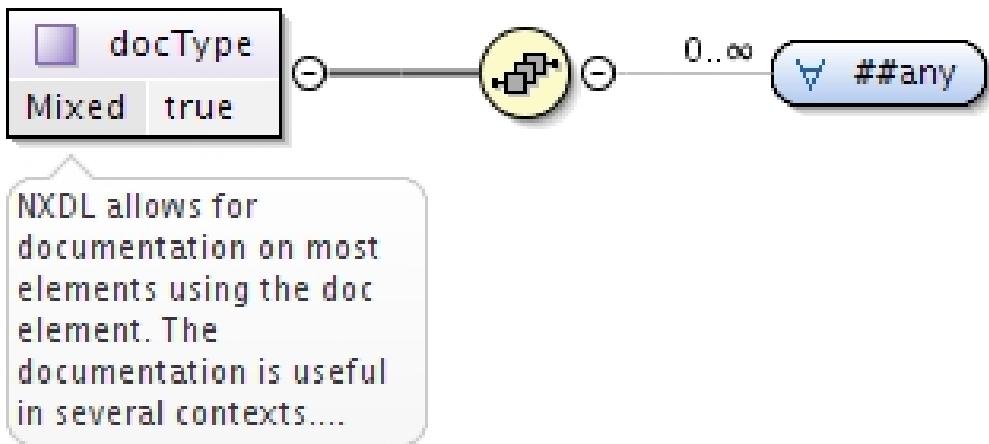
## doc

A doc element can be a child of most NXDL elements. In most cases, the content of the doc element will also become part of the NeXus manual.

**element {any}:**

In documentation, it may be useful to use an element that is not directly specified by the NXDL language. The *any* element here says that one can use any element at all in a doc element and NXDL will not process it but pass it through.

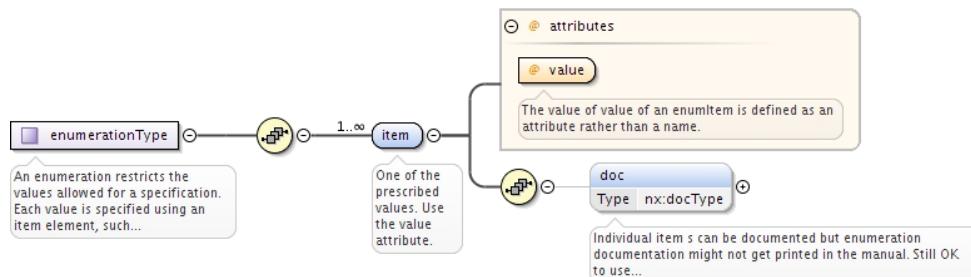
For more details, see: [docType](#)

Fig. 4: Graphical representation of the NXDL `doc` element

### enumeration

An enumeration element can *only* be a child of a `field` or `attribute` element. It is used to restrict the available choices to a predefined list, such as to control varieties in spelling of a controversial word (such as *metre* vs. *meter*).

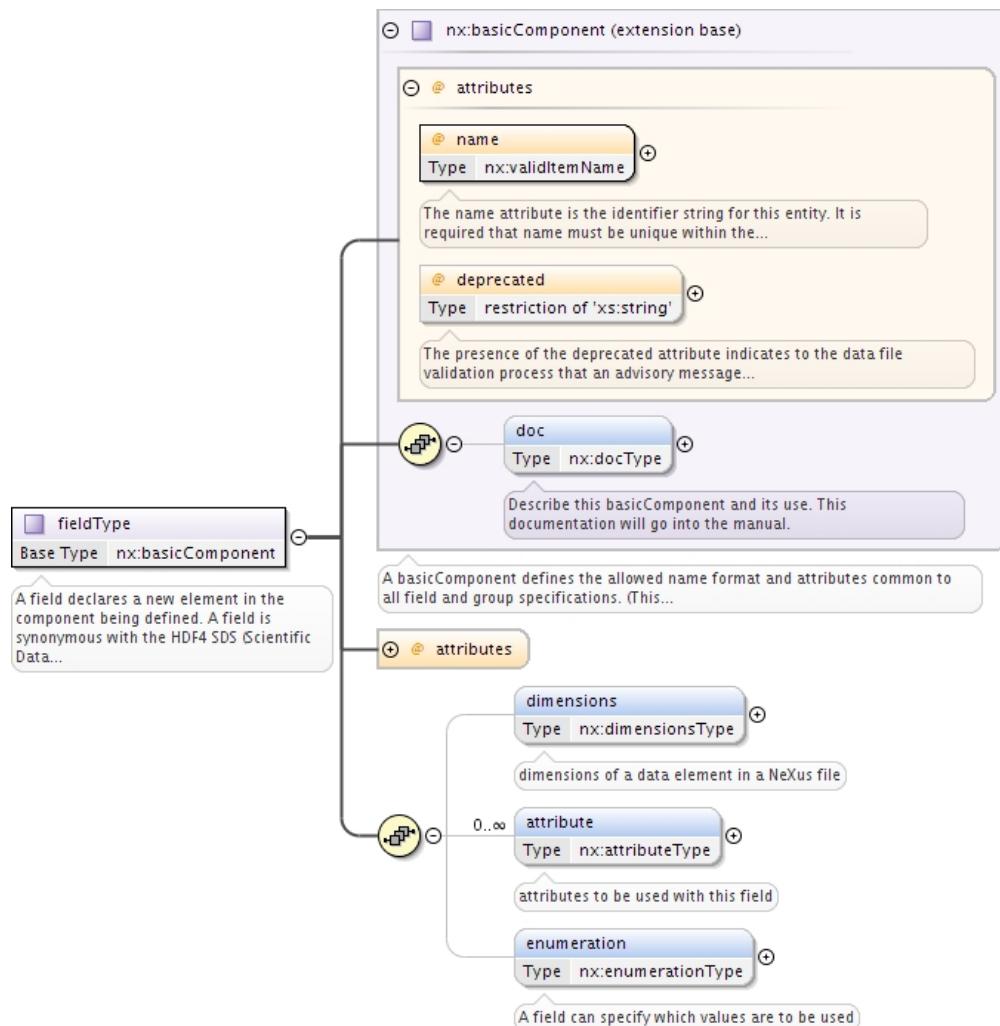
For more details, see: [enumerationType](#)

Fig. 5: Graphical representation of the NXDL `enumeration` element

### field

The `field` element provides the value of a named item. Many different attributes are available to further define the `field`. Some of the attributes are not allowed to be used together (such as `axes` and `axis`); see the documentation of each for details. It is used *only* as a child of a `group` element.

For more details, see: [fieldType](#)

Fig. 6: Graphical representation of the NXDL `field` element

## group

A group element can *only* be a child of a definition or group element. It describes a common level of organization in a NeXus data file, similar to a subdirectory in a file directory tree.

For more details, see: [groupType](#)

## link

A link element can *only* be a child of a definition, field, or group element. It describes the path to the original source of the parent definition, field, or group.

For more details, see: [linkType](#)

## symbols

A symbols element can *only* be a child of a definition element. It defines the array index symbols to be used when defining arrays as field elements with common dimensions and lengths.

For more details, see: [symbolsType](#)

## NXDL Field Types (internal)

Field types that define the NXDL language are described here. These data types are defined in the XSD Schema (nxdl.xsd) and are used in various parts of the Schema to define common structures or to simplify a complicated entry. While the data types are not intended for use in NXDL specifications, they define structures that may be used in NXDL specifications.

## attributeType

Any new group or field may expect or require some common attributes.

(This data type is used internally in the NXDL schema to define elements and attributes to be used by users in NXDL specifications.)

### Attributes of attributeType

#### @name

Name of the attribute (unique within the enclosing group).

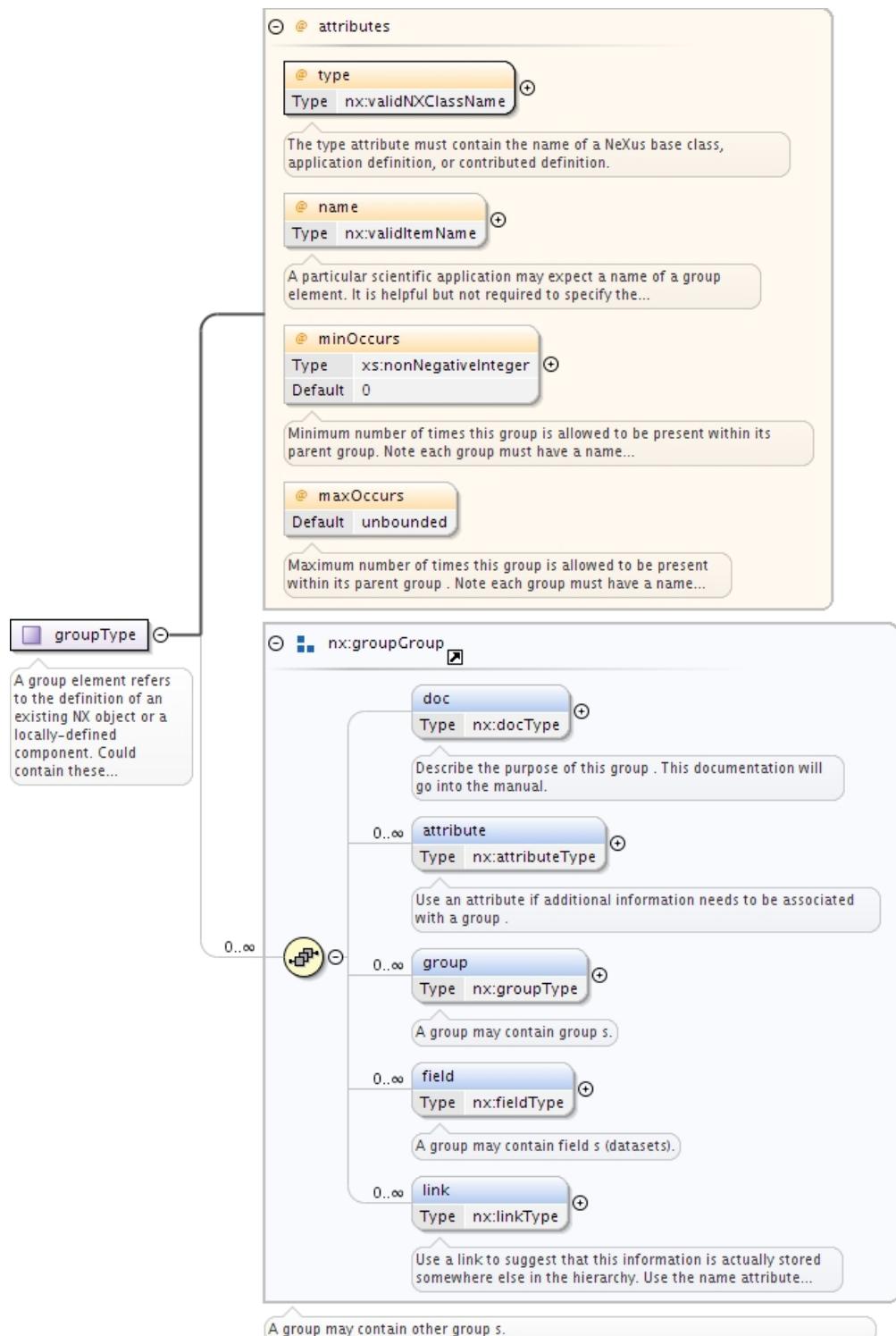
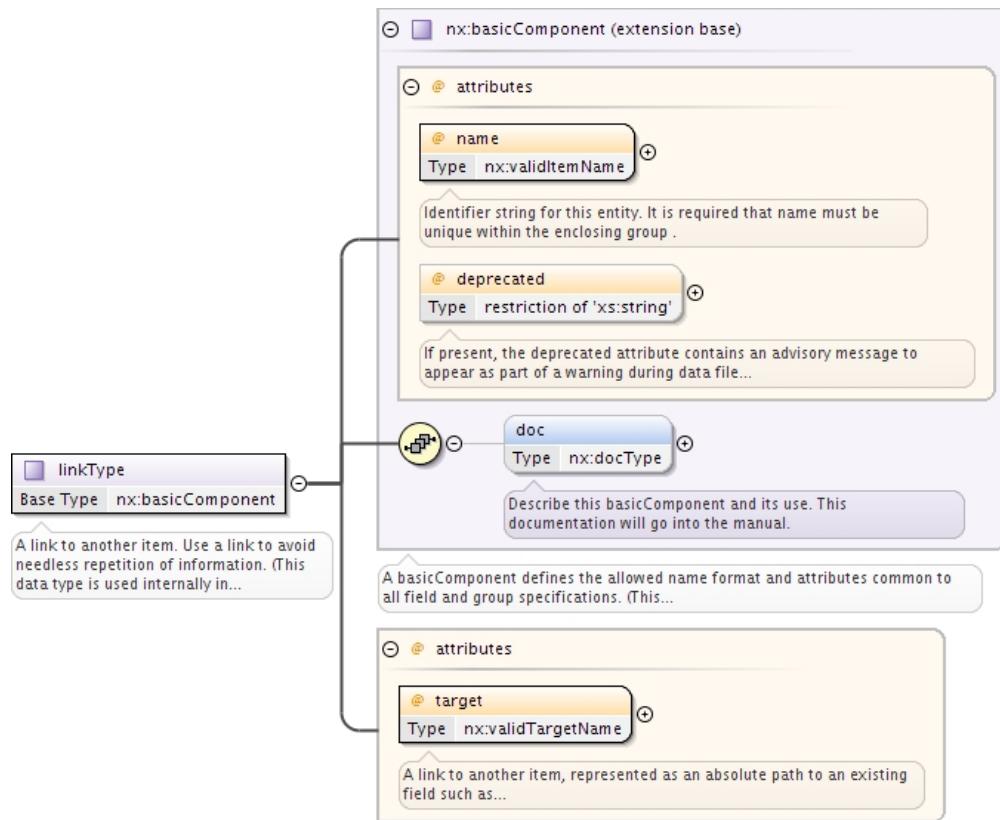
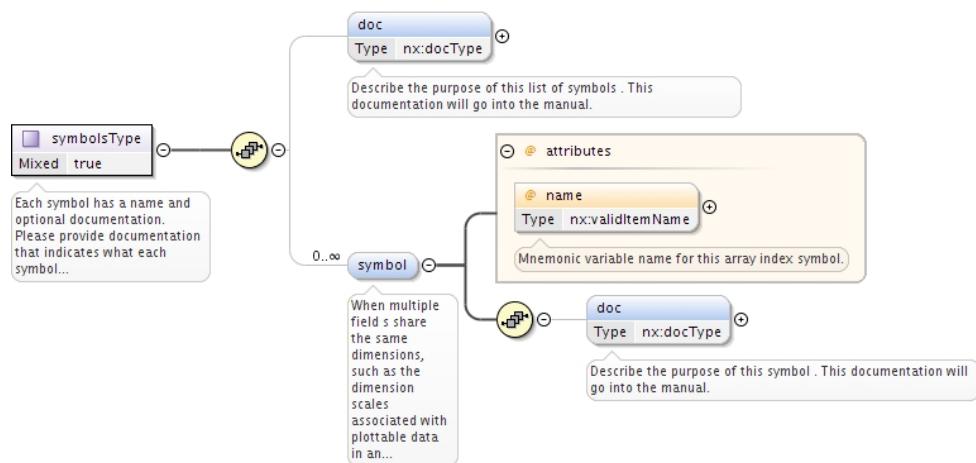


Fig. 7: Graphical representation of the NXDL group element

Fig. 8: Graphical representation of the NXDL `link` elementFig. 9: Graphical representation of the NXDL `symbols` element

## @optional

Is this attribute *optional* (if **true**) or *required* (if **false**)?

## @type

Type of the attribute. For group specifications, the class name. For field or attribute specifications, the NXDL field type.

## Elements of attributeType

### dimensions

dimensions of an attribute with data value(s) in a NeXus file

### doc

Description of this attribute. This documentation will go into the manual.

### enumeration

An enumeration specifies the values to be used.

### definition

A **definition** element is the `group` at the root of every NXDL specification. It may *only* appear at the root of an NXDL file and must only appear **once** for the NXDL to be *well-formed*.

### definitionType

A **definition** is the root element of every NXDL definition. It may *only* appear at the root of an NXDL file and must only appear **once** for the NXDL to be *well-formed*.

The `definitionType` defines the documentation, attributes, fields, and groups that will be used as children of the `definition` element. Could contain these elements:

- `attribute`
- `doc`
- `field`
- `group`
- `link`

Note that a `definition` element also includes the definitions of the `basicComponent` data type. (The `definitionType` data type is used internally in the NXDL schema to define elements and attributes to be used by users in NXDL specifications.)

Note that the first line of text in a `doc` element in a `definition` is used as a summary in the manual. Follow the pattern as shown in the base class NXDL files.

## Attributes of definitionType

### @category

NXDL base definitions define the dictionary of terms to use for these components. All terms in a base definition are optional. NXDL application definitions define what is required for a scientific interest. All terms in an application definition are required. NXDL contributed definitions may be considered either base or applications. Contributed definitions <emphasis>must</emphasis> indicate their intended use, either as a base class or as an application definition.

### @extends

The `extends` attribute allows this definition to *subclass* from another NXDL, otherwise `extends="NXobject"` should be used.

### @ignoreExtraAttributes

Only validate known attributes; do not warn about unknowns. The `ignoreExtraAttributes` attribute is a flag to the process of validating NeXus data files. By setting `ignoreExtraAttributes="true"`, presence of any undefined attributes in this class will not generate warnings during validation. Normally, validation will check all the attributes against their definition in the NeXus base classes and application definitions. Any items found that do not match the definition in the NXDL will generate a warning message.

The `ignoreExtraAttributes` attribute should be used sparingly!

### @ignoreExtraFields

Only validate known fields; do not warn about unknowns. The `ignoreExtraFields` attribute is a flag to the process of validating NeXus data files. By setting `ignoreExtraFields="true"`, presence of any undefined fields in this class will not generate warnings during validation. Normally, validation will check all the fields against their definition in the NeXus base classes and application definitions. Any items found that do not match the definition in the NXDL will generate a warning message.

The `ignoreExtraFields` attribute should be used sparingly!

### @ignoreExtraGroups

Only validate known groups; do not warn about unknowns. The `ignoreExtraGroups` attribute is a flag to the process of validating NeXus data files. By setting `ignoreExtraGroups="true"`, presence of any undefined groups in this class will not generate warnings during validation. Normally, validation will check all the groups against their definition in the NeXus base classes and application definitions. Any items found that do not match the definition in the NXDL will generate a warning message.

The `ignoreExtraGroups` attribute should be used sparingly!

## @name

The name of this NXDL file (without the file extensions). The name must be unique amongst all the NeXus base class, application, and contributed definitions. For the class to be adopted by the NIAC, the first two letters must be “NX” (in uppercase). Any other use must *not* begin with “NX” in any combination of upper or lower case.

## @restricts

The `restricts` attribute is a flag to the data validation. When `restricts="1"`, any non-standard component found (and checked for validity against this NXDL specification) in a NeXus data file will be flagged as an error. If the `restricts` attribute is not present, any such situations will produce a warning.

## @svnid

(2014-08-19: deprecated since switch to GitHub version control) The identifier string from the subversion revision control system. This reports the time stamp and the revision number of this file.

## @type

Must be `type="group"`

## Elements of definitionType

### symbols

Use a `symbols` list to define each of the mnemonics that represent the length of each dimension in a vector or array.

### Groups under definitionType

In addition to an optional `symbols` list, a `definition` may contain any of the items allowed in a `group`.

### definitionTypeAttr

Prescribes the allowed values for `definition type` attribute. (This data type is used internally in the NXDL schema to define a data type.)

The value may be any one from this list only:

- `group`
- `definition`

## dimensionsType

dimensions of a data element in a NeXus file (This data type is used internally in the NXDL schema to define elements and attributes to be used by users in NXDL specifications.)

### Attributes of dimensionsType

#### @rank

Rank (number of dimensions) of the data structure.

Value could be either an unsigned integer or a symbol as defined in the *symbol* table of the NXDL file.

For example: `a[5]` has `rank="1"` while `b[8, 5, 6, 4]` has `rank="4"`. See [https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Rank\\_%28computer\\_programming%29](https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Rank_%28computer_programming%29) for more details.

### Elements of dimensionsType

#### dim

Specify the parameters for each index of the `dimensions` element with a `dim` element. The number of `dim` entries should be equal to the `rank` of the array. For example, these terms describe a 2-D array with lengths (`nsurf`, `nwl`):

```
1 <dimensions rank="2">
2   <dim index="1" value="nsurf"/>
3   <dim index="2" value="nwl"/>
4 </dimensions>
```

The `value` attribute is used by NXDL and also by the NeXus data file validation tools to associate and coordinate the same array length across multiple fields in a group.

#### @incr

The dimension specification is related to the `refindex` axis within the `ref` field by an offset of `incr`. Requires `ref` and `refindex` attributes to be present.

#### @index

Number or symbol indicating which axis (subscript) is being described, ranging from 1 up to `rank` (rank of the data structure). For example, given an array `A[i, j, k]`, `index="1"` would refer to the `i` axis (subscript). (NXdata uses `index="0"` to indicate a situation when the specific index is not known *a priori*.)

## @ref

Deprecated: 2016-11-23 telco (<https://github.com/nexusformat/definitions/issues/330>)

The dimension specification is the same as that in the `ref` field, specified either by a relative path, such as `polar_angle` or `../Qvec` or absolute path, such as `/entry/path/to/follow/to/ref/field`.

## @refindex

Deprecated: 2016-11-23 telco (<https://github.com/nexusformat/definitions/issues/330>)

The dimension specification is the same as the `refindex` axis within the `ref` field. Requires `ref` attribute to be present.

## @required

This dimension is required (true: default) or not required (false).

The default value is `true`.

When `required="false"` is specified, all subsequent `<dim` nodes (with higher `index` value) **must** also have `required="false"`.

## @value

Integer length (number of values), or mnemonic symbol representing the length of this axis.

## doc

Documentation might be necessary to describe how the parts of the `dimensions` element are to be used.

## docType

NXDL allows for documentation on most elements using the `doc` element. The documentation is useful in several contexts. The documentation will be rendered in the manual. Documentation, is provided as tooltips by some XML editors when editing NXDL files. Simple documentation can be typed directly in the NXDL:

```
<field name="name">
    <doc>Descriptive name of sample</doc>
</field>
```

This is suitable for basic descriptions that do not need extra formatting such as a bullet-list or a table. For more advanced control, use the rules of restructured text, such as in the `NXdetector` specification. Refer to examples in the NeXus base class NXDL files such as `NXdata`.

Could contain these elements:

- `any`

(This data type is used internally in the NXDL schema to define elements and attributes to be used by users in NXDL specifications.)

Note: For documentation of definition elements, the first line of text in a doc is used as a summary in the manual. Follow the pattern as shown in the base class NXDL files.

## **enumerationType**

An enumeration restricts the values allowed for a specification. Each value is specified using an item element, such as: <item value="Synchrotron X-ray Source"/>. Could contain these elements:

- doc
- item

(This data type is used internally in the NXDL schema to define elements and attributes to be used by users in NXDL specifications.)

```
<field name="mode">
    <doc>source operating mode</doc>
    <enumeration>
        <item value="Single Bunch"><doc>for storage rings</doc></item>
        <item value="Multi Bunch"><doc>for storage rings</doc></item>
        <!-- other sources could add to this -->
    </enumeration>
</field>
```

## **Elements of enumerationType**

### **item**

One of the prescribed values. Use the value attribute.

Defines the value of one selection for an enumeration list. Each enumerated item must have a value (it cannot have an empty text node).

### **@value**

The value of value of an enumItem is defined as an attribute rather than a name.

### **doc**

Individual items can be documented but this documentation might not be printed in the *NeXus Reference Guide*.

## fieldType

A `field` declares a new element in the component being defined. A `field` is synonymous with the HDF4 SDS (Scientific Data Set) and the HDF5 *dataset* terms. Could contain these elements:

- attribute
- dimensions
- doc
- enumeration

Note that a `field` element also includes the definitions of the `basicComponent` data type. (The `fieldType` data type is used internally in the NXDL schema to define elements and attributes to be used by users in NXDL specifications.)

## @axes

NOTE: Use of this attribute is discouraged. It is for legacy support. You should use the `axes` attribute on the `NXdata` group instead.

Presence of the `axes` attribute means this field is an ordinate.

This attribute contains a colon (or comma in legacy files) delimited list of the names of independent axes when plotting this field. Each name in this list must exist as a field in the same group. <!-- perhaps even discourage use of square brackets in axes attribute? --> (Optionally, the list can be enclosed by square brackets but this is not common.) The regular expression for this rule is:

```
[A-Za-z_] [\w_]* ([ :] [A-Za-z_] [\w_]* )*
```

## @axis

NOTE: Use of this attribute is discouraged. It is for legacy support. You should use the `axes` attribute on the `NXdata` group instead.

Presence of the `axis` attribute means this field is an abscissa.

The attribute value is an integer indicating this field as an axis that is part of the data set. The data set is a field with the attribute `signal=1` in the same group. The value can range from 1 up to the number of independent axes (abscissae) in the data set.

A value of `axis=1` indicates that this field contains the data for the first independent axis. For example, the X axis in an XY data set.

A value of `axis=2` indicates that this field contains the data for the second independent axis. For example, the Y axis in a 2-D data set.

A value of `axis=3` indicates that this field contains the data for the third independent axis. For example, the Z axis in a 3-D data set.

A field with an `axis` attribute should not have a `signal` attribute.

## **@data\_offset**

The `stride` and `data_offset` attributes are used together to index the array of data items in a multi-dimensional array. They may be used as an alternative method to address a data array that is not stored in the standard NeXus method of “C” order.

The `data_offset` attribute determines the starting coordinates of the data array for each dimension.

See <https://support.hdfgroup.org/HDF5/Tutor/phyperg.html> or 4. *Dataspace Selection Operations* in <https://portal.hdfgroup.org/display/HDF5/Dataspaces>

The `data_offset` attribute contains a comma-separated list of integers. (In addition to the required comma delimiter, whitespace is also allowed to improve readability.) The number of items in the list is equal to the rank of the data being stored. The value of each item is the offset in the array of the first data item of that subscript of the array.

## **@interpretation**

This instructs the consumer of the data what the last dimensions of the data are. It allows plotting software to work out the natural way of displaying the data.

For example a single-element, energy-resolving, fluorescence detector with 512 bins should have `interpretation="spectrum"`. If the detector is scanned over a 512 x 512 spatial grid, the data reported will be of dimensions: 512 x 512 x 512. In this example, the initial plotting representation should default to data of the same dimensions of a 512 x 512 pixel `image` detector where the images were taken at 512 different pressure values.

In simple terms, the allowed values mean:

- `scaler` = 0-D data to be plotted
- `spectrum` = 1-D data to be plotted
- `image` = 2-D data to be plotted
- `vertex` = 3-D data to be plotted

## **@long\_name**

Descriptive name for this field (may include whitespace and engineering units). Often, the `long_name` (when defined) will be used as the axis label on a plot.

## **@maxOccurs**

Defines the maximum number of times this element may be used. Its value is confined to zero or greater. Must be greater than or equal to the value for the “`minOccurs`” attribute. A value of “`unbounded`” is allowed.

## @minOccurs

Defines the minimum number of times this `field` may be used. Its value is confined to zero or greater. Must be less than or equal to the value for the “`maxOccurs`” attribute.

## @nameType

This interprets the `name` attribute as: \* `specified` = use as specified \* `any` = can be any name not already used in group

## @primary

Integer indicating the priority of selection of this field for plotting (or visualization) as an axis.

Presence of the `primary` attribute means this field is an abscissa.

## @signal

Presence of the `signal` attribute means this field is an ordinate.

Integer marking this field as plottable data (ordinates). The value indicates the priority of selection or interest. Some facilities only use `signal=1` while others use `signal=2` to indicate plottable data of secondary interest. Higher numbers are possible but not common and interpretation is not standard.

A field with a `signal` attribute should not have an `axis` attribute.

## @stride

The `stride` and `data_offset` attributes are used together to index the array of data items in a multi-dimensional array. They may be used as an alternative method to address a data array that is not stored in the standard NeXus method of “C” order.

The `stride` list chooses array locations from the data array with each value in the `stride` list determining how many elements to move in each dimension. Setting a value in the `stride` array to 1 moves to each element in that dimension of the data array, while setting a value of 2 in a location in the `stride` array moves to every other element in that dimension of the data array. A value in the `stride` list may be positive to move forward or negative to step backward. A value of zero will not step (and is of no particular use).

See <https://support.hdfgroup.org/HDF5/Tutor/phypereg.html> or 4. *Dataspace Selection Operations* in <https://portal.hdfgroup.org/display/HDF5/Dataspaces>

The `stride` attribute contains a comma-separated list of integers. (In addition to the required comma delimiter, whitespace is also allowed to improve readability.) The number of items in the list is equal to the rank of the data being stored. The value of each item is the spacing of the data items in that subscript of the array.

## **@type**

Defines the type of the element as allowed by NeXus.

See [here](#) and [elsewhere](#) for the complete list of allowed types.

## **@units**

String describing the engineering units. The string should be appropriate for the value and should conform to the NeXus rules for units. Conformance is not validated at this time.

## **attribute**

attributes to be used with this field

## **dimensions**

dimensions of a data element in a NeXus file

## **enumeration**

A field can specify which values are to be used

## **choiceType**

A `choice` element is used when a named group might take one of several possible NeXus base classes. Logically, it must have at least two group children.

### **Attributes of choiceType**

#### **@name**

The name to be applied to the selected child group. None of the child groups should define a `@name` attribute.

### **Elements of choiceType**

#### **group**

NeXus base class that could be used here. The group will take the `@name` attribute defined by the parent `choice` element so do not specify the `@name` attribute of the group here.

## groupType

A group element refers to the definition of an existing NX object or a locally-defined component. Could contain these elements:

- attribute
- doc
- field
- group
- link

Note that a `group` element also includes the definitions of the `basicComponent` data type. (The `groupType` data type is used internally in the NXDL schema to define elements and attributes to be used by users in NXDL specifications.)

### Attributes of groupType

#### @maxOccurs

Maximum number of times this `group` is allowed to be present within its parent `group`. Note each `group` must have a `name` attribute that is unique among all `group` and `field` declarations within a common parent `group`.

#### @minOccurs

Minimum number of times this `group` is allowed to be present within its parent `group`. Note each `group` must have a `name` attribute that is unique among all `group` and `field` declarations within a common parent `group`.

#### @name

A particular scientific application may expect a name of a `group` element. It is helpful but not required to specify the `name` attribute in the NXDL file. It is suggested to always specify a `name` to avoid ambiguity. It is also suggested to derive the `name` from the type, using an additional number suffix as necessary. For example, consider a data file with only one `NXentry`. The suggested default `name` would be `entry`. For a data file with two or more `NXentry` groups, the suggested names would be `entry1`, `entry2`, ... Alternatively, a scientific application such as small-angle scattering might require a different naming procedure; two different `NXaperture` groups might be given the names `beam-defining slit` and `scatter slit`.

## @type

The `type` attribute *must* contain the name of a NeXus base class, application definition, or contributed definition.

## linkType

A link to another item. Use a link to avoid needless repetition of information. (This data type is used internally in the NXDL schema to define elements and attributes to be used by users in NXDL specifications.)

## @napimount

Group attribute that provides a URL to a group in another file. More information is described in the *NeXus Programmers Reference*.

<http://manual.nexusformat.org/pdf/NeXusIntern.pdf>

## @target

Declares the absolute HDF5 address of an existing field or group.

The target attribute is added for NeXus to distinguish the HDF5 path to the original dataset.

Could contain these elements:

- doc

Matching regular expression:

```
(/[a-zA-Z_][\w_]*(:[a-zA-Z_][\w_]*?)?)+
```

For example, given a `/entry/instrument/detector/polar_angle` field, link it into the `NXdata` group (at `/entry/data/polar_angle`). This would be the NeXus data file structure:

```
/: NeXus/HDF5 data file
  /entry:NXentry
    /data:NXdata
      /polar_angle:NX_NUMBER
        @target="/entry/instrument/detector/polar_
        ↵angle"
      /instrument:NXinstrument
        /detector:NXdetector
          /polar_angle:NX_NUMBER
            @target="/entry/instrument/detector/
            ↵polar_angle"
```

## symbolsType

Each symbol has a name and optional documentation. Please provide documentation that indicates what each symbol represents. For example:

```
<symbols>
  <symbol name="nsurf"><doc>number of reflecting surfaces</doc></symbol>
  <symbol name="nwl"><doc>number of wavelengths</doc></symbol>
</symbols>
```

### Elements of symbolsType

#### doc

Describe the purpose of this list of symbols. This documentation will go into the manual.

#### symbol

When multiple field elements share the same dimensions, such as the dimension scales associated with plottable data in an NXdata group, the length of each dimension written in a NeXus data file should be something that can be tested by the data file validation process.

#### @name

Mnemonic variable name for this array index symbol.

#### doc

Describe the purpose of the parent symbol. This documentation will go into the manual.

## basicComponent

A basicComponent defines the allowed name format and attributes common to all field and group specifications. (This data type is used internally in the NXDL schema to define elements and attributes to be used by users in NXDL specifications.)

### Attributes of basicComponent

#### @name

The name attribute is the identifier string for this entity. It is required that name must be unique within the enclosing group. The rule (validItemName) is defined to only allow names that can be represented as valid variable names in most computer languages.

## Elements of basicComponent

### doc

Describe this basicComponent and its use. This documentation will go into the manual.

### validItemName

Used for allowed names of elements and attributes. Need to be restricted to valid program variable names. Note: This means no “-” or “.” characters can be allowed and you cannot start with a number. HDF4 had a 64 character limit on names (possibly including NULL) and NeXus enforces this via the NX\_MAXNAMELEN variable with a **64** character limit (which may be 63 on a practical basis if one considers a NULL terminating byte). (This data type is used internally in the NXDL schema to define a data type.)

The value may be any xs:token that *also* matches the regular expression:

```
[A-Za-z_] [\w_]*
```

### validNXClassName

Used for allowed names of NX class types (e.g. NXdetector) not the instance (e.g. bank1) which is covered by validItemName. (This data type is used internally in the NXDL schema to define a data type.)

The value may be any nx:validItemName that *also* matches the regular expression:

```
NX.+
```

### validTargetName

This is a valid link target - currently it must be an absolute path made up of valid names with the / character delimiter. But we may want to consider allowing “..” (parent of directory) at some point. If the name attribute is helpful, then use it in the path with the syntax of *name:type* as in these examples:

```
/NXentry/NXinstrument/analyzer:NXcrystal/ef  
/NXentry/NXinstrument/monochromator:NXcrystal/ei  
/NX_other
```

Must also consider use of name attribute in resolving link targets. (This data type is used internally in the NXDL schema to define a data type.)

From the HDF5 documentation:

*Note that relative path names in HDF5 do not employ the `..` notation, the UNIX notation indicating a parent directory, to indicate a parent group.*

Thus, if we only consider the case of [name:]type, the matching regular expression syntax is written: / [a-zA-Z\_] [\w\_]\* (: [a-zA-Z\_] [\w\_]\* ) ? ) + . Note that HDF5 also permits relative path names, such as: GroupA/GroupB/DataSet1 but this is not permitted in the matching regular expression and not supported in NAPI.

The value may be any xs:token that *also* matches the regular expression:

```
( / [a-zA-Z_] [\w_]* ( : [a-zA-Z_] [\w_]* ) ? ) +
```

### **nonNegativeUnbounded**

A nonNegativeUnbounded allows values including all positive integers, zero, and the string unbounded. (This data type is used internally in the NXDL schema to define a data type.)

**The `xs:string` data type** The `xs:string` data type can contain characters, line feeds, carriage returns, and tab characters. See [https://www.w3schools.com/xml/schema\\_dtypes\\_string.asp](https://www.w3schools.com/xml/schema_dtypes_string.asp) for more details.

**The `xs:token` data type** The `xs:string` data type is derived from the `xs:string` data type.

The `xs:token` data type also contains characters, but the XML processor will remove line feeds, carriage returns, tabs, leading and trailing spaces, and multiple spaces. See [https://www.w3schools.com/xml/schema\\_dtypes\\_string.asp](https://www.w3schools.com/xml/schema_dtypes_string.asp) for more details.

## **NXDL Field Types and Units**

### **Field Types allowed in NXDL specifications**

Field types for use in NXDL describe the expected type of data for a NeXus field. These terms are very broad. More specific terms are used in actual NeXus data files that describe size and array dimensions. In addition to the types in the following table, the `NAP1` type is defined when one wishes to permit a field with any of these data types.

**ISO8601** ISO8601 date/time stamp

**NX\_BINARY** any representation of binary data - if text, line terminator is [CR][LF]

**NX\_BOOLEAN** true/false value ( true | 1 | false | 0 )

**NX\_CHAR** The preferred string representation is UTF-8. Both fixed-length strings and variable-length strings are valid. String arrays cannot be used where only a string is expected (title, start\_time, end\_time, NX\_class attribute,...). Fields or attributes requiring the use of string arrays will be clearly marked as such (like the NXdata attribute auxiliary\_signals).

**NX\_DATE\_TIME** alias for the ISO8601 date/time stamp

**NX\_FLOAT** any representation of a floating point number

**NX\_INT** any representation of an integer number

**NX\_NUMBER** any valid NeXus number representation

**NX\_POSINT** any representation of a positive integer number (greater than zero)

**NX\_UINT** any representation of an unsigned integer number (includes zero)

## Unit Categories allowed in NXDL specifications

Unit categories in NXDL specifications describe the expected type of units for a NeXus field. They should describe valid units consistent with the [NeXus units](#) section. The values for unit categories are restricted (by an enumeration) to the following table.

**NX\_ANGLE** units of angle, example(s): m

**NX\_ANY** units for things like logs that aren't picky on units

**NX\_AREA** units of area, example(s):  $m^2$  | barns

**NX\_CHARGE** units of electrical charge, example(s): c

**NX\_CROSS\_SECTION** units of area (alias of NX\_AREA), example(s): barn

**NX\_CURRENT** units of electrical current, example(s): A

**NX\_DIMENSIONLESS**

**units for fields where the units cancel out** (NOTE: not the same as NX\_UNITLESS), example(s):

m/m

**NX\_EMITTANCE**

**units of emittance (length \* angle) of a** radiation source, example(s): nm\*rad

**NX\_ENERGY** units of energy, example(s): J | keV

**NX\_FLUX** units of flux, example(s): 1/s/cm<sup>2</sup>

**NX\_FREQUENCY** units of frequency, example(s): Hz

**NX\_LENGTH** units of length, example(s): m

**NX\_MASS** units of mass, example(s): g

**NX\_MASS\_DENSITY** units of mass density, example(s): g/cm<sup>3</sup>

**NX MOLECULAR\_WEIGHT** units of molecular weight, example(s): g/mol

**NX\_PERIOD**

**units of time, period of pulsed source** (alias to NX\_TIME), example(s): us

**NX\_PER\_AREA** units of 1/length<sup>2</sup>, example(s): 1/m<sup>2</sup>

**NX\_PER\_LENGTH** units of 1/length, example(s): 1/m

**NX\_POWER** units of power, example(s): W

**NX\_PRESSURE** units of pressure, example(s): Pa

**NX\_PULSES** units of clock pulses (alias to NX\_NUMBER)

**NX\_SCATTERING\_LENGTH\_DENSITY** units of scattering length density, example(s): m/m<sup>3</sup>

**NX\_SOLID\_ANGLE** units of solid angle, example(s): sr | steradian

**NX\_TEMPERATURE** units of temperature, example(s): K

**NX\_TIME** units of time, example(s): s

**NX\_TIME\_OF\_FLIGHT**

**units of (neutron) time of flight** (alias to NX\_TIME), example(s): s

**NX\_TRANSFORMATION** units of the specified transformation

could be any of these: NX\_LENGTH, NX\_ANGLE, or NX\_UNITLESS

There will be one or more transformations defined by one or more fields for each transformation. The units type NX\_TRANSFORMATION designates the particular axis generating a transformation (e.g. a rotation axis or a translation axis or a general axis). NX\_TRANSFORMATION designates the units will be appropriate to the type of transformation, indicated in the [NXtransformations](#) base class by the `transformation_type` value:

- NX\_LENGTH for translation
- NX\_ANGLE for rotation
- NX\_UNITLESS for axes for which no transformation type is specified.

**NX\_UNITLESS**

for fields that don't have a unit (e.g. `hkl`) so that they don't inherit the wrong units (NOTE: not the same as NX\_DIMENSIONLESS), example(s): ""

**NX\_VOLTAGE** units of voltage, example(s): V

**NX\_VOLUME** units of volume, example(s): m<sup>3</sup>

**NX\_WAVELENGTH** units of wavelength, example(s): angstrom

**NX\_WAVENUMBER** units of wavenumber or Q, example(s): 1/nm | 1/angstrom

### 3.3 NeXus Class Definitions

Definitions of NeXus classes. These are split into `base_classes` (low level objects), application definitions (groupings of objects for a particular technique) and `contributed_definitions` (proposed definitions from the community)

**base classes** NeXus base class definitions define the set of terms that *might* be used in an instance of that class. Consider the base classes as a set of *components* that are used to construct a data file.

Base class definitions are permissive rather than restrictive. While the terms defined aim to cover most possible use cases, and to codify the spelling and meaning of such terms, the class specifications cannot list all acceptable groups and fields. To be able to progress the NeXus standard, additional data (groups, fields, attributes) are acceptable in NeXus HDF5 data files.

Users are encouraged to find the best *defined* location in which to place their information. It is understood there is not a predefined place for all possible data.

Validation procedures should treat such additional items (not covered by a base class specification) as notes or warnings rather than errors.

**application definitions** NeXus application definitions define the *minimum* set of terms that *must* be used in an instance of that class. Application definitions also may define terms that are optional in the NeXus data file.

As in base classes (see above), additional terms that are not described by the application definition may be added to data files that incorporate or adhere to application definitions.

Use NeXus links liberally in data files to reduce duplication of data. In application definitions involving raw data, write the raw data in the [NXinstrument](#) tree and then link to it from the location(s) defined in the relevant application definition. See figure [NeXus Multi Method Hierarchy](#) for an example.

To write a data file with an application definition, start with either a [NXentry](#) (or [NXsubentry](#)) group<sup>1</sup> and write the name of the application definition in the `definition` field. Then write data into this group according to the specifications of the application definition.

<sup>1</sup> For data files involving just an application definition, use the [NXentry](#) group. Such as this structure:

**contributed definitions** NXDL files in the NeXus contributed definitions include propositions from the community for NeXus base classes or application definitions, as well as other NXDL files for long-term archival by NeXus. Consider the contributed definitions as either in *incubation* or a special case not for general use.

### 3.3.1 Base Class Definitions

A description of each NeXus base class definition is given. NeXus base class definitions define the set of terms that *might* be used in an instance of that class. Consider the base classes as a set of *components* that are used to construct a data file.

**NXaperture** A beamline aperture.

**NXattenuator** A device that reduces the intensity of a beam by attenuation.

**NXbeam** Properties of the neutron or X-ray beam at a given location.

**NXbeam\_stop** A device that blocks the beam completely, usually to protect a detector.

**NXbending\_magnet** A bending magnet

**NXcapillary** A capillary lens to focus the X-ray beam.

**NXcite** A literature reference

**NXcollection** An unvalidated set of terms, such as the description of a beam line.

**NXcollimator** A beamline collimator.

**NXcrystal** A crystal monochromator or analyzer.

**NXcylindrical\_geometry** Geometry description for cylindrical shapes.

**NXdata** *NXdata* describes the plottable data and related dimension scales.

**NXdetector** A detector, detector bank, or multidetector.

**NXdetector\_group** Logical grouping of detector elements.

**NXdetector\_module** Geometry and logical description of a detector module.

**NXdisk\_chopper** A device blocking the beam in a temporal periodic pattern.

**NXentry (required)** *NXentry* describes the measurement.

**NXenvironment** Parameters for controlling external conditions

**NXevent\_data** *NXevent\_data* is a special group for storing data from neutron

**NXfermi\_chopper** A Fermi chopper, possibly with curved slits.

**NXfilter** For band pass beam filters.

```
entry:NXentry
  definition="NXsas"
```

For files that describe multi-modal data and require use of two or more application definitions (such as *NXsas* and *NXcanSAS*), you must place each application definition in a *NXsubentry* of the *NXentry* group. Such as this structure:

```
entry:NXentry
  raw:NXsubentry
    definition="NXsas"
  reduced:NXsubentry
    definition="NXcanSAS"
  fluo:NXsubentry
    definition="NXfluo"
```

If you anticipate your data file will eventually require an additional application definition, you should start with each application definition in a *NXsubentry* group.

**NXflipper** A spin flipper.

**NXfresnel\_zone\_plate** A fresnel zone plate

**NXgeometry** legacy class - recommend to use [NXtransformations](#) now

**NXgrating** A diffraction grating, as could be used in a soft X-ray monochromator

**NXguide** A neutron optical element to direct the path of the beam.

**NXinsertion\_device** An insertion device, as used in a synchrotron light source.

**NXinstrument** Collection of the components of the instrument or beamline.

**NXlog** Information recorded as a function of time.

**NXmirror** A beamline mirror or supermirror.

**NXmoderator** A neutron moderator

**NXmonitor** A monitor of incident beam data.

**NXmonochromator** A wavelength defining device.

**NXnote** Any additional freeform information not covered by the other base classes.

**NXObject** This is the base object of NeXus

**NXoff\_geometry** Geometry (shape) description.

**NXorientation** legacy class - recommend to use [NXtransformations](#) now

**NXparameters** Container for parameters, usually used in processing or analysis.

**NXpdb** A NeXus transliteration of a PDB file, to be validated only as a PDB

**NXpinhole** A simple pinhole.

**NXpolarizer** A spin polarizer.

**NXpositioner** A generic positioner such as a motor or piezo-electric transducer.

**NXprocess** Document an event of data processing, reconstruction, or analysis for this data.

**NXreflections** This is a definition for reflection data from diffraction experiments

**NXroot** Definition of the root NeXus group.

**NXsample** Any information on the sample.

**NXsample\_component** One group like this per component can be recorded For a sample consisting of multiple components.

**NXsensor** A sensor used to monitor an external condition

**NXshape** legacy class - (used by [NXgeometry](#)) - the shape and size of a component.

**NXslit** A simple slit.

**NXsource** The neutron or x-ray storage ring/facility.

**NXsubentry** Group of multiple application definitions for “multi-modal” (e.g. SAXS/WAXS) measurements.

**NXtransformations** Collection of axis-based translations and rotations to describe a geometry.

**NXtranslation** legacy class - (used by [NXgeometry](#)) - general spatial location of a component.

**NXuser** Contact information for a user.

**NXvelocity\_selector** A neutron velocity selector

**NXraylens** An X-ray lens, typically at a synchrotron X-ray beam line.

## NXaperture

### Status:

base class, extends *NXObject*

### Description:

A beamline aperture.

### Symbols:

No symbol table

**Groups cited:** *NXgeometry*, *NXnote*

### Structure:

**material:** (optional) *NX\_CHAR*

Absorbing material of the aperture

**description:** (optional) *NX\_CHAR*

Description of aperture

**GEOMETRY:** (optional) *NXgeometry*

location and shape of aperture

**GEOMETRY:** (optional) *NXgeometry*

location and shape of each blade

**NOTE:** (optional) *NXnote*

describe any additional information in a note\*

**NXDL Source:** [https://github.com/nexusformat/definitions/blob/master/base\\_classes/NXaperture.nxdl.xml](https://github.com/nexusformat/definitions/blob/master/base_classes/NXaperture.nxdl.xml)

## NXattenuator

### Status:

base class, extends *NXObject*

### Description:

A device that reduces the intensity of a beam by attenuation.

If uncertain whether to use *NXfilter* (band-pass filter) or *NXattenuator* (reduces beam intensity), then choose *NXattenuator*.

### Symbols:

No symbol table

**Groups cited:** none

### Structure:

**distance:** (optional) *NX\_FLOAT* {units=*NX\_LENGTH*}

Distance from sample

**type:** (optional) *NX\_CHAR*

Type or composition of attenuator, e.g. polythene

**thickness:** (optional) *NX\_FLOAT* {units=*NX\_LENGTH*}

Thickness of attenuator along beam direction

**scattering\_cross\_section:** (optional) *NX\_FLOAT* {units=*NX\_CROSS\_SECTION*}

Scattering cross section (coherent+incoherent)

**absorption\_cross\_section:** (optional) *NX\_FLOAT* {units=*NX\_CROSS\_SECTION*}

Absorption cross section

**attenuator\_transmission:** (optional) *NX\_FLOAT* {units=*NX\_DIMENSIONLESS*}

The nominal amount of the beam that gets through (transmitted intensity)/(incident intensity)

**status:** (optional) *NX\_CHAR*

In or out or moving of the beam

Any of these values: in | out | moving

**@time:** (optional) *NX\_DATE\_TIME*

time stamp for this observation

**NXDL Source:** [https://github.com/nexusformat/definitions/blob/master/base\\_classes/NXattenuator.nxdl.xml](https://github.com/nexusformat/definitions/blob/master/base_classes/NXattenuator.nxdl.xml)

## NXbeam

**Status:**

base class, extends *NXObject*

**Description:**

Properties of the neutron or X-ray beam at a given location.

It will be referenced by beamline component groups within the *NXinstrument* group or by the *NXsample* group. Note that variables such as the incident energy could be scalar values or arrays. This group is especially valuable in storing the results of instrument simulations in which it is useful to specify the beam profile, time distribution etc. at each beamline component. Otherwise, its most likely use is in the *NXsample* group in which it defines the results of the neutron scattering by the sample, e.g., energy transfer, polarizations.

**Symbols:**

No symbol table

**Groups cited:** *NXdata*

**Structure:**

**distance:** (optional) *NX\_FLOAT* {units=*NX\_LENGTH*}

Distance from sample

**incident\_energy[i]:** (optional) *NX\_FLOAT* {units=*NX\_ENERGY*}

Energy on entering beamline component

**final\_energy[i]:** (optional) *NX\_FLOAT* {units=*NX\_ENERGY*}

Energy on leaving beamline component

**energy\_transfer[i]:** (optional) *NX\_FLOAT* {units=*NX\_ENERGY*}

Energy change caused by beamline component

**incident\_wavelength[i]:** (optional) *NX\_FLOAT* {units=*NX\_WAVELENGTH*}

Wavelength on entering beamline component

**incident\_wavelength\_spread[i]:** (optional) *NX\_FLOAT* {units=*NX\_WAVELENGTH*}

Wavelength spread FWHM on entering component

**incident\_beam\_divergence[2, j]:** (optional) *NX\_FLOAT* {units=*NX\_ANGLE*}

Divergence of beam entering this component

**extent[2, j]:** (optional) *NX\_FLOAT* {units=*NX\_LENGTH*}

Size of the beam entering this component

**final\_wavelength[i]:** (optional) *NX\_FLOAT* {units=*NX\_WAVELENGTH*}

Wavelength on leaving beamline component

**incident\_polarization[2, j]:** (optional) *NX\_FLOAT* {units=*NX\_ANY*}

Polarization vector on entering beamline component

**final\_polarization[2, j]:** (optional) *NX\_FLOAT* {units=*NX\_ANY*}

Polarization vector on leaving beamline component

**final\_wavelength\_spread[i]:** (optional) *NX\_FLOAT* {units=*NX\_WAVELENGTH*}

Wavelength spread FWHM of beam leaving this component

**final\_beam\_divergence[2, j]:** (optional) *NX\_FLOAT* {units=*NX\_ANGLE*}

Divergence FWHM of beam leaving this component

**flux[i]:** (optional) *NX\_FLOAT* {units=*NX\_FLUX*}

flux incident on beam plane area

**DATA:** (optional) *NXdata*

Distribution of beam with respect to relevant variable e.g. wavelength. This is mainly useful for simulations which need to store plottable information at each beamline component.

**NXDL Source:** [https://github.com/nexusformat/definitions/blob/master/base\\_classes/NXbeam.nxdl.xml](https://github.com/nexusformat/definitions/blob/master/base_classes/NXbeam.nxdl.xml)

## **NXbeam\_stop**

### **Status:**

base class, extends *NXObject*

### **Description:**

A device that blocks the beam completely, usually to protect a detector.

Beamstops and their positions are important for SANS and SAXS experiments.

### **Symbols:**

No symbol table

### **Groups cited:** *NXgeometry*

**Structure:****description:** (optional) *NX\_CHAR*

description of beamstop

Any of these values: circular | rectangular

**size:** (optional) *NX\_FLOAT* {units=*NX\_LENGTH*}

size of beamstop

**x:** (optional) *NX\_FLOAT* {units=*NX\_LENGTH*}

x position of the beamstop in relation to the detector

**y:** (optional) *NX\_FLOAT* {units=*NX\_LENGTH*}

y position of the beamstop in relation to the detector

**distance\_to\_detector:** (optional) *NX\_FLOAT* {units=*NX\_LENGTH*}

distance of the beamstop to the detector

**status:** (optional) *NX\_CHAR*

Any of these values: in | out

**GEOMETRY:** (optional) *NXgeometry*

engineering shape, orientation and position of the beam stop.

**NXDL Source:** [https://github.com/nexusformat/definitions/blob/master/base\\_classes/NXbeam\\_stop.nxdl.xml](https://github.com/nexusformat/definitions/blob/master/base_classes/NXbeam_stop.nxdl.xml)**NXbending\_magnet****Status:**base class, extends *NXObject***Description:**

A bending magnet

**Symbols:**

No symbol table

**Groups cited:** *NXdata*, *NXgeometry***Structure:****critical\_energy:** (optional) *NX\_FLOAT* {units=*NX\_ENERGY*}**bending\_radius:** (optional) *NX\_FLOAT* {units=*NX\_LENGTH*}**magnetic\_field:** (optional) *NX\_FLOAT* {units=*NX\_CURRENT*}

strength of magnetic field of dipole magnets

**accepted\_photon\_beam\_divergence:** (optional) *NX\_FLOAT* {units=*NX\_LENGTH*}

An array of four numbers giving X+, X-, Y+ and Y- half divergence

**source\_distance\_x:** (optional) *NX\_FLOAT* {units=*NX\_LENGTH*}

Distance of source point from particle beam waist in X (horizontal) direction.

**source\_distance\_y:** (optional) *NX\_FLOAT* {units=*NX\_LENGTH*}

Distance of source point from particle beam waist in Y (vertical) direction.

**divergence\_x\_plus:** (optional) *NX\_FLOAT* {units=*NX\_ANGLE*}

Accepted photon beam divergence in X+ (horizontal outboard) direction. Note that divergence\_x\_plus+divergence\_x\_minus is the total horizontal beam divergence.

**divergence\_x\_minus:** (optional) *NX\_FLOAT* {units=*NX\_ANGLE*}

Accepted photon beam divergence in X- (horizontal inboard) direction. Note that divergence\_x\_plus+divergence\_x\_minus is the total horizontal beam divergence.

**divergence\_y\_plus:** (optional) *NX\_FLOAT* {units=*NX\_ANGLE*}

Accepted photon beam divergence in Y+ (vertical upward) direction. Note that divergence\_y\_plus+divergence\_y\_minus is the total vertical beam divergence.

**divergence\_y\_minus:** (optional) *NX\_FLOAT* {units=*NX\_ANGLE*}

Accepted photon beam divergence in Y- (vertical downward) direction. Note that divergence\_y\_plus+divergence\_y\_minus is the total vertical beam divergence.

**spectrum:** (optional) *NXdata*

bending magnet spectrum

**GEOMETRY:** (optional) *NXgeometry*

“Engineering” position of bending magnet

**NXDL Source:** [https://github.com/nexusformat/definitions/blob/master/base\\_classes/NXbending\\_magnet.nxdl.xml](https://github.com/nexusformat/definitions/blob/master/base_classes/NXbending_magnet.nxdl.xml)

## NXcapillary

**Status:**

base class, extends *NXObject*

**Description:**

A capillary lens to focus the X-ray beam.

Based on information provided by Gerd Wellenreuther (DESY).

**Symbols:**

No symbol table

**Groups cited:** *NXdata*

**Structure:**

**type:** (optional) *NX\_CHAR*

Type of the capillary

Any of these values:

- single\_bounce
- polycapillary
- conical\_capillary

**manufacturer:** (optional) *NX\_CHAR*

The manufacturer of the capillary. This is actually important as it may have an impact on performance.

**maximum\_incident\_angle:** (optional) *NX\_FLOAT* {units=*NX\_ANGLE*}  
**accepting\_aperture:** (optional) *NX\_FLOAT* {units=*NX\_ANGLE*}  
**working\_distance:** (optional) *NX\_FLOAT* {units=*NX\_LENGTH*}  
**focal\_size:** (optional) *NX\_FLOAT*

The focal size in FWHM

**gain:** (optional) *NXdata*

The gain of the capillary as a function of energy

**transmission:** (optional) *NXdata*

The transmission of the capillary as a function of energy

**NXDL Source:** [https://github.com/nexusformat/definitions/blob/master/base\\_classes/NXcapillary.nxdl.xml](https://github.com/nexusformat/definitions/blob/master/base_classes/NXcapillary.nxdl.xml)

## NXcite

### Status:

base class, extends *NXObject*

### Description:

A literature reference

Definition to include references for example for detectors, manuals, instruments, acquisition or analysis software used.

The idea would be to include this in the relevant NeXus object: *NXdetector* for detectors, *NXinstrument* for instruments, etc.

### Symbols:

No symbol table

### Groups cited:

### Structure:

**description:** (optional) *NX\_CHAR*

This should describe the reason for including this reference. For example: The dataset in this group was normalised using the method which is described in detail in this reference.

**url:** (optional) *NX\_CHAR*

URL referencing the document or data.

**doi:** (optional) *NX\_CHAR*

DOI referencing the document or data.

**endnote:** (optional) *NX\_CHAR*

Bibliographic reference data in EndNote format.

**bibtex:** (optional) *NX\_CHAR*

Bibliographic reference data in BibTeX format.

**NXDL Source:** [https://github.com/nexusformat/definitions/blob/master/base\\_classes/NXcite.nxdl.xml](https://github.com/nexusformat/definitions/blob/master/base_classes/NXcite.nxdl.xml)

## NXcollection

### Status:

base class, extends *NXObject*

### Description:

An unvalidated set of terms, such as the description of a beam line.

Use *NXcollection* to gather together any set of terms. The original suggestion is to use this as a container class for the description of a beamline.

For NeXus validation, *NXcollection* will always generate a warning since it is always an optional group. Anything (groups, fields, or attributes) placed in an *NXcollection* group will not be validated.

### Symbols:

No symbol table

### Groups cited:

### Structure:

**NXDL Source:** [https://github.com/nexusformat/definitions/blob/master/base\\_classes/NXcollection.nxdl.xml](https://github.com/nexusformat/definitions/blob/master/base_classes/NXcollection.nxdl.xml)

## NXcollimator

### Status:

base class, extends *NXObject*

### Description:

A beamline collimator.

### Symbols:

No symbol table

### Groups cited:

### Structure:

**type:** (optional) *NX\_CHAR*

Any of these values: Soller|radial|oscillating|honeycomb

**soller\_angle:** (optional) *NX\_FLOAT* {units=*NX\_ANGLE*}

Angular divergence of Soller collimator

**divergence\_x:** (optional) *NX\_FLOAT* {units=*NX\_ANGLE*}

divergence of collimator in local x direction

**divergence\_y:** (optional) *NX\_FLOAT* {units=*NX\_ANGLE*}

divergence of collimator in local y direction

**frequency:** (optional) *NX\_FLOAT* {units=*NX\_FREQUENCY*}

Frequency of oscillating collimator

**blade\_thickness:** (optional) *NX\_FLOAT* {units=*NX\_LENGTH*}

blade thickness

**blade\_spacing:** (optional) *NX\_FLOAT* {units=*NX\_LENGTH*}

blade spacing

**absorbing\_material:** (optional) *NX\_CHAR*

name of absorbing material

**transmitting\_material:** (optional) *NX\_CHAR*

name of transmitting material

**GEOMETRY:** (optional) *NXgeometry*

position, shape and size

**frequency\_log:** (optional) *NXlog*

Log of frequency

**NXDL Source:** [https://github.com/nexusformat/definitions/blob/master/base\\_classes/NXcollimator.nxdl.xml](https://github.com/nexusformat/definitions/blob/master/base_classes/NXcollimator.nxdl.xml)

## NXcrystal

### Status:

base class, extends *NXObject*

### Description:

A crystal monochromator or analyzer.

Permits double bent monochromator comprised of multiple segments with anisotropic Gaussian mosaic.

If curvatures are set to zero or are absent, array is considered to be flat.

Scattering vector is perpendicular to surface. Crystal is oriented parallel to beam incident on crystal before rotation, and lies in vertical plane.

### Symbols:

These symbols will be used below to coordinate dimensions with the same lengths.

**n\_comp:** number of different unit cells to be described

**i:** number of wavelengths

**Groups cited:** *NXdata*, *NXgeometry*, *NXlog*, *NXshape*

### Structure:

**usage:** (optional) *NX\_CHAR*

How this crystal is used. Choices are in the list.

Any of these values:

- Bragg: reflection geometry
- Laue: The chemical formula specified using CIF conventions. Abbreviated version of CIF standard: \* Only recognized element symbols may be used. \* Each element symbol is followed by a ‘count’ number. A count of ‘1’ may be omitted. \* A space or parenthesis must separate each cluster of (element symbol + count). \* Where a group of elements is enclosed in parentheses, the multiplier for the group must follow the closing parentheses. That is, all element and group multipliers are assumed to be printed as subscripted numbers. \* Unless the elements are ordered in a manner that corresponds to their chemical structure, the order of the elements within any group or moiety depends on whether or not

carbon is present. \* If carbon is present, the order should be: C, then H, then the other elements in alphabetical order of their symbol. If carbon is not present, the elements are listed purely in alphabetic order of their symbol. This is the *Hill* system used by Chemical Abstracts. See, for example: [http://www.iucr.org/\\_\\_data/iucr/cif/standard/cifstd15.html](http://www.iucr.org/__data/iucr/cif/standard/cifstd15.html) or <http://www.cas.org/training/stneasytips/subinforformula1.html>.

**type:** (optional) *NX\_CHAR*

Type or material of monochromating substance. Chemical formula can be specified separately. Use the “reflection” field to indicate the (hkl) orientation. Use the “d\_spacing” field to record the lattice plane spacing.

This field was changed (2010-11-17) from an enumeration to a string since common usage showed a wider variety of use than a simple list. These are the items in the list at the time of the change: PG (Highly Oriented Pyrolytic Graphite) | Ge | Si | Cu | Fe3Si | CoFe | Cu2MnAl (Heusler) | Multilayer | Diamond.

**chemical\_formula:** (optional) *NX\_CHAR*

The chemical formula specified using CIF conventions. Abbreviated version of CIF standard:

- Only recognized element symbols may be used.
- Each element symbol is followed by a ‘count’ number. A count of ‘1’ may be omitted.
- A space or parenthesis must separate each cluster of (element symbol + count).
- Where a group of elements is enclosed in parentheses, the multiplier for the group must follow the closing parentheses. That is, all element and group multipliers are assumed to be printed as subscripted numbers.
- Unless the elements are ordered in a manner that corresponds to their chemical structure, the order of the elements within any group or moiety depends on whether or not carbon is present.
- If carbon is present, the order should be: C, then H, then the other elements in alphabetical order of their symbol. If carbon is not present, the elements are listed purely in alphabetic order of their symbol.
- This is the *Hill* system used by Chemical Abstracts.

**order\_no:** (optional) *NX\_INT*

A number which describes if this is the first, second,..  $n^{th}$  crystal in a multi crystal monochromator

**cut\_angle:** (optional) *NX\_FLOAT* {units=*NX\_ANGLE*}

Cut angle of reflecting Bragg plane and plane of crystal surface

**space\_group:** (optional) *NX\_CHAR*

Space group of crystal structure

**unit\_cell[n\_comp, 6]:** (optional) *NX\_FLOAT* {units=*NX\_LENGTH*}

Unit cell parameters (lengths and angles)

**unit\_cell\_a:** (optional) *NX\_FLOAT* {units=*NX\_LENGTH*}

Unit cell lattice parameter: length of side a

**unit\_cell\_b:** (optional) *NX\_FLOAT* {units=*NX\_LENGTH*}

Unit cell lattice parameter: length of side b

- unit\_cell\_c:** (optional) *NX\_FLOAT* {units=*NX\_LENGTH*}  
 Unit cell lattice parameter: length of side c
- unit\_cell\_alpha:** (optional) *NX\_FLOAT* {units=*NX\_ANGLE*}  
 Unit cell lattice parameter: angle alpha
- unit\_cell\_beta:** (optional) *NX\_FLOAT* {units=*NX\_ANGLE*}  
 Unit cell lattice parameter: angle beta
- unit\_cell\_gamma:** (optional) *NX\_FLOAT* {units=*NX\_ANGLE*}  
 Unit cell lattice parameter: angle gamma
- unit\_cell\_volume:** (optional) *NX\_FLOAT* {units=*NX\_VOLUME*}  
 Volume of the unit cell
- orientation\_matrix[3, 3]:** (optional) *NX\_FLOAT*  
 Orientation matrix of single crystal sample using Busing-Levy convention: W. R. Busing and H. A. Levy (1967). Acta Cryst. 22, 457-464
- wavelength[i]:** (optional) *NX\_FLOAT* {units=*NX\_WAVELENGTH*}  
 Optimum diffracted wavelength
- d\_spacing:** (optional) *NX\_FLOAT* {units=*NX\_LENGTH*}  
 spacing between crystal planes of the reflection
- scattering\_vector:** (optional) *NX\_FLOAT* {units=*NX\_WAVENUMBER*}  
 Scattering vector, Q, of nominal reflection
- reflection[3]:** (optional) *NX\_INT* {units=*NX\_UNITLESS*}  
 Miller indices (hkl) values of nominal reflection
- thickness:** (optional) *NX\_FLOAT* {units=*NX\_LENGTH*}  
 Thickness of the crystal. (Required for Laue orientations - see “usage” field)
- density:** (optional) *NX\_NUMBER* {units=*NX\_MASS\_DENSITY*}  
 mass density of the crystal
- segment\_width:** (optional) *NX\_FLOAT* {units=*NX\_LENGTH*}  
 Horizontal width of individual segment
- segment\_height:** (optional) *NX\_FLOAT* {units=*NX\_LENGTH*}  
 Vertical height of individual segment
- segment\_thickness:** (optional) *NX\_FLOAT* {units=*NX\_LENGTH*}  
 Thickness of individual segment
- segment\_gap:** (optional) *NX\_FLOAT* {units=*NX\_LENGTH*}  
 Typical gap between adjacent segments
- segment\_columns:** (optional) *NX\_FLOAT* {units=*NX\_LENGTH*}  
 number of segment columns in horizontal direction
- segment\_rows:** (optional) *NX\_FLOAT* {units=*NX\_LENGTH*}

number of segment rows in vertical direction

**mosaic\_horizontal:** (optional) *NX\_FLOAT* {units=*NX\_ANGLE*}

horizontal mosaic Full Width Half Maximum

**mosaic\_vertical:** (optional) *NX\_FLOAT* {units=*NX\_ANGLE*}

vertical mosaic Full Width Half Maximum

**curvature\_horizontal:** (optional) *NX\_FLOAT* {units=*NX\_ANGLE*}

Horizontal curvature of focusing crystal

**curvature\_vertical:** (optional) *NX\_FLOAT* {units=*NX\_ANGLE*}

Vertical curvature of focusing crystal

**is\_cylindrical:** (optional) *NX\_BOOLEAN*

Is this crystal bent cylindrically?

**cylindrical\_orientation\_angle:** (optional) *NX\_NUMBER* {units=*NX\_ANGLE*}

If cylindrical: cylinder orientation angle

**polar\_angle[i]:** (optional) *NX\_FLOAT* {units=*NX\_ANGLE*}

Polar (scattering) angle at which crystal assembly is positioned. Note: some instrument geometries call this term 2theta.

**azimuthal\_angle[i]:** (optional) *NX\_FLOAT* {units=*NX\_ANGLE*}

Azimuthal angle at which crystal assembly is positioned

**bragg\_angle[i]:** (optional) *NX\_FLOAT* {units=*NX\_ANGLE*}

Bragg angle of nominal reflection

**temperature:** (optional) *NX\_FLOAT* {units=*NX\_TEMPERATURE*}

average/nominal crystal temperature

**temperature\_coefficient:** (optional) *NX\_FLOAT* {units=*NX\_ANY*}

how lattice parameter changes with temperature

**GEOMETRY:** (optional) *NXgeometry*

Position of crystal

**temperature\_log:** (optional) *NXlog*

log file of crystal temperature

**reflectivity:** (optional) *NXdata*

crystal reflectivity versus wavelength

**transmission:** (optional) *NXdata*

crystal transmission versus wavelength

**shape:** (optional) *NXshape*

A NXshape group describing the shape of the crystal arrangement

**NXDL Source:** [https://github.com/nexusformat/definitions/blob/master/base\\_classes/NXcrystal.nxdl.xml](https://github.com/nexusformat/definitions/blob/master/base_classes/NXcrystal.nxdl.xml)

## **NXcylindrical\_geometry**

### **Status:**

base class, extends *NXObject*

### **Description:**

Geometry description for cylindrical shapes. This class can be used in place of *NXoff\_geometry* when an exact representation for cylinders is preferred. For example, for Helium-tube, neutron detectors. It can be used to describe the shape of any beamline component, including detectors. In the case of detectors it can be used to define the shape of a single pixel, or, if the pixel shapes are non-uniform, to describe the shape of the whole detector.

### **Symbols:**

These symbols will be used below.

**i**: number of vertices required to define all cylinders in the shape

**j**: number of cylinders in the shape

**k**: number cylinders which are detectors

### **Groups cited:** none

### **Structure:**

**vertices[i, 3]**: (optional) *NX\_NUMBER* {units=*NX\_LENGTH*}

List of x,y,z coordinates for vertices. The origin of the coordinates is the position of the parent component, for example the *NXdetector* which the geometry describes. If the shape describes a single pixel for a detector with uniform pixel shape then the origin is the position of each pixel as described by the *x/y/z\_pixel\_offset* datasets in *NXdetector*.

**cylinders[j, 3]**: (optional) *NX\_INT*

List of indices of vertices in the *vertices* dataset to form each cylinder. Each cylinder is described by three vertices A, B, C. First vertex A lies on the cylinder axis and circular face, second point B on edge of the same face as A, and third point C at the other face and on axis.

**detector\_number[k]**: (optional) *NX\_INT*

Maps cylinders in *cylinder*, by index, with a detector id.

**NXDL Source:** [https://github.com/nexusformat/definitions/blob/master/base\\_classes/NXcylindrical\\_geometry.nxdl.xml](https://github.com/nexusformat/definitions/blob/master/base_classes/NXcylindrical_geometry.nxdl.xml)

## **NXdata**

### **Status:**

base class, extends *NXObject*

### **Description:**

*NXdata* describes the plottable data and related dimension scales.

It is mandatory that there is at least one *NXdata* group in each *NXentry* group. Note that the variable and data can be defined with different names. The signal and axes attributes of the data group define which items are plottable data and which are *dimension scales*, respectively.

*NXdata* is used to implement one of the basic motivations in NeXus, to provide a default plot for the data of this *NXentry*. The actual data might be stored in another group and (hard) linked to the *NXdata* group.

- Each `NXdata` group will define only one data set containing plottable data, dimension scales, and possibly associated standard deviations. Other data sets may be present in the group.
- The plottable data may be of arbitrary rank up to a maximum of `NX_MAXRANK=32`.
- The plottable data will be named as the value of the group `signal` attribute, such as:

```
data:NXdata
@signal = "counts"
@axes = "mr"
@mr_indices = 0
counts: float[100] --> the default dependent data
mr: float[100] --> the default independent data
```

The field named in the `signal` attribute **must** exist, either directly as a dataset or defined through a link.

- The group `axes` attribute will name the *dimension scale* associated with the plottable data.

If available, the standard deviations of the data are to be stored in a data set of the same rank and dimensions, with the name `errors`.

- For each data dimension, there should be a one-dimensional array of the same length.
- These one-dimensional arrays are the *dimension scales* of the data, *i.e.* the values of the independent variables at which the data is measured, such as scattering angle or energy transfer.

The preferred method to associate each data dimension with its respective dimension scale is to specify the field name of each dimension scale in the group `axes` attribute as a string list. Here is an example for a 2-D data set `data` plotted against `time`, and `pressure`. (An additional `temperature` data set is provided and could be selected as an alternate for the `pressure` axis.):

```
data_2d:NXdata
@signal="data"
@axes=["time", "pressure"]
@pressure_indices=1
@temperature_indices=1
@time_indices=0
data: float[1000,20]
pressure: float[20]
temperature: float[20]
time: float[1000]
```

## Old methods to identify the plottable data

There are two older methods of associating each data dimension to its respective dimension scale. Both are now out of date and should not be used when writing new data files. However, client software should expect to see data files written with any of these methods.

- One method uses the `axes` attribute to specify the names of each *dimension scale*.
- The oldest method uses the `axis` attribute on each *dimension scale* to identify with an integer the axis whose value is the number of the dimension.

## Symbols:

These symbols will be used below to coordinate datasets with the same shape.

**dataRank:** rank of the data field

**n:** length of the variable field

- nx:** length of the x field
- ny:** length of the y field
- nz:** length of the z field

**Groups cited:** none

**Structure:**

**@signal:** (optional) *NX\_CHAR*

Declares which dataset is the default. The value is the name of the dataset to be plotted. A field of this name *must* exist (either as dataset or as a link to a dataset).

It is recommended (as of NIAC2014) to use this attribute rather than adding a signal attribute to the dataset. See [http://wiki.nexusformat.org/2014\\_How\\_to\\_find\\_default\\_data](http://wiki.nexusformat.org/2014_How_to_find_default_data) for a summary of the discussion.

**@axes:** (optional) *NX\_CHAR*

String array that defines the independent data fields used in the default plot for all of the dimensions of the *signal* field (the *signal* field is the field in this group that is named by the *signal* attribute of this group). One entry is provided for every dimension in the *signal* field.

The field(s) named as values (known as “axes”) of this attribute *must* exist. An axis slice is specified using a field named *AXISNAME\_indices* as described below (where the text shown here as *AXISNAME* is to be replaced by the actual field name).

When no default axis is available for a particular dimension of the plottable data, use a “.” in that position. Such as:

```
@axes=["time", ".", "."]
```

Since there are three items in the list, the the *signal* field must must be a three-dimensional array (rank=3). The first dimension is described by the values of a one-dimensional array named *time* while the other two dimensions have no fields to be used as dimension scales.

See examples provided on the NeXus wiki: [http://www.nexusformat.org/2014\\_axes\\_and\\_uncertainties](http://www.nexusformat.org/2014_axes_and_uncertainties)

If there are no axes at all (such as with a stack of images), the axes attribute can be omitted.

**@AXISNAME\_indices:** (optional) *NX\_CHAR*

Each *AXISNAME\_indices* attribute indicates the dependency relationship of the *AXISNAME* field (where *AXISNAME* is the name of a field that exists in this NXdata group) with one or more dimensions of the plottable data.

Integer array that defines the indices of the *signal* field (that field will be a multidimensional array) which need to be used in the *AXISNAME* dataset in order to reference the corresponding axis value.

The first index of an array is 0 (zero).

Here, *AXISNAME* is to be replaced by the name of each field described in the *axes* attribute. An example with 2-D data,  $d(t, P)$ , will illustrate:

```
data_2d:NXdata
@signal="data"
@axes=["time", "pressure"]
@time_indices=0
@pressure_indices=1
```

(continues on next page)

(continued from previous page)

```
data: float[1000,20]
time: float[1000]
pressure: float[20]
```

This attribute is to be provided in all situations. However, if the indices attributes are missing (such as for data files written before this specification), file readers are encouraged to make their best efforts to plot the data. Thus the implementation of the `AXISNAME_indices` attribute is based on the model of “strict writer, liberal reader”.

---

**Note:** Attributes potentially containing multiple values (axes and `_indices`) are to be written as string or integer arrays, to avoid string parsing in reading applications.

---

#### **VARIABLE[n]:** (optional) [NX\\_NUMBER](#)

Dimension scale defining an axis of the data. Client is responsible for defining the dimensions of the data. The name of this field may be changed to fit the circumstances. Standard NeXus client tools will use the attributes to determine how to use this field.

##### **@long\_name:** (optional) [NX\\_CHAR](#)

Axis label

##### **@distribution:** (optional) [NX\\_BOOLEAN](#)

0 | false: single value, 1 | true: multiple values

##### **@first\_good:** (optional) [NX\\_INT](#)

Index of first good value

##### **@last\_good:** (optional) [NX\\_INT](#)

Index of last good value

##### **@axis:** (optional) [NX\\_POSINT](#)

Index (positive integer) identifying this specific set of numbers.

N.B. The `axis` attribute is the old way of designating a link. Do not use the `axes` attribute with the `axis` attribute. The `axes group` attribute is now preferred.

#### **VARIABLE\_errors[n]:** (optional) [NX\\_NUMBER](#)

Errors (uncertainties) associated with axis VARIABLE. Client is responsible for defining the dimensions of the data. The name of this field may be changed to fit the circumstances but is matched with the `VARIABLE` field with `_errors` appended.

#### **DATA[n]:** (optional) [NX\\_NUMBER](#)

This field contains the data values to be used as the NeXus *plottable data*. Client is responsible for defining the dimensions of the data. The name of this field may be changed to fit the circumstances. Standard NeXus client tools will use the attributes to determine how to use this field.

##### **@signal:** (optional) [NX\\_POSINT](#)

Plottable (independent) axis, indicate index number. Only one field in a `NXdata` group may have the `signal=1` attribute. Do not use the `signal` attribute with the `axis` attribute.

##### **@axes:** (optional) [NX\\_CHAR](#)

Defines the names of the dimension scales (independent axes) for this data set as a colon-delimited array. NOTE: The axes attribute is the preferred method of designating a link. Do not use the axes attribute with the axis attribute.

**@uncertainties:** (optional) *NX\_CHAR*

Specify the name (or names) of the uncertainties (errors) of the dependent axes as plottable data. NOTE: The uncertainties attribute uses the same syntax as the axes attribute, a string or an array of strings for multiple uncertainties.

Examples:

```
@uncertainties="data_errors"
@uncertainties="Idev"
@uncertainties=[ "dQw", "dQl" ]
```

**@long\_name:** (optional) *NX\_CHAR*

data label

**errors[n]:** (optional) *NX\_NUMBER*

Standard deviations of data values - the data array is identified by the group attribute signal. The errors array must have the same dimensions as data. Client is responsible for defining the dimensions of the data.

**scaling\_factor:** (optional) *NX\_FLOAT*

The elements in data are usually float values really. For efficiency reasons these are usually stored as integers after scaling with a scale factor. This value is the scale factor. It is required to get the actual physical value, when necessary.

**offset:** (optional) *NX\_FLOAT*

An optional offset to apply to the values in data.

**x[nx]:** (optional) *NX\_FLOAT* {units=*NX\_ANY*}

This is an array holding the values to use for the x-axis of data. The units must be appropriate for the measurement.

**y[ny]:** (optional) *NX\_FLOAT* {units=*NX\_ANY*}

This is an array holding the values to use for the y-axis of data. The units must be appropriate for the measurement.

**z[nz]:** (optional) *NX\_FLOAT* {units=*NX\_ANY*}

This is an array holding the values to use for the z-axis of data. The units must be appropriate for the measurement.

**NXDL Source:** [https://github.com/nexusformat/definitions/blob/master/base\\_classes/NXdata.nxdl.xml](https://github.com/nexusformat/definitions/blob/master/base_classes/NXdata.nxdl.xml)

## NXdetector

### Status:

base class, extends [NXobject](#)

### Description:

A detector, detector bank, or multidetector.

### Symbols:

These symbols will be used below to coordinate datasets with the same shape.

**np**: number of scan points (only present in scanning measurements)

**i**: number of detector pixels in the first (X, slowest) direction

**j**: number of detector pixels in the second (Y, faster) direction

**k**: number of detector pixels in the third (Z, if necessary, fastest) direction

**t<sub>of</sub>**: number of bins in the time-of-flight histogram

**Groups cited:** [NXcollection](#), [NXcylindrical\\_geometry](#), [NXdata](#), [NXdetector\\_module](#), [NXgeometry](#), [NXnote](#), [NXoff\\_geometry](#)

### Structure:

**time\_of\_flight[t<sub>of</sub>+1]**: (optional) [NX\\_FLOAT](#) {units=[NX\\_TIME\\_OF\\_FLIGHT](#)}

Total time of flight

**@axis**: (optional) [NX\\_POSINT](#)

Obligatory value: 3

**@primary**: (optional) [NX\\_POSINT](#)

Obligatory value: 1

**@long\_name**: (optional) [NX\\_CHAR](#)

Total time of flight

**raw\_time\_of\_flight[t<sub>of</sub>+1]**: (optional) [NX\\_INT](#) {units=[NX\\_PULSES](#)}

In DAQ clock pulses

**@frequency**: (optional) [NX\\_NUMBER](#)

Clock frequency in Hz

**detector\_number**: (optional) [NX\\_INT](#)

Identifier for detector (pixels) Can be multidimensional, if needed

**data[**np**, **i**, **j**, **t<sub>of</sub>**]**: (optional) [NX\\_NUMBER](#) {units=[NX\\_ANY](#)}

Data values from the detector.

**@long\_name**: (optional) [NX\\_CHAR](#)

Title of measurement

**@check\_sum**: (optional) [NX\\_INT](#)

Integral of data as check of data integrity

**data\_error[**np**, **i**, **j**, **t<sub>of</sub>**]**: (optional) [NX\\_NUMBER](#) {units=[NX\\_ANY](#)}

The best estimate of the uncertainty in the data value. Where possible, this should be the standard deviation, which has the same units as the data.

**x\_pixel\_offset:** (optional) *NX\_FLOAT* {units=*NX\_LENGTH*}

Offset from the detector center in x-direction. Can be multidimensional when needed.

**@axis:** (optional) *NX\_POSINT*

Obligatory value: 1

**@primary:** (optional) *NX\_POSINT*

Obligatory value: 1

**@long\_name:** (optional) *NX\_CHAR*

x-axis offset from detector center

**y\_pixel\_offset:** (optional) *NX\_FLOAT* {units=*NX\_LENGTH*}

Offset from the detector center in the y-direction. Can be multidimensional when different values are required for each pixel.

**@axis:** (optional) *NX\_POSINT*

Obligatory value: 2

**@primary:** (optional) *NX\_POSINT*

Obligatory value: 1

**@long\_name:** (optional) *NX\_CHAR*

y-axis offset from detector center

**z\_pixel\_offset:** (optional) *NX\_FLOAT* {units=*NX\_LENGTH*}

Offset from the detector center in the z-direction. Can be multidimensional when different values are required for each pixel.

**@axis:** (optional) *NX\_POSINT*

Obligatory value: 3

**@primary:** (optional) *NX\_POSINT*

Obligatory value: 1

**@long\_name:** (optional) *NX\_CHAR*

z-axis offset from detector center

**distance[np, i, j]:** (optional) *NX\_FLOAT* {units=*NX\_LENGTH*}

This is the distance to the previous component in the instrument; most often the sample. The usage depends on the nature of the detector: Most often it is the distance of the detector assembly. But there are irregular detectors. In this case the distance must be specified for each detector pixel.

**polar\_angle[np, i, j]:** (optional) *NX\_FLOAT* {units=*NX\_ANGLE*}

This is the polar angle of the detector towards the previous component in the instrument; most often the sample. The usage depends on the nature of the detector. Most often it is the polar\_angle of the detector assembly. But there are irregular detectors. In this case, the polar\_angle must be specified for each detector pixel.

**azimuthal\_angle[np, i, j]:** (optional) *NX\_FLOAT* {units=*NX\_ANGLE*}

This is the azimuthal angle angle of the detector towards the previous component in the instrument; most often the sample. The usage depends on the nature of the detector. Most often it is the azimuthal\_angle of the detector assembly. But there are irregular detectors. In this case, the azimuthal\_angle must be specified for each detector pixel.

**description:** (optional) *NX\_CHAR*

name/manufacturer/model/etc. information

**serial\_number:** (optional) *NX\_CHAR*

Serial number for the detector

**local\_name:** (optional) *NX\_CHAR*

Local name for the detector

**solid\_angle[i, j]:** (optional) *NX\_FLOAT* {units=*NX\_SOLID\_ANGLE*}

Solid angle subtended by the detector at the sample

**x\_pixel\_size[i, j]:** (optional) *NX\_FLOAT* {units=*NX\_LENGTH*}

Size of each detector pixel. If it is scalar all pixels are the same size.

**y\_pixel\_size[i, j]:** (optional) *NX\_FLOAT* {units=*NX\_LENGTH*}

Size of each detector pixel. If it is scalar all pixels are the same size

**dead\_time[np, i, j]:** (optional) *NX\_FLOAT* {units=*NX\_TIME*}

Detector dead time

**gas\_pressure[i, j]:** (optional) *NX\_FLOAT* {units=*NX\_PRESSURE*}

Detector gas pressure

**detection\_gas\_path:** (optional) *NX\_FLOAT* {units=*NX\_LENGTH*}

maximum drift space dimension

**crate[i, j]:** (optional) *NX\_INT*

Crate number of detector

**@local\_name:** (optional) *NX\_CHAR*

Equivalent local term

**slot[i, j]:** (optional) *NX\_INT*

Slot number of detector

**@local\_name:** (optional) *NX\_CHAR*

Equivalent local term

**input[i, j]:** (optional) *NX\_INT*

Input number of detector

**@local\_name:** (optional) *NX\_CHAR*

Equivalent local term

**type:** (optional) *NX\_CHAR*

Description of type such as He3 gas cylinder, He3 PSD, scintillator, fission chamber, proportion counter, ion chamber, ccd, pixel, image plate, CMOS, ...

**calibration\_date:** (optional) *NX\_DATE\_TIME*

date of last calibration (geometry and/or efficiency) measurements

**layout:** (optional) *NX\_CHAR*

How the detector is represented

Any of these values: point | linear | area

**count\_time[*np*]:** (optional) *NX\_NUMBER* {units=*NX\_TIME*}

Elapsed actual counting time

**sequence\_number[nBrightFrames]:** (optional) *NX\_INT*

In order to properly sort the order of the images taken in (for example) a tomography experiment, a sequence number is stored with each image.

**beam\_center\_x:** (optional) *NX\_FLOAT* {units=*NX\_LENGTH*}

This is the x position where the direct beam would hit the detector. This is a length and can be outside of the actual detector. The length can be in physical units or pixels as documented by the units attribute.

**beam\_center\_y:** (optional) *NX\_FLOAT* {units=*NX\_LENGTH*}

This is the y position where the direct beam would hit the detector. This is a length and can be outside of the actual detector. The length can be in physical units or pixels as documented by the units attribute.

**frame\_start\_number:** (optional) *NX\_INT*

This is the start number of the first frame of a scan. In PX one often scans a couple of frames on a give sample, then does something else, then returns to the same sample and scans some more frames. Each time with a new data file. This number helps concatenating such measurements.

**diameter:** (optional) *NX\_FLOAT* {units=*NX\_LENGTH*}

The diameter of a cylindrical detector

**acquisition\_mode:** (optional) *NX\_CHAR*

The acquisition mode of the detector.

Any of these values:

- gated
- triggered
- summed
- event
- histogrammed
- decimated

**angular\_calibration\_applied:** (optional) *NX\_BOOLEAN*

True when the angular calibration has been applied in the electronics, false otherwise.

**angular\_calibration[i, j]:** (optional) *NX\_FLOAT*

Angular calibration data.

**flatfield\_applied:** (optional) *NX\_BOOLEAN*

True when the flat field correction has been applied in the electronics, false otherwise.

**flatfield[i, j]:** (optional) *NX\_FLOAT*

Flat field correction data.

**flatfield\_error[i, j]:** (optional) *NX\_FLOAT*

Errors of the flat field correction data.

**pixel\_mask\_applied:** (optional) *NX\_BOOLEAN*

True when the pixel mask correction has been applied in the electronics, false otherwise.

**pixel\_mask[i, j]:** (optional) *NX\_INT*

The 32-bit pixel mask for the detector. Can be either one mask for the whole dataset (i.e. an array with indices i, j) or each frame can have its own mask (in which case it would be an array with indices np, i, j).

Contains a bit field for each pixel to signal dead, blind or high or otherwise unwanted or undesirable pixels. They have the following meaning:

- bit 0: gap (pixel with no sensor)
- bit 1: dead
- bit 2: under responding
- bit 3: over responding
- bit 4: noisy
- bit 5: -undefined-
- bit 6: pixel is part of a cluster of problematic pixels (bit set in addition to others)
- bit 7: -undefined-
- bit 8: user defined mask (e.g. around beamstop)
- bits 9-30: -undefined-
- bit 31: virtual pixel (corner pixel with interpolated value)

Normal data analysis software would not take pixels into account when a bit in (mask & 0x0000FFFF) is set. Tag bit in the upper two bytes would indicate special pixel properties that normally would not be a sole reason to reject the intensity value (unless lower bits are set).

If the full bit depths is not required, providing a mask with fewer bits is permissible.

If needed, additional pixel masks can be specified by including additional entries named pixel\_mask\_N, where N is an integer. For example, a general bad pixel mask could be specified in pixel\_mask that indicates noisy and dead pixels, and an additional pixel mask from experiment-specific shadowing could be specified in pixel\_mask\_2. The cumulative mask is the bitwise OR of pixel\_mask and any pixel\_mask\_N entries.

**countrate\_correction\_applied:** (optional) *NX\_BOOLEAN*

True when a count-rate correction has already been applied in the electronics, false otherwise.

**bit\_depth\_readout:** (optional) *NX\_INT*

How many bits the electronics reads per pixel. With CCD's and single photon counting detectors, this must not align with traditional integer sizes. This can be 4, 8, 12, 14, 16, ...

**detector\_readout\_time:** (optional) *NX\_FLOAT* {units=*NX\_TIME*}

Time it takes to read the detector (typically milliseconds). This is important to know for time resolved experiments.

**trigger\_delay\_time:** (optional) *NX\_FLOAT* {units=*NX\_TIME*}

Time it takes to start exposure after a trigger signal has been received. This is the reaction time of the detector firmware after receiving the trigger signal to when the detector starts to acquire the exposure, including any user set delay.. This is important to know for time resolved experiments.

**trigger\_delay\_time\_set:** (optional) *NX\_FLOAT* {units=*NX\_TIME*}

User-specified trigger delay.

**trigger\_internal\_delay\_time:** (optional) *NX\_FLOAT* {units=*NX\_TIME*}

Time it takes to start exposure after a trigger signal has been received. This is the reaction time of the detector hardware after receiving the trigger signal to when the detector starts to acquire the exposure. It forms the lower boundary of the trigger\_delay\_time when the user does not request an additional delay.

**trigger\_dead\_time:** (optional) *NX\_FLOAT* {units=*NX\_TIME*}

Time during which no new trigger signal can be accepted. Typically this is the trigger\_delay\_time + exposure\_time + readout\_time. This is important to know for time resolved experiments.

**frame\_time[NP]:** (optional) *NX\_FLOAT* {units=*NX\_TIME*}

This is time for each frame. This is exposure\_time + readout time.

**gain\_setting:** (optional) *NX\_CHAR*

The gain setting of the detector. This influences background etc.

Any of these values: high | standard | fast | auto

**saturation\_value:** (optional) *NX\_INT*

The value at which the detector goes into saturation. Especially common to CCD detectors, the data is known to be invalid above this value.

For example, given a saturation\_value and an underload\_value, the valid pixels are those less than or equal to the saturation\_value and greater than or equal to the underload\_value.

**underload\_value:** (optional) *NX\_INT*

The lowest value at which pixels for this detector would be reasonably measured. The data is known to be invalid below this value.

For example, given a saturation\_value and an underload\_value, the valid pixels are those less than or equal to the saturation\_value and greater than or equal to the underload\_value.

**number\_of\_cycles:** (optional) *NX\_INT*

CCD images are sometimes constructed by summing together multiple short exposures in the electronics. This reduces background etc. This is the number of short exposures used to sum images for an image.

**sensor\_material:** (optional) *NX\_CHAR*

At times, radiation is not directly sensed by the detector. Rather, the detector might sense the output from some converter like a scintillator. This is the name of this converter material.

**sensor\_thickness:** (optional) *NX\_FLOAT* {units=*NX\_LENGTH*}

At times, radiation is not directly sensed by the detector. Rather, the detector might sense the output from some converter like a scintillator. This is the thickness of this converter material.

**threshold\_energy:** (optional) *NX\_FLOAT* {units=*NX\_ENERGY*}

Single photon counter detectors can be adjusted for a certain energy range in which they work optimally. This is the energy setting for this.

**GEOMETRY:** (optional) *NXgeometry*

Position and orientation of detector

**efficiency:** (optional) *NXdata*

Spectral efficiency of detector with respect to e.g. wavelength

**@signal:** (optional) *NX\_CHAR*

Obligatory value: efficiency

**@axes:** (optional) *NX\_CHAR*

Any of these values: . | . . | . . . | . . . . | wavelength

**@wavelength\_indices:** (optional) *NX\_CHAR*

Obligatory value: 0

**efficiency[i, j, k]:** (optional) *NX\_FLOAT* {units=*NX\_DIMENSIONLESS*}

efficiency of the detector

**wavelength[i, j, k]:** (optional) *NX\_FLOAT* {units=*NX\_WAVELENGTH*}

This field can be two things:

1. For a pixel detector it provides the nominal wavelength for which the detector has been calibrated.
2. For other detectors this field has to be seen together with the efficiency field above. For some detectors, the efficiency is wavelength dependent. Thus this field provides the wavelength axis for the efficiency field. In this use case, the efficiency and wavelength arrays must have the same dimensionality.

**start\_time[np]:** (optional) *NX\_FLOAT* {units=*NX\_TIME*}

start time for each frame, with the `start` attribute as absolute reference

**@start:** (optional) *NX\_DATE\_TIME*

**stop\_time[np]:** (optional) *NX\_FLOAT* {units=*NX\_TIME*}

stop time for each frame, with the `start` attribute as absolute reference

**@start:** (optional) *NX\_DATE\_TIME*

**real\_time[i, j, k]:** (optional) *NX\_NUMBER* {units=*NX\_TIME*}

real-time of the exposure (use this if exposure time varies for each array element, otherwise use `count_time` field)

**calibration\_method:** (optional) *NXnote*

summary of conversion of array data to pixels (e.g. polynomial approximations) and location of details of the calibrations

**data\_file:** (optional) *NXnote*

**COLLECTION:** (optional) *NXcollection*

Use this group to provide other data related to this NXdetector group.

**DETECTOR\_MODULE:** (optional) *NXdetector\_module*

For use in special cases where the data in NXdetector is represented in several parts, each with a separate geometry.

Use one or more instances of the NXdetector\_module group to declare regions of interest or some other subdivision of a detector.

**NXDL Source:** [https://github.com/nexusformat/definitions/blob/master/base\\_classes/NXdetector.nxdl.xml](https://github.com/nexusformat/definitions/blob/master/base_classes/NXdetector.nxdl.xml)

## **NXdetector\_group**

**Status:**

base class, extends *NXObject*

**Description:**

Logical grouping of detector elements.

This class is used to allow a logical grouping of detector elements (e.g. which tube, bank or group of banks) to be recorded in the file. As well as allowing you to e.g just select the “left” or “east” detectors, it may also be useful for determining which elements belong to the same PSD tube and hence have e.g. the same dead time.

For example, if we had “bank1” composed of “tube1”, “tube2” and “tube3” then group\_names would be the string “bank1, bank1/tube1, bank1/tube2,bank1/tube3” group\_index would be {1,2,3,4} group\_parent would be {-1,1,1,1}

The mapping array is interpreted as group 1 is a top level group containing groups 2, 3 and 4

A group\_index array in NXdetector gives the base group for a detector element.

**Symbols:**

No symbol table

**Groups cited:** none

**Structure:**

**group\_names:** (optional) *NX\_CHAR*

Comma separated list of name

**group\_index[i]:** (optional) *NX\_INT*

Unique ID for group. A group\_index array in NXdetector gives the base group for a detector element.

**group\_parent[ref(group\_index)]:** (optional) *NX\_INT*

Index of group parent in the hierarchy: -1 means no parent (i.e. a top level) group

**group\_type[ref(group\_index)]:** (optional) *NX\_INT*

Code number for group type, e.g. bank=1, tube=2 etc.

**NXDL Source:** [https://github.com/nexusformat/definitions/blob/master/base\\_classes/NXdetector\\_group.nxdl.xml](https://github.com/nexusformat/definitions/blob/master/base_classes/NXdetector_group.nxdl.xml)

## NXdetector\_module

### Status:

base class, extends [NXobject](#)

### Description:

Geometry and logical description of a detector module.

Many detectors consist of multiple smaller modules. Sometimes it is important to know the exact position of such modules. This is the purpose of this group. It is a child group to NXdetector.

Note, the pixel size is given as values in the array fast\_pixel\_direction and slow\_pixel\_direction.

### Symbols:

No symbol table

### Groups cited:

#### Structure:

##### **data\_origin:** (optional) [NX\\_INT](#)

A dimension-2 or dimension-3 field which gives the indices of the origin of the hyperslab of data for this module in the main area detector image in the parent NXdetector module.

The data\_origin is 0-based.

The frame number dimension (np) is omitted. Thus the data\_origin field for a dimension-2 dataset with indices (np, i, j) will be an array with indices (i, j), and for a dimension-3 dataset with indices (np, i, j, k) will be an array with indices (i, j, k).

The *order* of indices (i, j or i, j, k) is slow to fast.

##### **data\_size:** (optional) [NX\\_INT](#)

Two or three values for the size of the module in pixels in each direction. Dimensionality and order of indices is the same as for data\_origin.

##### **module\_offset:** (optional) [NX\\_NUMBER](#) {units=[NX\\_LENGTH](#)}

Offset of the module in regards to the origin of the detector in an arbitrary direction.

##### **@transformation\_type:** (optional) [NX\\_CHAR](#)

Obligatory value: translation

##### **@vector:** (optional) [NX\\_NUMBER](#)

Three values that define the axis for this transformation

##### **@offset:** (optional) [NX\\_NUMBER](#)

A fixed offset applied before the transformation (three vector components).

##### **@offset\_units:** (optional) [NX\\_CHAR](#)

Units of the offset.

##### **@depends\_on:** (optional) [NX\\_CHAR](#)

Points to the path of the next element in the geometry chain.

##### **fast\_pixel\_direction:** (optional) [NX\\_NUMBER](#) {units=[NX\\_LENGTH](#)}

Values along the direction of *fastest varying* pixel direction. Each value in this array is the size of a pixel in the units specified. Alternatively, if only one value is given, all pixels in this direction have the same value. The direction itself is given through the vector attribute.

**@transformation\_type:** (optional) *NX\_CHAR*

Obligatory value: translation

**@vector:** (optional) *NX\_NUMBER*

Three values that define the axis for this transformation

**@offset:** (optional) *NX\_NUMBER*

A fixed offset applied before the transformation (three vector components).

**@offset\_units:** (optional) *NX\_CHAR*

Units of the offset.

**@depends\_on:** (optional) *NX\_CHAR*

Points to the path of the next element in the geometry chain.

**slow\_pixel\_direction:** (optional) *NX\_NUMBER* {units=*NX\_LENGTH*}

Values along the direction of *slowest varying* pixel direction. Each value in this array is the size of a pixel in the units specified. Alternatively, if only one value is given, all pixels in this direction have the same value. The direction itself is given through the vector attribute.

**@transformation\_type:** (optional) *NX\_CHAR*

Obligatory value: translation

**@vector:** (optional) *NX\_NUMBER*

Three values that define the axis for this transformation

**@offset:** (optional) *NX\_NUMBER*

A fixed offset applied before the transformation (three vector components).

**@offset\_units:** (optional) *NX\_CHAR*

Units of the offset.

**@depends\_on:** (optional) *NX\_CHAR*

Points to the path of the next element in the geometry chain.

**NXDL Source:** [https://github.com/nexusformat/definitions/blob/master/base\\_classes/NXdetector\\_module.nxdl.xml](https://github.com/nexusformat/definitions/blob/master/base_classes/NXdetector_module.nxdl.xml)

## **NXdisk\_chopper**

### **Status:**

base class, extends *NXObject*

### **Description:**

A device blocking the beam in a temporal periodic pattern.

A disk which blocks the beam but has one or more slits to periodically let neutrons through as the disk rotates. Often used in pairs, one NXdisk\_chopper should be defined for each disk.

The rotation of the disk is commonly monitored by recording a timestamp for each full rotation of disk, by having a sensor in the stationary disk housing sensing when it is aligned with a feature (such as a magnet) on the disk. We refer to this below as the “top-dead-center signal”.

Angles and positive rotation speeds are measured in an anticlockwise direction when facing away from the source.

#### Symbols:

This symbol will be used below to coordinate datasets with the same shape.

**n**: Number of slits in the disk

#### Groups cited: *NXgeometry*

#### Structure:

**type**: (optional) *NX\_CHAR*

Type of the disk-chopper: only one from the enumerated list (match text exactly)

Any of these values:

- Chopper type single
- contra\_rotating\_pair
- synchro\_pair

**rotation\_speed**: (optional) *NX\_FLOAT* {units=*NX\_FREQUENCY*}

Chopper rotation speed. Positive for anticlockwise rotation when facing away from the source, negative otherwise.

**slits**: (optional) *NX\_INT*

Number of slits

**slit\_angle**: (optional) *NX\_FLOAT* {units=*NX\_ANGLE*}

Angular opening

**pair\_separation**: (optional) *NX\_FLOAT* {units=*NX\_LENGTH*}

Disk spacing in direction of beam

**slit\_edges[2n]**: (optional) *NX\_FLOAT* {units=*NX\_ANGLE*}

Angle of each edge of every slit from the position of the top-dead-center timestamp sensor, anticlockwise when facing away from the source. The first edge must be the opening edge of a slit, thus the last edge may have an angle greater than 360 degrees.

**top\_dead\_center**: (optional) *NX\_NUMBER* {units=*NX\_TIME*}

Timestamps of the top-dead-center signal. The times are relative to the “start” attribute and in the units specified in the “units” attribute. Please note that absolute timestamps under unix are relative to 1970-01-01T:00:00.

**@start**: (optional) *NX\_DATE\_TIME*

**beam\_position**: (optional) *NX\_FLOAT* {units=*NX\_ANGLE*}

Angular separation of the center of the beam and the top-dead-center timestamp sensor, anticlockwise when facing away from the source.

**radius**: (optional) *NX\_FLOAT* {units=*NX\_LENGTH*}

Radius of the disk

**slit\_height:** (optional) *NX\_FLOAT* {units=*NX\_LENGTH*}

Total slit height

**phase:** (optional) *NX\_FLOAT* {units=*NX\_ANGLE*}

Chopper phase angle

**delay:** (optional) *NX\_NUMBER* {units=*NX\_TIME*}

Time difference between timing system t0 and chopper driving clock signal

**ratio:** (optional) *NX\_INT*

Pulse reduction factor of this chopper in relation to other choppers/fastest pulse in the instrument

**distance:** (optional) *NX\_FLOAT* {units=*NX\_LENGTH*}

Effective distance to the origin

**wavelength\_range[2]:** (optional) *NX\_FLOAT* {units=*NX\_WAVELENGTH*}

Low and high values of wavelength range transmitted

**GEOMETRY:** (optional) *NXgeometry*

**NXDL Source:** [https://github.com/nexusformat/definitions/blob/master/base\\_classes/NXdisk\\_chopper.nxdl.xml](https://github.com/nexusformat/definitions/blob/master/base_classes/NXdisk_chopper.nxdl.xml)

## NXentry

### Status:

base class, extends *NXObject*

### Description:

(**required**) *NXentry* describes the measurement.

The top-level NeXus group which contains all the data and associated information that comprise a single measurement. It is mandatory that there is at least one group of this type in the NeXus file.

### Symbols:

No symbol table

**Groups cited:** *NXcollection*, *NXdata*, *NXinstrument*, *NXmonitor*, *NXnote*, *NXparameters*, *NXprocess*, *NXsample*, *NXsubentry*, *NXuser*

### Structure:

**@default:** (optional) *NX\_CHAR*

Declares which *NXdata* (or *NXsubentry*) group contains the data to be shown by default. It is needed to resolve ambiguity when more than one *NXdata* group exists. The value is the name of the default *NXdata* group.

It is recommended (as of NIAC2014<sup>1</sup>) to use this attribute to help define the path to the default dataset to be plotted.

**@IDF\_Version:** (optional) *NX\_CHAR*

ISIS Muon IDF\_Version

**title:** (optional) *NX\_CHAR*

<sup>1</sup> NIAC2014 discussion summary: [http://wiki.nexusformat.org/2014\\_How\\_to\\_find\\_default\\_data](http://wiki.nexusformat.org/2014_How_to_find_default_data)

Extended title for entry

**experiment\_identifier:** (optional) *NX\_CHAR*

Unique identifier for the experiment, defined by the facility, possibly linked to the proposals

**experiment\_description:** (optional) *NX\_CHAR*

Brief summary of the experiment, including key objectives.

**collection\_identifier:** (optional) *NX\_CHAR*

User or Data Acquisition defined group of NeXus files or NXentry

**collection\_description:** (optional) *NX\_CHAR*

Brief summary of the collection, including grouping criteria.

**entry\_identifier:** (optional) *NX\_CHAR*

unique identifier for the measurement, defined by the facility.

**features:** (optional) *NX\_CHAR*

Reserved for future use by NIAC.

See <https://github.com/nexusformat/definitions/issues/382>

**definition:** (optional) *NX\_CHAR*

(alternate use: see same field in *NXsubentry* for preferred)

Official NeXus NXDL schema to which this entry conforms.

This field is provided so that *NXentry* can be the overlay position in a NeXus data file for an application definition and its set of groups, fields, and attributes.

*It is advised* to use *NXsubentry*, instead, as the overlay position.

**@version:** (optional) *NX\_CHAR*

NXDL version number

**@URL:** (optional) *NX\_CHAR*

URL of NXDL file

**definition\_local:** (optional) *NX\_CHAR*

**DEPRECATED:** see same field in *NXsubentry* for preferred use

Local NXDL schema extended from the entry specified in the `definition` field. This contains any locally-defined, additional fields in the entry.

**@version:** (optional) *NX\_CHAR*

NXDL version number

**@URL:** (optional) *NX\_CHAR*

URL of NXDL file

**start\_time:** (optional) *NX\_DATE\_TIME*

Starting time of measurement

**end\_time:** (optional) *NX\_DATE\_TIME*

Ending time of measurement

**duration:** (optional) *NX\_INT* {units=*NX\_TIME*}

Duration of measurement

**collection\_time:** (optional) *NX\_FLOAT* {units=*NX\_TIME*}

Time transpired actually collecting data i.e. taking out time when collection was suspended due to e.g. temperature out of range

**run\_cycle:** (optional) *NX\_CHAR*

Such as “2007-3”. Some user facilities organize their beam time into run cycles.

**program\_name:** (optional) *NX\_CHAR*

Name of program used to generate this file

**@version:** (optional) *NX\_CHAR*

Program version number

**@configuration:** (optional) *NX\_CHAR*

configuration of the program

**revision:** (optional) *NX\_CHAR*

Revision id of the file due to re-calibration, reprocessing, new analysis, new instrument definition format, ...

**@comment:** (optional) *NX\_CHAR*

**pre\_sample\_flightpath:** (optional) *NX\_FLOAT* {units=*NX\_LENGTH*}

This is the flightpath before the sample position. This can be determined by a chopper, by the moderator or the source itself. In other words: it the distance to the component which gives the T0 signal to the detector electronics. If another component in the NXinstrument hierarchy provides this information, this should be a link.

**DATA:** (optional) *NXdata*

The data group

---

**Note:** Before the NIAC2016 meeting<sup>2</sup>, at least one *NXdata* group was required in each *NXentry* group. At the NIAC2016 meeting, it was decided to make *NXdata* an optional group in *NXentry* groups for data files that do not use an application definition. It is recommended strongly that all NeXus data files provide a *NXdata* group. It is permissible to omit the *NXdata* group only when defining the default plot is not practical or possible from the available data.

For example, neutron event data may not have anything that makes a useful plot without extensive processing.

Certain application definitions override this decision and require an *NXdata* group in the *NXentry* group. The *minOccurs=0* attribute in the application definition will indicate the *NXdata* group is optional, otherwise, it is required.

---

**experiment\_documentation:** (optional) *NXnote*

Description of the full experiment (document in pdf, latex, ...)

**notes:** (optional) *NXnote*

Notes describing entry

**thumbnail:** (optional) *NXnote*

---

<sup>2</sup> NIAC2016: <http://wiki.nexusformat.org/NIAC2016>, <https://github.com/nexusformat/NIAC/issues/16>

A small image that is representative of the entry. An example of this is a 640x480 jpeg image automatically produced by a low resolution plot of the NXdata.

**@type:** (optional) *NX\_CHAR*

The mime type should be an image/\*

Obligatory value: image/\*

**USER:** (optional) *NXuser*

**SAMPLE:** (optional) *NXsample*

**INSTRUMENT:** (optional) *NXinstrument*

**COLLECTION:** (optional) *NXcollection*

**MONITOR:** (optional) *NXmonitor*

**PARAMETERS:** (optional) *NXparameters*

**PROCESS:** (optional) *NXprocess*

**SUBENTRY:** (optional) *NXsubentry*

**NXDL Source:** [https://github.com/nexusformat/definitions/blob/master/base\\_classes/NXentry.nxdl.xml](https://github.com/nexusformat/definitions/blob/master/base_classes/NXentry.nxdl.xml)

## NXenvironment

**Status:**

base class, extends *NXObject*

**Description:**

Parameters for controlling external conditions

**Symbols:**

No symbol table

**Groups cited:** *NXgeometry*, *NXnote*, *NXsensor*

**Structure:**

**name:** (optional) *NX\_CHAR*

Apparatus identification code/model number; e.g. OC100 011

**short\_name:** (optional) *NX\_CHAR*

Alternative short name, perhaps for dashboard display like a present Seblock name

**type:** (optional) *NX\_CHAR*

Type of apparatus. This could be the SE codes in scheduling database; e.g. OC/100

**description:** (optional) *NX\_CHAR*

Description of the apparatus; e.g. 100mm bore orange cryostat with Roots pump

**program:** (optional) *NX\_CHAR*

Program controlling the apparatus; e.g. LabView VI name

**position:** (optional) *NXgeometry*

The position and orientation of the apparatus

**NOTE:** (optional) *NXnote*

Additional information, LabView logs, digital photographs, etc

**SENSOR:** (optional) *NXsensor*

**NXDL Source:** [https://github.com/nexusformat/definitions/blob/master/base\\_classes/NXenvironment.nxdl.xml](https://github.com/nexusformat/definitions/blob/master/base_classes/NXenvironment.nxdl.xml)

## **NXevent\_data**

**Status:**

base class, extends *NXObject*

**Description:**

`NXevent_data` is a special group for storing data from neutron detectors in event mode. In this mode, the detector electronics emits a stream of detectorID, timestamp pairs. With detectorID describing the detector element in which the neutron was detected and timestamp the timestamp at which the neutron event was detected. In NeXus detectorID maps to event\_id, event\_time\_offset to the timestamp.

As this kind of data is common at pulsed neutron sources, the timestamp is almost always relative to the start of a neutron pulse. Thus the pulse timestamp is recorded too together with an index in the event\_id, event\_time\_offset pair at which data for that pulse starts. At reactor source the same pulsed data effect may be achieved through the use of choppers or in stroboscopic measurement setups.

In order to make random access to timestamped data faster there is an optional array pair of cue\_timestamp\_zero and cue\_index. The cue\_timestamp\_zero will contain courser timestamps then in the time array, say every five minutes. The cue\_index will then contain the index into the event\_id,event\_time\_offset pair of arrays for that courser cue\_timestamp\_zero.

**Symbols:**

No symbol table

**Groups cited:** none

**Structure:**

**event\_time\_offset[i]:** (optional) *NX\_NUMBER* {units=*NX\_TIME\_OF\_FLIGHT*}

A list of timestamps for each event as it comes in.

**event\_id[i]:** (optional) *NX\_INT* {units=*NX\_DIMENSIONLESS*}

There will be extra information in the NXdetector to convert event\_id to detector\_number.

**event\_time\_zero[j]:** (optional) *NX\_NUMBER* {units=*NX\_TIME*}

The time that each pulse started with respect to the offset

**@offset:** (optional) *NX\_DATE\_TIME*

ISO8601

**event\_index[j]:** (optional) *NX\_INT* {units=*NX\_DIMENSIONLESS*}

The index into the event\_time\_offset, event\_id pair for the pulse occurring at the matching entry in event\_time\_zero.

**pulse\_height[i, k]:** (optional) *NX\_FLOAT* {units=*NX\_DIMENSIONLESS*}

If voltages from the ends of the detector are read out this is where they go. This list is for all events with information to attach to a particular pulse height. The information to attach to a particular pulse is located in events\_per\_pulse.

**cue\_timestamp\_zero:** (optional) *NX\_DATE\_TIME* {units=*NX\_TIME*}

Timestamps matching the corresponding cue\_index into the event\_id, event\_time\_offset pair.

**@start:** (optional) *NX\_DATE\_TIME*

**cue\_index:** (optional) *NX\_INT*

Index into the event\_id, event\_time\_offset pair matching the corresponding cue\_timestamp.

**NXDL Source:** [https://github.com/nexusformat/definitions/blob/master/base\\_classes/NXevent\\_data.nxdl.xml](https://github.com/nexusformat/definitions/blob/master/base_classes/NXevent_data.nxdl.xml)

## **NXfermi\_chopper**

### **Status:**

base class, extends *NXObject*

### **Description:**

A Fermi chopper, possibly with curved slits.

### **Symbols:**

No symbol table

**Groups cited:** *NXgeometry*

### **Structure:**

**type:** (optional) *NX\_CHAR*

Fermi chopper type

**rotation\_speed:** (optional) *NX\_FLOAT* {units=*NX\_FREQUENCY*}

chopper rotation speed

**radius:** (optional) *NX\_FLOAT* {units=*NX\_LENGTH*}

radius of chopper

**slit:** (optional) *NX\_FLOAT* {units=*NX\_LENGTH*}

width of an individual slit

**r\_slit:** (optional) *NX\_FLOAT* {units=*NX\_LENGTH*}

radius of curvature of slits

**number:** (optional) *NX\_INT* {units=*NX\_UNITLESS*}

number of slits

**height:** (optional) *NX\_FLOAT* {units=*NX\_LENGTH*}

input beam height

**width:** (optional) *NX\_FLOAT* {units=*NX\_LENGTH*}

input beam width

**distance:** (optional) *NX\_FLOAT* {units=*NX\_LENGTH*}

distance

**wavelength:** (optional) *NX\_FLOAT* {units=*NX\_WAVELENGTH*}

Wavelength transmitted by chopper

**energy:** (optional) *NX\_FLOAT* {units=*NX\_ENERGY*}

energy selected

**absorbing\_material:** (optional) *NX\_CHAR*

absorbing material

**transmitting\_material:** (optional) *NX\_CHAR*

transmitting material

**GEOMETRY:** (optional) *NXgeometry*

geometry of the fermi chopper

**NXDL Source:** [https://github.com/nexusformat/definitions/blob/master/base\\_classes/NXfermi\\_chopper.nxdl.xml](https://github.com/nexusformat/definitions/blob/master/base_classes/NXfermi_chopper.nxdl.xml)

## **NXfilter**

### **Status:**

base class, extends *NXObject*

### **Description:**

For band pass beam filters.

If uncertain whether to use *NXfilter* (band-pass filter) or *NXattenuator* (reduces beam intensity), then use *NXattenuator*.

### **Symbols:**

No symbol table

**Groups cited:** *NXdata*, *NXgeometry*, *NXlog*, *NXsensor*

### **Structure:**

**description:** (optional) *NX\_CHAR*

Composition of the filter. Chemical formula can be specified separately.

This field was changed (2010-11-17) from an enumeration to a string since common usage showed a wider variety of use than a simple list. These are the items in the list at the time of the change: Beryllium | Pyrolytic Graphite | Graphite | Sapphire | Silicon | Supermirror.

**status:** (optional) *NX\_CHAR*

position with respect to in or out of the beam (choice of only “in” or “out”)

Any of these values:

- *in*: in the beam
- *out*: out of the beam

**temperature:** (optional) *NX\_FLOAT* {units=*NX\_TEMPERATURE*}

average/nominal filter temperature

**thickness:** (optional) *NX\_FLOAT* {units=*NX\_LENGTH*}

Thickness of the filter

**density:** (optional) *NX\_NUMBER* {units=*NX\_MASS\_DENSITY*}

mass density of the filter

**chemical\_formula:** (optional) *NX\_CHAR*

The chemical formula specified using CIF conventions. Abbreviated version of CIF standard:

- Only recognized element symbols may be used.
- Each element symbol is followed by a ‘count’ number. A count of ‘1’ may be omitted.
- A space or parenthesis must separate each cluster of (element symbol + count).
- Where a group of elements is enclosed in parentheses, the multiplier for the group must follow the closing parentheses. That is, all element and group multipliers are assumed to be printed as subscripted numbers.
- Unless the elements are ordered in a manner that corresponds to their chemical structure, the order of the elements within any group or moiety depends on whether or not carbon is present.
- If carbon is present, the order should be:
  - C, then H, then the other elements in alphabetical order of their symbol.
  - If carbon is not present, the elements are listed purely in alphabetic order of their symbol.
- This is the *Hill* system used by Chemical Abstracts.

**unit\_cell\_a:** (optional) *NX\_FLOAT* {units=*NX\_LENGTH*}

Unit cell lattice parameter: length of side a

**unit\_cell\_b:** (optional) *NX\_FLOAT* {units=*NX\_LENGTH*}

Unit cell lattice parameter: length of side b

**unit\_cell\_c:** (optional) *NX\_FLOAT* {units=*NX\_LENGTH*}

Unit cell lattice parameter: length of side c

**unit\_cell\_alpha:** (optional) *NX\_FLOAT* {units=*NX\_ANGLE*}

Unit cell lattice parameter: angle alpha

**unit\_cell\_beta:** (optional) *NX\_FLOAT* {units=*NX\_ANGLE*}

Unit cell lattice parameter: angle beta

**unit\_cell\_gamma:** (optional) *NX\_FLOAT* {units=*NX\_ANGLE*}

Unit cell lattice parameter: angle gamma

**unit\_cell\_volume[n\_comp]:** (optional) *NX\_FLOAT* {units=*NX\_VOLUME*}

Unit cell

**orientation\_matrix[n\_comp, 3, 3]:** (optional) *NX\_FLOAT*

Orientation matrix of single crystal filter using Busing-Levy convention: W. R. Busing and H. A. Levy (1967). Acta Cryst. 22, 457-464

**m\_value:** (optional) *NX\_FLOAT* {units=*NX\_DIMENSIONLESS*}

m value of supermirror filter

**substrate\_material:** (optional) *NX\_CHAR*

substrate material of supermirror filter

**substrate\_thickness:** (optional) *NX\_FLOAT* {units=*NX\_LENGTH*}

substrate thickness of supermirror filter

**coating\_material:** (optional) *NX\_CHAR*

coating material of supermirror filter

**substrate\_roughness:** (optional) *NX\_FLOAT* {units=*NX\_LENGTH*}

substrate roughness (RMS) of supermirror filter

**coating\_roughness[nsurf]:** (optional) *NX\_FLOAT* {units=*NX\_LENGTH*}

coating roughness (RMS) of supermirror filter

**GEOMETRY:** (optional) *NXgeometry*

Geometry of the filter

**transmission:** (optional) *NXdata*

Wavelength transmission profile of filter

**temperature\_log:** (optional) *NXlog*

Linked temperature\_log for the filter

**sensor\_type:** (optional) *NXsensor*

Sensor(s)used to monitor the filter temperature

**NXDL Source:** [https://github.com/nexusformat/definitions/blob/master/base\\_classes/NXfilter.nxdl.xml](https://github.com/nexusformat/definitions/blob/master/base_classes/NXfilter.nxdl.xml)

## NXflipper

**Status:**

base class, extends *NXObject*

**Description:**

A spin flipper.

**Symbols:**

No symbol table

**Groups cited:** none

**Structure:**

**type:** (optional) *NX\_CHAR*

Any of these values: coil | current-sheet

**flip\_turns:** (optional) *NX\_FLOAT* {units=*NX\_PER\_LENGTH*}

Linear density of turns (such as number of turns/cm) in flipping field coils

**comp\_turns:** (optional) *NX\_FLOAT* {units=*NX\_PER\_LENGTH*}

Linear density of turns (such as number of turns/cm) in compensating field coils

**guide\_turns:** (optional) *NX\_FLOAT* {units=*NX\_PER\_LENGTH*}

Linear density of turns (such as number of turns/cm) in guide field coils

**flip\_current:** (optional) *NX\_FLOAT* {units=*NX\_CURRENT*}

Flipping field coil current in “on” state”

**comp\_current:** (optional) *NX\_FLOAT* {units=*NX\_CURRENT*}

Compensating field coil current in “on” state”

**guide\_current:** (optional) *NX\_FLOAT* {units=*NX\_CURRENT*}

Guide field coil current in “on” state”

**thickness:** (optional) *NX\_FLOAT* {units=*NX\_LENGTH*}

thickness along path of neutron travel

**NXDL Source:** [https://github.com/nexusformat/definitions/blob/master/base\\_classes/NXflipper.nxdl.xml](https://github.com/nexusformat/definitions/blob/master/base_classes/NXflipper.nxdl.xml)

## **NXfresnel\_zone\_plate**

**Status:**

base class, extends *NXObject*

**Description:**

A fresnel zone plate

**Symbols:**

No symbol table

**Groups cited:** *NXtransformations*

**Structure:**

**focus\_parameters[]:** (optional) *NX\_FLOAT*

list of polynomial coefficients describing the focal length of the zone plate, in increasing powers of photon energy, that describes the focal length of the zone plate (in microns) at an X-ray photon energy (in electron volts).

**outer\_diameter:** (optional) *NX\_FLOAT* {units=*NX\_LENGTH*}

**outermost\_zone\_width:** (optional) *NX\_FLOAT* {units=*NX\_LENGTH*}

**central\_stop\_diameter:** (optional) *NX\_FLOAT* {units=*NX\_LENGTH*}

**fabrication:** (optional) *NX\_CHAR*

how the zone plate was manufactured

Any of these values: etched|plated|zone doubled|other

**zone\_height:** (optional) *NX\_FLOAT* {units=*NX\_LENGTH*}

**zone\_material:** (optional) *NX\_CHAR*

Material of the zones themselves

**zone\_support\_material:** (optional) *NX\_CHAR*

Material present between the zones. This is usually only present for the “zone doubled” fabrication process

**central\_stop\_material:** (optional) *NX\_CHAR*

**central\_stop\_thickness:** (optional) *NX\_FLOAT* {units=*NX\_LENGTH*}

**mask\_thickness:** (optional) *NX\_FLOAT* {units=*NX\_LENGTH*}

**mask\_material:** (optional) *NX\_CHAR*

If no mask is present, set mask\_thickness to 0 and omit the mask\_material field

**support\_membrane\_material:** (optional) *NX\_CHAR*

**support\_membrane\_thickness:** (optional) *NX\_FLOAT* {units=*NX\_LENGTH*}

**TRANSFORMATIONS:** (optional) *NXtransformations*

“Engineering” position of the fresnel zone plate

**NXDL Source:** [https://github.com/nexusformat/definitions/blob/master/base\\_classes/NXfresnel\\_zone\\_plate.nxdl.xml](https://github.com/nexusformat/definitions/blob/master/base_classes/NXfresnel_zone_plate.nxdl.xml)

## NXgeometry

**Status:**

base class, extends *NXObject*

**DEPRECATED:** as decided at 2014 NIAC meeting, convert to use *NXtransformations*

**Description:**

legacy class - recommend to use *NXtransformations* now

It is recommended that instances of *NXgeometry* be converted to use *NXtransformations*.

This is the description for a general position of a component. It is recommended to name an instance of *NXgeometry* as “geometry” to aid in the use of the definition in simulation codes such as McStas. Also, in HDF, linked items must share the same name. However, it might not be possible or practical in all situations.

**Symbols:**

No symbol table

**Groups cited:** *NXorientation*, *NXshape*, *NXtranslation*

**Structure:**

**description:** (optional) *NX\_CHAR*

Optional description/label. Probably only present if we are an additional reference point for components rather than the location of a real component.

**component\_index:** (optional) *NX\_INT*

Position of the component along the beam path. The sample is at 0, components upstream have negative component\_index, components downstream have positive component\_index.

**SHAPE:** (optional) *NXshape*

shape/size information of component

**TRANSLATION:** (optional) *NXtranslation*

translation of component

**ORIENTATION:** (optional) *NXorientation*

orientation of component

**NXDL Source:** [https://github.com/nexusformat/definitions/blob/master/base\\_classes/NXgeometry.nxdl.xml](https://github.com/nexusformat/definitions/blob/master/base_classes/NXgeometry.nxdl.xml)

## NXgrating

### Status:

base class, extends [NXobject](#)

### Description:

A diffraction grating, as could be used in a soft X-ray monochromator

### Symbols:

No symbol table

### Groups cited:

#### Structure:

**angles[2]:** (optional) [NX\\_FLOAT](#) {units=[NX\\_ANGLE](#)}

Blaze or trapezoidal angles, with the angle of the upstream facing edge listed first. Blazed gratings can be identified by the low value of the first-listed angle.

**period[]:** (optional) [NX\\_FLOAT](#) {units=[NX\\_LENGTH](#)}

List of polynomial coefficients describing the spatial separation of lines/grooves as a function of position along the grating, in increasing powers of position. Gratings which do not have variable line spacing will only have a single coefficient (constant).

**duty\_cycle:** (optional) [NX\\_FLOAT](#) {units=[NX\\_UNITLESS](#)}

**depth:** (optional) [NX\\_FLOAT](#) {units=[NX\\_LENGTH](#)}

**diffraction\_order:** (optional) [NX\\_INT](#) {units=[NX\\_UNITLESS](#)}

**deflection\_angle:** (optional) [NX\\_FLOAT](#) {units=[NX\\_ANGLE](#)}

Angle between the incident beam and the utilised outgoing beam.

**interior\_atmosphere:** (optional) [NX\\_CHAR](#)

Any of these values: vacuum | helium | argon

**substrate\_material:** (optional) [NX\\_CHAR](#)

**substrate\_density:** (optional) [NX\\_FLOAT](#) {units=[NX\\_MASS\\_DENSITY](#)}

**substrate\_thickness:** (optional) [NX\\_FLOAT](#) {units=[NX\\_LENGTH](#)}

**coating\_material:** (optional) [NX\\_CHAR](#)

**substrate\_roughness:** (optional) [NX\\_FLOAT](#) {units=[NX\\_LENGTH](#)}

**coating\_roughness:** (optional) [NX\\_FLOAT](#) {units=[NX\\_LENGTH](#)}

**layer\_thickness:** (optional) [NX\\_FLOAT](#) {units=[NX\\_LENGTH](#)}

An array describing the thickness of each layer

**shape:** (optional) [NXshape](#)

A NXshape group describing the shape of the mirror

**figure\_data:** (optional) [NXdata](#)

Numerical description of the surface figure of the mirror.

**TRANSFORMATIONS:** (optional) [NXtransformations](#)

“Engineering” position of the grating

---

**NXDL Source:** [https://github.com/nexusformat/definitions/blob/master/base\\_classes/NXgrating.nxdl.xml](https://github.com/nexusformat/definitions/blob/master/base_classes/NXgrating.nxdl.xml)

## NXguide

### Status:

base class, extends *NXObject*

### Description:

A neutron optical element to direct the path of the beam.

*NXguide* is used by neutron instruments to describe a guide consists of several mirrors building a shape through which neutrons can be guided or directed. The simplest such form is box shaped although elliptical guides are gaining in popularity. The individual parts of a guide usually have common characteristics but there are cases where they are different. For example, a neutron guide might consist of 2 or 4 coated walls or a supermirror bender with multiple, coated vanes.

To describe polarizing supermirrors such as used in neutron reflection, it may be necessary to revise this definition of *NXguide* to include *NXpolarizer* and/or *NXmirror*.

When even greater complexity exists in the definition of what constitutes a *guide*, it has been suggested that *NXguide* be redefined as a *NXcollection* of *NXmirror* each having their own *NXgeometry* describing their location(s).

For the more general case when describing mirrors, consider using *NXmirror*.

NOTE: The NeXus International Advisory Committee welcomes comments for revision and improvement of this definition of *NXguide*.

### Symbols:

**nsurf:** number of reflecting surfaces

**nwl:** number of wavelengths

### Groups cited:

#### Structure:

**description:** (optional) *NX\_CHAR*

A description of this particular instance of NXguide.

**incident\_angle:** (optional) *NX\_FLOAT* {units=*NX\_ANGLE*}

TODO: documentation needed

**bend\_angle\_x:** (optional) *NX\_FLOAT* {units=*NX\_ANGLE*}

TODO: documentation needed

**bend\_angle\_y:** (optional) *NX\_FLOAT* {units=*NX\_ANGLE*}

TODO: documentation needed

**interior\_atmosphere:** (optional) *NX\_CHAR*

Any of these values: vacuum|helium|argon

**external\_material:** (optional) *NX\_CHAR*

external material outside substrate

**m\_value[nsurf]:** (optional) *NX\_FLOAT*

The  $m$  value for a supermirror, which defines the supermirror regime in multiples of the critical angle of Nickel.

**substrate\_material[nsurf]:** (optional) *NX\_FLOAT*

TODO: documentation needed

**substrate\_thickness[nsurf]:** (optional) *NX\_FLOAT* {units=*NX\_LENGTH*}

TODO: documentation needed

**coating\_material[nsurf]:** (optional) *NX\_FLOAT*

TODO: documentation needed

**substrate\_roughness[nsurf]:** (optional) *NX\_FLOAT* {units=*NX\_LENGTH*}

TODO: documentation needed

**coating\_roughness[nsurf]:** (optional) *NX\_FLOAT* {units=*NX\_LENGTH*}

TODO: documentation needed

**number\_sections:** (optional) *NX\_INT* {units=*NX\_UNITLESS*}

number of substrate sections (also called `nsurf` as an index in the NXguide specification)

**GEOMETRY:** (optional) *NXgeometry*

TODO: Explain what this NXgeometry group means. What is intended here?

**reflectivity:** (optional) *NXdata*

Reflectivity as function of reflecting surface and wavelength

**@signal:** (optional) *NX\_CHAR*

Obligatory value: data

**@axes:** (optional) *NX\_CHAR*

Obligatory value: surface wavelength

**@surface\_indices:** (optional) *NX\_CHAR*

Obligatory value: 0

**@wavelength\_indices:** (optional) *NX\_CHAR*

Obligatory value: 1

**data[nsurf, nwl]:** (optional) *NX\_NUMBER*

reflectivity of each surface as a function of wavelength

**surface[nsurf]:** (optional) *NX\_NUMBER* {units=*NX\_ANY*}

List of surfaces. Probably best to use index numbers but the specification is very loose.

**wavelength[nwl]:** (optional) *NX\_NUMBER* {units=*NX\_WAVELENGTH*}

wavelengths at which reflectivity was measured

**NXDL Source:** [https://github.com/nexusformat/definitions/blob/master/base\\_classes/NXguide.nxdl.xml](https://github.com/nexusformat/definitions/blob/master/base_classes/NXguide.nxdl.xml)

## **NXinsertion\_device**

**Status:**

base class, extends *NXObject*

**Description:**

An insertion device, as used in a synchrotron light source.

**Symbols:**

No symbol table

**Groups cited:** *NXdata*, *NXgeometry***Structure:**

**type:** (optional) *NX\_CHAR*

Any of these values: undulator|wiggler

**gap:** (optional) *NX\_FLOAT* {units=*NX\_LENGTH*}

separation between opposing pairs of magnetic poles

**taper:** (optional) *NX\_FLOAT* {units=*NX\_ANGLE*}

angular of gap difference between upstream and downstream ends of the insertion device

**phase:** (optional) *NX\_FLOAT* {units=*NX\_ANGLE*}

**poles:** (optional) *NX\_INT* {units=*NX\_UNITLESS*}

number of poles

**magnetic\_wavelength:** (optional) *NX\_FLOAT* {units=*NX\_WAVELENGTH*}

**k:** (optional) *NX\_FLOAT* {units=*NX\_DIMENSIONLESS*}

beam displacement parameter

**length:** (optional) *NX\_FLOAT* {units=*NX\_LENGTH*}

length of insertion device

**power:** (optional) *NX\_FLOAT* {units=*NX\_POWER*}

total power delivered by insertion device

**energy:** (optional) *NX\_FLOAT* {units=*NX\_ENERGY*}

energy of peak intensity in output spectrum

**bandwidth:** (optional) *NX\_FLOAT* {units=*NX\_ENERGY*}

bandwidth of peak energy

**harmonic:** (optional) *NX\_INT* {units=*NX\_UNITLESS*}

harmonic number of peak

**spectrum:** (optional) *NXdata*

spectrum of insertion device

**GEOMETRY:** (optional) *NXgeometry*

“Engineering” position of insertion device

**NXDL Source:** [https://github.com/nexusformat/definitions/blob/master/base\\_classes/NXinsertion\\_device.nxdl.xml](https://github.com/nexusformat/definitions/blob/master/base_classes/NXinsertion_device.nxdl.xml)

## NXinstrument

### Status:

base class, extends [NXobject](#)

### Description:

Collection of the components of the instrument or beamline.

Template of instrument descriptions comprising various beamline components. Each component will also be a NeXus group defined by its distance from the sample. Negative distances represent beamline components that are before the sample while positive distances represent components that are after the sample. This device allows the unique identification of beamline components in a way that is valid for both reactor and pulsed instrumentation.

### Symbols:

No symbol table

**Groups cited:** [NXaperture](#), [NXattenuator](#), [NXbeam\\_stop](#), [NXbeam](#), [NXbending\\_magnet](#), [NXcapillary](#), [NXcollection](#), [NXcollimator](#), [NXcrystal](#), [NXdetector\\_group](#), [NXdetector](#), [NXdisk\\_chopper](#), [NXevent\\_data](#), [NXfermi\\_chopper](#), [NXfilter](#), [NXflipper](#), [NXguide](#), [NXinsertion\\_device](#), [NXmirror](#), [NXmoderator](#), [NXmonochromator](#), [NXpolarizer](#), [NXpositioner](#), [NXsource](#), [NXtransformations](#), [NXvelocity\\_selector](#), [NXxraylens](#)

### Structure:

**name:** (optional) [NX\\_CHAR](#)

Name of instrument

**@short\_name:** (optional) [NX\\_CHAR](#)

short name for instrument, perhaps the acronym

**APERTURE:** (optional) [NXaperture](#)

**ATTENUATOR:** (optional) [NXattenuator](#)

**BEAM:** (optional) [NXbeam](#)

**BEAM\_STOP:** (optional) [NXbeam\\_stop](#)

**BENDING\_MAGNET:** (optional) [NXbending\\_magnet](#)

**COLLIMATOR:** (optional) [NXcollimator](#)

**COLLECTION:** (optional) [NXcollection](#)

**CAPILLARY:** (optional) [NXcapillary](#)

**CRYSTAL:** (optional) [NXcrystal](#)

**DETECTOR:** (optional) [NXdetector](#)

**DETECTOR\_GROUP:** (optional) [NXdetector\\_group](#)

**DISK\_CHOPPER:** (optional) [NXdisk\\_chopper](#)

**EVENT\_DATA:** (optional) [NXevent\\_data](#)

**FERMI\_CHOPPER:** (optional) [NXfermi\\_chopper](#)

**FILTER:** (optional) [NXfilter](#)

**FLIPPER:** (optional) [NXflipper](#)

**GUIDE:** (optional) [NXguide](#)

**INSERTION\_DEVICE:** (optional) *NXinsertion\_device*

**MIRROR:** (optional) *NXmirror*

**MODERATOR:** (optional) *NXmoderator*

**MONOCHROMATOR:** (optional) *NXmonochromator*

**POLARIZER:** (optional) *NXpolarizer*

**POSITIONER:** (optional) *NXpositioner*

**SOURCE:** (optional) *NXsource*

**DIFFRACTOMETER:** (optional) *NXtransformations*

**VELOCITY\_SELECTOR:** (optional) *NXvelocity\_selector*

**XRAYLENS:** (optional) *NXxraylens*

**NXDL Source:** [https://github.com/nexusformat/definitions/blob/master/base\\_classes/NXinstrument.nxdl.xml](https://github.com/nexusformat/definitions/blob/master/base_classes/NXinstrument.nxdl.xml)

## NXlog

### Status:

base class, extends *NXObject*

### Description:

Information recorded as a function of time.

Description of information that is recorded against time. There are two common use cases for this:

- When logging data such as temperature during a run
- When data is taken in streaming mode data acquisition, i.e. just timestamp, value pairs are stored and correlated later in data reduction with other data,

In both cases, NXlog contains the logged or streamed values and the times at which they were measured as elapsed time since a starting time recorded in ISO8601 format. The time units are specified in the units attribute. An optional scaling attribute can be used to accomodate non standard clocks.

This method of storing logged data helps to distinguish instances in which a variable is a dimension scale of the data, in which case it is stored in an *NXdata* group, and instances in which it is logged during the run, when it should be stored in an *NXlog* group.

In order to make random access to timestamped data faster there is an optional array pair of *cue\_timestamp\_zero* and *cue\_index*. The *cue\_timestamp\_zero* will contain coarser timestamps than in the time array, say every five minutes. The *cue\_index* will then contain the index into the time,value pair of arrays for that coarser *cue\_timestamp\_zero*.

### Symbols:

No symbol table

### Groups cited:

### Structure:

**time:** (optional) *NX\_NUMBER* {units=*NX\_TIME*}

Time of logged entry. The times are relative to the “start” attribute and in the units specified in the “units” attribute. Please note that absolute timestamps under unix are relative to 1970-01-01T:00:00.

The scaling\_factor, when present, has to be applied to the time values in order to arrive at the units specified in the units attribute. The scaling\_factor allows for arbitrary time units such as ticks of some hardware clock.

**@start:** (optional) *NX\_DATE\_TIME*

**@scaling\_factor:** (optional) *NX\_NUMBER*

**value:** (optional) *NX\_NUMBER* {units=*NX\_ANY*}

Array of logged value, such as temperature. If this is a single value the dimensionality is nEntries. However, NXlog can also be used to store multi dimensional time stamped data such as images. In this example the dimensionality of values would be value[nEntries,xdim,ydim].

**raw\_value:** (optional) *NX\_NUMBER* {units=*NX\_ANY*}

Array of raw information, such as thermocouple voltage

**description:** (optional) *NX\_CHAR*

Description of logged value

**average\_value:** (optional) *NX\_FLOAT* {units=*NX\_ANY*}

**average\_value\_error:** (optional) *NX\_FLOAT* {units=*NX\_ANY*}

estimated uncertainty (often used: standard deviation) of average\_value

**minimum\_value:** (optional) *NX\_FLOAT* {units=*NX\_ANY*}

**maximum\_value:** (optional) *NX\_FLOAT* {units=*NX\_ANY*}

**duration:** (optional) *NX\_FLOAT* {units=*NX\_ANY*}

Total time log was taken

**cue\_timestamp\_zero:** (optional) *NX\_NUMBER* {units=*NX\_TIME*}

Timestamps matching the corresponding cue\_index into the time, value pair.

**@start:** (optional) *NX\_DATE\_TIME*

If missing start is assumed to be the same as for “time”.

**@scaling\_factor:** (optional) *NX\_NUMBER*

If missing start is assumed to be the same as for “time”.

**cue\_index:** (optional) *NX\_INT*

Index into the time, value pair matching the corresponding cue\_timestamp\_zero.

**NXDL Source:** [https://github.com/nexusformat/definitions/blob/master/base\\_classes/NXlog.nxdl.xml](https://github.com/nexusformat/definitions/blob/master/base_classes/NXlog.nxdl.xml)

## NXmirror

### Status:

base class, extends *NXObject*

### Description:

A beamline mirror or supermirror.

### Symbols:

No symbol table

**Groups cited:** *NXdata*, *NXgeometry*, *NXshape*

**Structure:**

**type:** (optional) *NX\_CHAR*

Any of these values:

- single: mirror with a single material as a reflecting surface
- multi: mirror with stacked, multiple layers as a reflecting surface

**description:** (optional) *NX\_CHAR*

description of this mirror

**incident\_angle:** (optional) *NX\_FLOAT* {units=*NX\_ANGLE*}

**bend\_angle\_x:** (optional) *NX\_FLOAT* {units=*NX\_ANGLE*}

**bend\_angle\_y:** (optional) *NX\_FLOAT* {units=*NX\_ANGLE*}

**interior\_atmosphere:** (optional) *NX\_CHAR*

Any of these values: vacuum | helium | argon

**external\_material:** (optional) *NX\_CHAR*

external material outside substrate

**m\_value:** (optional) *NX\_FLOAT* {units=*NX\_UNITLESS*}

The m value for a supermirror, which defines the supermirror regime in multiples of the critical angle of Nickel.

**substrate\_material:** (optional) *NX\_CHAR*

**substrate\_density:** (optional) *NX\_FLOAT* {units=*NX\_MASS\_DENSITY*}

**substrate\_thickness:** (optional) *NX\_FLOAT* {units=*NX\_LENGTH*}

**coating\_material:** (optional) *NX\_CHAR*

**substrate\_roughness:** (optional) *NX\_FLOAT* {units=*NX\_LENGTH*}

**coating\_roughness:** (optional) *NX\_FLOAT* {units=*NX\_LENGTH*}

**even\_layer\_material:** (optional) *NX\_CHAR*

**even\_layer\_density:** (optional) *NX\_FLOAT* {units=*NX\_MASS\_DENSITY*}

**odd\_layer\_material:** (optional) *NX\_CHAR*

**odd\_layer\_density:** (optional) *NX\_FLOAT* {units=*NX\_MASS\_DENSITY*}

**layer\_thickness:** (optional) *NX\_FLOAT* {units=*NX\_LENGTH*}

An array describing the thickness of each layer

**GEOMETRY:** (optional) *NXgeometry*

**reflectivity:** (optional) *NXdata*

Reflectivity as function of wavelength

**shape:** (optional) *NXshape*

A NXshape group describing the shape of the mirror

**figure\_data:** (optional) *NXdata*

Numerical description of the surface figure of the mirror.

**NXDL Source:** [https://github.com/nexusformat/definitions/blob/master/base\\_classes/NXmirror.nxdl.xml](https://github.com/nexusformat/definitions/blob/master/base_classes/NXmirror.nxdl.xml)

## NXmoderator

### Status:

base class, extends *NXObject*

### Description:

A neutron moderator

### Symbols:

No symbol table

**Groups cited:** *NXdata*, *NXgeometry*, *NXlog*

### Structure:

**distance:** (optional) *NX\_FLOAT* {units=*NX\_LENGTH*}

Effective distance as seen by measuring radiation

**type:** (optional) *NX\_CHAR*

Any of these values:

- H2O
- D2O
- Liquid H2
- Liquid CH4
- Liquid D2
- Solid D2
- C
- Solid CH4
- Solid H2

**poison\_depth:** (optional) *NX\_FLOAT* {units=*NX\_LENGTH*}

**coupled:** (optional) *NX\_BOOLEAN*

whether the moderator is coupled

**coupling\_material:** (optional) *NX\_CHAR*

The material used for coupling. Usually Cd.

**poison\_material:** (optional) *NX\_CHAR*

Any of these values: Gd | Cd

**temperature:** (optional) *NX\_FLOAT* {units=*NX\_TEMPERATURE*}

average/nominal moderator temperature

**GEOMETRY:** (optional) *NXgeometry*

“Engineering” position of moderator

**temperature\_log:** (optional) *NXlog*

log file of moderator temperature

**pulse\_shape:** (optional) *NXdata*

moderator pulse shape

**NXDL Source:** [https://github.com/nexusformat/definitions/blob/master/base\\_classes/NXmoderator.nxdl.xml](https://github.com/nexusformat/definitions/blob/master/base_classes/NXmoderator.nxdl.xml)

## NXmonitor

### Status:

base class, extends *NXObject*

### Description:

A monitor of incident beam data.

It is similar to the *NXdata* groups containing monitor data and its associated dimension scale, e.g. time\_of\_flight or wavelength in pulsed neutron instruments. However, it may also include integrals, or scalar monitor counts, which are often used in both in both pulsed and steady-state instrumentation.

### Symbols:

No symbol table

**Groups cited:** *NXgeometry*, *NXlog*

### Structure:

**mode:** (optional) *NX\_CHAR*

Count to a preset value based on either clock time (timer) or received monitor counts (monitor).

Any of these values: monitor|timer

**start\_time:** (optional) *NX\_DATE\_TIME*

Starting time of measurement

**end\_time:** (optional) *NX\_DATE\_TIME*

Ending time of measurement

**preset:** (optional) *NX\_NUMBER* {units=*NX\_ANY*}

preset value for time or monitor

**distance:** (optional) *NX\_FLOAT* {units=*NX\_LENGTH*}

Distance of monitor from sample

**range[2]:** (optional) *NX\_FLOAT* {units=*NX\_ANY*}

Range (X-axis, Time-of-flight, etc.) over which the integral was calculated

**nominal:** (optional) *NX\_NUMBER* {units=*NX\_ANY*}

Nominal reading to be used for normalisation purposes.

**integral:** (optional) *NX\_NUMBER* {units=*NX\_ANY*}

Total integral monitor counts

**type:** (optional) *NX\_CHAR*

Any of these values: Fission Chamber|Scintillator

**time\_of\_flight[ref( efficiency )]:** (optional) *NX\_FLOAT* {units=*NX\_TIME\_OF\_FLIGHT*}  
Time-of-flight

**efficiency[ref(i)]:** (optional) *NX\_NUMBER* {units=*NX\_DIMENSIONLESS*}  
Monitor efficiency

**data[n]:** (optional) *NX\_NUMBER* {units=*NX\_ANY*}  
Monitor data

**sampled\_fraction:** (optional) *NX\_FLOAT* {units=*NX\_DIMENSIONLESS*}  
Proportion of incident beam sampled by the monitor (0<x<1)

**count\_time:** (optional) *NX\_FLOAT* {units=*NX\_TIME*}  
Elapsed actual counting time, can be an array of size np when scanning. This is not the difference of the calendar time but the time the instrument was really counting, without pauses or times lost due beam unavailability

**integral\_log:** (optional) *NXlog*  
Time variation of monitor counts

**GEOMETRY:** (optional) *NXgeometry*  
Geometry of the monitor

**NXDL Source:** [https://github.com/nexusformat/definitions/blob/master/base\\_classes/NXmonitor.nxdl.xml](https://github.com/nexusformat/definitions/blob/master/base_classes/NXmonitor.nxdl.xml)

## NXmonochromator

### Status:

base class, extends *NXObject*

### Description:

A wavelength defining device.

This is a base class for everything which selects a wavelength or energy, be it a monochromator crystal, a velocity selector, an undulator or whatever.

The expected units are:

- wavelength: angstrom
- energy: eV

### Symbols:

No symbol table

### Groups cited:

*NXcrystal*, *NXdata*, *NXgeometry*, *NXgrating*, *NXvelocity\_selector*

### Structure:

**wavelength:** (optional) *NX\_FLOAT* {units=*NX\_WAVELENGTH*}

wavelength selected

**wavelength\_error:** (optional) *NX\_FLOAT* {units=*NX\_WAVELENGTH*}

wavelength standard deviation

**energy:** (optional) *NX\_FLOAT* {units=*NX\_ENERGY*}

energy selected

**energy\_error:** (optional) *NX\_FLOAT* {units=*NX\_ENERGY*}

energy standard deviation

**distribution:** (optional) *NXdata*

**geometry:** (optional) *NXgeometry*

**CRYSTAL:** (optional) *NXcrystal*

Use as many crystals as necessary to describe

**VELOCITY\_SELECTOR:** (optional) *NXvelocity\_selector*

**GRATING:** (optional) *NXgrating*

For diffraction grating based monochromators

**NXDL Source:** [https://github.com/nexusformat/definitions/blob/master/base\\_classes/NXmonochromator.nxdl.xml](https://github.com/nexusformat/definitions/blob/master/base_classes/NXmonochromator.nxdl.xml)

## NXnote

### Status:

base class, extends *NXObject*

### Description:

Any additional freeform information not covered by the other base classes.

This class can be used to store additional information in a NeXus file e.g. pictures, movies, audio, additional text logs

### Symbols:

No symbol table

### Groups cited:

### Structure:

**author:** (optional) *NX\_CHAR*

Author or creator of note

**date:** (optional) *NX\_DATE\_TIME*

Date note created/added

**type:** (optional) *NX\_CHAR*

Mime content type of note data field e.g. image/jpeg, text/plain, text/html

**file\_name:** (optional) *NX\_CHAR*

Name of original file name if note was read from an external source

**description:** (optional) *NX\_CHAR*

Title of an image or other details of the note

**sequence\_index:** (optional) *NX\_POSINT*

Sequence index of note, for placing a sequence of multiple **NXnote** groups in an order. Starts with 1.

**data:** (optional) *NX\_BINARY*

Binary note data - if text, line terminator is [CR][LF].

**NXDL Source:** [https://github.com/nexusformat/definitions/blob/master/base\\_classes/NXnote.nxdl.xml](https://github.com/nexusformat/definitions/blob/master/base_classes/NXnote.nxdl.xml)

## NXObject

### Status:

base class, extends none

### Description:

This is the base object of NeXus

### Symbols:

No symbol table

### Groups cited:

### Structure:

**NXDL Source:** [https://github.com/nexusformat/definitions/blob/master/base\\_classes/NXObject.nxdl.xml](https://github.com/nexusformat/definitions/blob/master/base_classes/NXObject.nxdl.xml)

## NXoff\_geometry

### Status:

base class, extends *NXObject*

### Description:

Geometry (shape) description. The format closely matches the Object File Format (OFF) which can be output by most CAD software. It can be used to describe the shape of any beamline component, including detectors. In the case of detectors it can be used to define the shape of a single pixel, or, if the pixel shapes are non-uniform, to describe the shape of the whole detector.

### Symbols:

These symbols will be used below.

**i**: number of vertices in the shape

**k**: number of faces in the shape

**l**: number faces which are detecting surfaces or form the boundary of detecting volumes

### Groups cited:

### Structure:

**vertices[i, 3]**: (optional) *NX\_NUMBER* {units=*NX\_LENGTH*}

List of x,y,z coordinates for vertices. The origin of the coordinates is the position of the parent component, for example the NXdetector which the geometry describes. If the shape describes a single pixel for a detector with uniform pixel shape then the origin is the position of each pixel as described by the x/y/z\_pixel\_offset datasets in NXdetector.

**winding\_order[j]**: (optional) *NX\_INT*

List of indices of vertices in the vertices dataset to form each face, right-hand rule for face normal.

**faces[k]**: (optional) *NX\_INT*

The start index in `winding_order` for each face.

#### **detector\_faces[1, 2]: (optional) *NX\_INT***

List of pairs of index in the “faces” dataset and detector id. Face IDs in the first column, and corresponding detector IDs in the second column. This dataset should only be used only if the `NXoff_geometry` group is describing a detector. Note, the face indices must be in ascending order but need not be consecutive as not every face in faces need be a detecting surface or boundary of detecting volume. Can use multiple entries with the same detector id to define detector volumes.

**NXDL Source:** [https://github.com/nexusformat/definitions/blob/master/base\\_classes/NXoff\\_geometry.nxdl.xml](https://github.com/nexusformat/definitions/blob/master/base_classes/NXoff_geometry.nxdl.xml)

## **NXorientation**

### **Status:**

base class, extends `NXObject`

### **Description:**

legacy class - recommend to use `NXtransformations` now

Description for a general orientation of a component - used by `NXgeometry`

### **Symbols:**

No symbol table

### **Groups cited:** `NXgeometry`

### **Structure:**

#### **value[numobj, 6]: (optional) *NX\_FLOAT* {units=*NX\_UNITLESS*}**

The orientation information is stored as direction cosines. The direction cosines will be between the local coordinate directions and the reference directions (to origin or relative NXgeometry). Calling the local unit vectors ( $x'$ , $y'$ , $z'$ ) and the reference unit vectors ( $x$ , $y$ , $z$ ) the six numbers will be [ $x'$  dot  $x$ ,  $x'$  dot  $y$ ,  $x'$  dot  $z$ ,  $y'$  dot  $x$ ,  $y'$  dot  $y$ ,  $y'$  dot  $z$ ] where “dot” is the scalar dot product (cosine of the angle between the unit vectors). The unit vectors in both the local and reference coordinates are right-handed and orthonormal.

The pair of groups `NXtranslation` and `NXorientation` together describe the position of a component.

#### **GEOMETRY: (optional) *NXgeometry***

Link to another object if we are using relative positioning, else absent

**NXDL Source:** [https://github.com/nexusformat/definitions/blob/master/base\\_classes/NXorientation.nxdl.xml](https://github.com/nexusformat/definitions/blob/master/base_classes/NXorientation.nxdl.xml)

## **NXparameters**

### **Status:**

base class, extends `NXObject`

### **Description:**

Container for parameters, usually used in processing or analysis.

### **Symbols:**

No symbol table

**Groups cited:** none

**Structure:**

**term:** (optional) *NX\_CHAR*

A parameter (also known as a term) that is used in or results from processing.

**@units:** (optional) *NX\_CHAR*

**NXDL Source:** [https://github.com/nexusformat/definitions/blob/master/base\\_classes/NXparameters.nxdl.xml](https://github.com/nexusformat/definitions/blob/master/base_classes/NXparameters.nxdl.xml)

## NXpdb

**Status:**

base class, extends *NXObject*

**Description:**

A NeXus transliteration of a PDB file, to be validated only as a PDB rather than in NeXus.

Use *NXpdb* to incorporate the information in an arbitrary PDB into a NeXus file.

The main suggestion is to use this as a container class for a PDB entry to describe a sample in NXsample, but it may be more appropriate to place this higher in the hierarchy, say in NXentry.

The structure has to follow the structure of a PDB with each PDB data block mapped to a NeXus group of class NXpdb, using a lowercase version of the data block name as the name of the NeXus group, each PDB category in that data block mapped to a NeXus group of class NXpdb and with each PDB column mapped to a NeXus field. Each column in a looped PDB category should always be presented as a 1-dimensional array. The columns in an unlooped PDB category should be presented as scalar values. If a PDB category specifies particular units for columns, the same units should be used for the corresponding fields.

A PDB entry is unambiguous when all information is carried as text. All text data should be presented as quoted strings, with the quote marks except for the null values “.” or “?”

For clarity in NXpdb form, numeric data may be presented using the numeric types specified in the mmcif dictionary. In that case, if a PDB null value, “.” or “?”, is contained in a numeric column, the IEEE nan should be used for “?” and the IEEE inf should be used for “.”.

An arbitrary DDL2 CIF file can be represented in NeXus using NXpdb. However, if save frames are required, an NXpdb\_class attribute with the value “CBF\_cbfsf” is required for each NeXus group representing a save frame. NXpdb attributes are not required for other CIF components, but may be used to provide internal documentation.

The nesting of NXpdb groups and datasets that correspond to a CIF with two categories and one save-frame, including the NXpdb\_class attributes is:

```
(datablock1) :NXpdb
  @NXpdb_class:CBF_cbfdb
  (category1) :NXpdb
    @NXpdb_class:CBF_cbfcat
    (column_name1) :[...]
    (column_name2) :[...]
    (column_name3) :[...]
    ...
  (category2) :NXpdb
    @NXpdb_class:CBF_cbfcat
    (column_name4) :[...]
```

(continues on next page)

(continued from previous page)

```
(column_name5) : [ . . . ]
(column_name6) : [ . . . ]
. . .
(saveframe1) : NXpdb
@NXpdb_class:CBF_cbfsf
(category3) : NXpdb
@NXpdb_class:CBF_cbfcat
(column_name7) : [ . . . ]
(column_name8) : [ . . . ]
(column_name9) : [ . . . ]
. . .
. . .
. . .
```

For example, a PDB entry that begins:

```
data_1YVA
#
_entry.id    1YVA
#
_audit_conform.dict_name      mmcif_pdbx.dic
_audit_conform.dict_version   5.279
_audit_conform.dict_location  http://mmcif.pdb.org/dictionaries/ascii/mmcif_
→pdbx.dic
#
loop_
_database_2.database_id
_database_2.database_code
PDB    1YVA
RCSB  RCSB031959
WWPDB D_1000031959
#
```

would produce:

```
sample:NXsample
1yva:NXpdb
entry:NXpdb
id:"1YVA"
audit_conform:NXpdb
dict_name:"mmcif_pdbx.dic"
dict_version:"5.279"
dict_location:"http://mmcif.pdb.org/dictionaries/ascii/mmcif_pdbx.
→dic"
database_2:NXpdb
database_id:[ "PDB", "RCSB", "WWPDB" ]
database_code:[ "1YVA", "RCSB031959", "D_1000031959" ]
```

another example is the following excerpt from pdb entry 9ins, giving the sequences of the two chains:

```
loop_
_entity_poly.entity_id
_entity_poly.nstd_linkage
_entity_poly.nstd_monomer
_entity_poly.pdbx_seq_one_letter_code
_entity_poly.pdbx_seq_one_letter_code_can
_entity_poly.type
```

(continues on next page)

(continued from previous page)

```

1 no no GIVEQCCTSICSLYQLENYCN GIVEQCCTSICSLYQLENYCN polypeptide (L)
2 no no FVNQHLCGSHLVEALYLVCGERGFFYTPKA FVNQHLCGSHLVEALYLVCGERGFFYTPKA
polypeptide (L)

```

which converts to:

```

entity_poly:NXpdb
@NXpdb_class:CBF_cbfcat
entity_id:["1", "2"]
nstd_linkage:["no", "no"]
nstd_monomer:["no", "no"]
pdbox_seq_one_letter_code:["GIVEQCCTSICSLYQLENYCN",
←"FVNQHLCGSHLVEALYLVCGERGFFYTPKA"]
pdbox_seq_one_letter_code_can:["GIVEQCCTSICSLYQLENYCN",
←"FVNQHLCGSHLVEALYLVCGERGFFYTPKA"]
type:["polypeptide (L)", "polypeptide (L)"]

```

### Symbols:

No symbol table

### Groups cited:

none

### Structure:

**NXDL Source:** [https://github.com/nexusformat/definitions/blob/master/base\\_classes/NXpdb.nxdl.xml](https://github.com/nexusformat/definitions/blob/master/base_classes/NXpdb.nxdl.xml)

## NXpinhole

### Status:

base class, extends *NXObject*

### Description:

A simple pinhole.

For more complex geometries, *NXaperture* should be used.

### Symbols:

No symbol table

### Groups cited:

none

### Structure:

**depends\_on:** (optional) *NX\_CHAR*

Points to the path of the last element in the geometry chain that places this object in space. When followed through that chain is supposed to end at an element depending on ":" i.e. the origin of the coordinate system. If desired the location of the slit can also be described relative to an NXbeam, which will allow a simple description of a non-centred pinhole.

**diameter:** (optional) *NX\_NUMBER* {units=*NX\_LENGTH*}

Size of the circular hole defining the transmitted beam size.

**NXDL Source:** [https://github.com/nexusformat/definitions/blob/master/base\\_classes/NXpinhole.nxdl.xml](https://github.com/nexusformat/definitions/blob/master/base_classes/NXpinhole.nxdl.xml)

## NXpolarizer

### Status:

base class, extends *NXObject*

### Description:

A spin polarizer.

### Symbols:

No symbol table

### Groups cited:

### Structure:

**type:** (optional) *NX\_CHAR*

one of these values: “crystal”, “supermirror”, “3He”

**composition:** (optional) *NX\_CHAR*

description of the composition of the polarizing material

**reflection[3]:** (optional) *NX\_INT* {units=*NX\_UNITLESS*}

[hkl] values of nominal reflection

**efficiency:** (optional) *NX\_FLOAT* {units=*NX\_DIMENSIONLESS*}

polarizing efficiency

**NXDL Source:** [https://github.com/nexusformat/definitions/blob/master/base\\_classes/NXpolarizer.nxdl.xml](https://github.com/nexusformat/definitions/blob/master/base_classes/NXpolarizer.nxdl.xml)

## NXpositioner

### Status:

base class, extends *NXObject*

### Description:

A generic positioner such as a motor or piezo-electric transducer.

### Symbols:

No symbol table

### Groups cited:

### Structure:

**name:** (optional) *NX\_CHAR*

symbolic or mnemonic name (one word)

**description:** (optional) *NX\_CHAR*

description of positioner

**value[n]:** (optional) *NX\_NUMBER* {units=*NX\_ANY*}

best known value of positioner - need [n] as may be scanned

**raw\_value[n]:** (optional) *NX\_NUMBER* {units=*NX\_ANY*}

raw value of positioner - need [n] as may be scanned

**target\_value[n]:** (optional) *NX\_NUMBER* {units=*NX\_ANY*}  
targeted (commanded) value of positioner - need [n] as may be scanned

**tolerance[n]:** (optional) *NX\_NUMBER* {units=*NX\_ANY*}  
maximum allowable difference between target\_value and value

**soft\_limit\_min:** (optional) *NX\_NUMBER* {units=*NX\_ANY*}  
minimum allowed limit to set value

**soft\_limit\_max:** (optional) *NX\_NUMBER* {units=*NX\_ANY*}  
maximum allowed limit to set value

**velocity:** (optional) *NX\_NUMBER* {units=*NX\_ANY*}  
velocity of the positioner (distance moved per unit time)

**acceleration\_time:** (optional) *NX\_NUMBER* {units=*NX\_ANY*}  
time to ramp the velocity up to full speed

**controller\_record:** (optional) *NX\_CHAR*  
Hardware device record, e.g. EPICS process variable, taco/tango ...

**NXDL Source:** [https://github.com/nexusformat/definitions/blob/master/base\\_classes/NXpositioner.nxdl.xml](https://github.com/nexusformat/definitions/blob/master/base_classes/NXpositioner.nxdl.xml)

## NXprocess

### Status:

base class, extends *NXObject*

### Description:

Document an event of data processing, reconstruction, or analysis for this data.

### Symbols:

No symbol table

### Groups cited:

*NXnote*

### Structure:

**program:** (optional) *NX\_CHAR*

Name of the program used

**sequence\_index:** (optional) *NX\_POSINT*

Sequence index of processing, for determining the order of multiple NXprocess steps. Starts with 1.

**version:** (optional) *NX\_CHAR*

Version of the program used

**date:** (optional) *NX\_DATE\_TIME*

Date and time of processing.

**NOTE:** (optional) *NXnote*

The note will contain information about how the data was processed or anything about the data provenance. The contents of the note can be anything that the processing code can understand, or simple text.

The name will be numbered to allow for ordering of steps.

**NXDL Source:** [https://github.com/nexusformat/definitions/blob/master/base\\_classes/NXprocess.nxdl.xml](https://github.com/nexusformat/definitions/blob/master/base_classes/NXprocess.nxdl.xml)

## NXreflections

### Status:

base class, extends *NXObject*

### Description:

This is a definition for reflection data from diffraction experiments

### Symbols:

**n**: number of reflections

**m**: number of experiments

### Groups cited:

### Structure:

**ENTRY**: (required) *NXentry*

**@description**: (optional) *NX\_CHAR*

Describes the dataset

**definition**: (optional) *NX\_CHAR*

NeXus NXDL schema to which this file conforms

Obligatory value: NXreflections

**experiments[m]**: (required) *NX\_CHAR*

The experiments from which the reflection data derives

**h[n]**: (required) *NX\_NUMBER*

The h component of the miller index

**@description**: (optional) *NX\_CHAR*

Describes the dataset

**k[n]**: (required) *NX\_NUMBER*

The k component of the miller index

**@description**: (optional) *NX\_CHAR*

Describes the dataset

**l[n]**: (required) *NX\_NUMBER*

The l component of the miller index

**@description**: (optional) *NX\_CHAR*

Describes the dataset

**id[n]**: (required) *NX\_INT*

The id of the experiment which resulted in the reflection. If the value is greater than 0, the experiments must link to a multi-experiment NXmx group

**@description:** (optional) *NX\_CHAR*

Describes the dataset

**reflection\_id[n]:** (required) *NX\_INT*

The id of the reflection. Multiple partials from the same reflection should all have the same id

**@description:** (optional) *NX\_CHAR*

Describes the dataset

**entering[n]:** (required) *NX\_BOOLEAN*

Is the reflection entering or exiting the Ewald sphere

**@description:** (optional) *NX\_CHAR*

Describes the dataset

**det\_module[n]:** (required) *NX\_INT*

The detector module on which the reflection was recorded

**@description:** (optional) *NX\_CHAR*

Describes the dataset

**flags[n]:** (required) *NX\_INT*

Status flags describing the reflection.

This is a bit mask. The bits in the mask follow the convention used by DIALS, and have the following names:

bit	name
0	predicted
1	observed
2	indexed
3	used_in_refinement
4	strong
5	reference_spot
6	dont_integrate
7	integrated_sum
8	integrated_prf
9	integrated
10	overloaded
11	overlapped
12	overlapped_fg
13	in_powder_ring
14	foreground_includes_bad_pixels
15	background_includes_bad_pixels
16	includes_bad_pixels
17	bad_shoebox
18	bad_spot
19	used_in_modelling
20	centroid_outlier
21	failed_during_background_modelling
22	failed_during_summation
23	failed_during_profile_fitting
24	bad_reference

**@description:** (optional) *NX\_CHAR*

Describes the dataset

**d[n]:** (required) *NX\_FLOAT*

The resolution of the reflection

**@description:** (optional) *NX\_CHAR*

Describes the dataset

**partiality[n]:** (required) *NX\_FLOAT*

The partiality of the reflection. Dividing by this number will inflate the measured intensity to the full reflection equivalent.

**@description:** (optional) *NX\_CHAR*

Describes the dataset

**predicted\_frame[n]:** (required) *NX\_FLOAT* {units=*NX\_UNITLESS*}

The frame on which the bragg peak of the reflection is predicted

**@description:** (optional) *NX\_CHAR*

Describes the dataset

**predicted\_x[n]:** (required) *NX\_FLOAT* {units=*NX\_LENGTH*}

The x position at which the bragg peak of the reflection is predicted

**@description:** (optional) *NX\_CHAR*

Describes the dataset

**predicted\_y[n]:** (required) *NX\_FLOAT* {units=*NX\_LENGTH*}

The y position at which the bragg peak of the reflection is predicted

**@description:** (optional) *NX\_CHAR*

Describes the dataset

**predicted\_phi[n]:** (required) *NX\_FLOAT* {units=*NX\_ANGLE*}

The phi angle at which the bragg peak of the reflection is predicted

**@description:** (optional) *NX\_CHAR*

Describes the dataset

**predicted\_px\_x[n]:** (required) *NX\_FLOAT* {units=*NX\_UNITLESS*}

The x pixel position at which the bragg peak of the reflection is predicted

**@description:** (optional) *NX\_CHAR*

Describes the dataset

**predicted\_px\_y[n]:** (required) *NX\_FLOAT* {units=*NX\_UNITLESS*}

The y pixel position at which the bragg peak of the reflection is predicted

**@description:** (optional) *NX\_CHAR*

Describes the dataset

**observed\_frame[n]:** (required) *NX\_FLOAT* {units=*NX\_UNITLESS*}

The estimate of the frame at which the central impact of the reflection was recorded

**@description:** (optional) *NX\_CHAR*

Describes the dataset

**observed\_frame\_var[n]:** (required) *NX\_FLOAT* {units=*NX\_UNITLESS*}

The variance on the estimate of the frame at which the central impact of the reflection was recorded

**@description:** (optional) *NX\_CHAR*

Describes the dataset

**observed\_px\_x[n]:** (required) *NX\_FLOAT* {units=*NX\_UNITLESS*}

The estimate of the pixel x position at which the central impact of the reflection was recorded

**@description:** (optional) *NX\_CHAR*

Describes the dataset

**observed\_px\_x\_var[n]:** (required) *NX\_FLOAT* {units=*NX\_UNITLESS*}

The variance on the estimate of the pixel x position at which the central impact of the reflection was recorded

**@description:** (optional) *NX\_CHAR*

Describes the dataset

**observed\_px\_y[n]:** (required) *NX\_FLOAT* {units=*NX\_UNITLESS*}

The estimate of the pixel y position at which the central impact of the reflection was recorded

**@description:** (optional) *NX\_CHAR*

Describes the dataset

**observed\_px\_y\_var[n]:** (required) *NX\_FLOAT* {units=*NX\_UNITLESS*}

The variance on the estimate of the pixel y position at which the central impact of the reflection was recorded

**@description:** (optional) *NX\_CHAR*

Describes the dataset

**observed\_phi[n]:** (required) *NX\_FLOAT* {units=*NX\_ANGLE*}

The estimate of the phi angle at which the central impact of the reflection was recorded

**@description:** (optional) *NX\_CHAR*

Describes the dataset

**observed\_phi\_var[n]:** (required) *NX\_FLOAT* {units=*NX\_ANGLE*}

The variance on the estimate of the phi angle at which the central impact of the reflection was recorded

**@description:** (optional) *NX\_CHAR*

Describes the dataset

**observed\_x[n]:** (required) *NX\_FLOAT* {units=*NX\_LENGTH*}

The estimate of the x position at which the central impact of the reflection was recorded

**@description:** (optional) *NX\_CHAR*

Describes the dataset

**observed\_x\_var[n]:** (required) *NX\_FLOAT* {units=*NX\_LENGTH*}

The variance on the estimate of the x position at which the central impact of the reflection was recorded

**@description:** (optional) *NX\_CHAR*

Describes the dataset

**observed\_y[n]:** (required) *NX\_FLOAT* {units=*NX\_LENGTH*}

The estimate of the y position at which the central impact of the reflection was recorded

**@description:** (optional) *NX\_CHAR*

Describes the dataset

**observed\_y\_var[n]:** (required) *NX\_FLOAT* {units=*NX\_LENGTH*}

The variance on the estimate of the y position at which the central impact of the reflection was recorded

**@description:** (optional) *NX\_CHAR*

Describes the dataset

**bounding\_box[n, 6]:** (required) *NX\_INT* {units=*NX\_UNITLESS*}

The bounding box around the recorded recorded reflection. Should be an integer array of length 6, where the 6 values are pixel positions or frame numbers, as follows:

index	meaning
0	The lower pixel x position
1	The upper pixel x position
2	The lower pixel y position
3	The upper pixel y position
4	The lower frame number
5	The upper frame number

**@description:** (optional) *NX\_CHAR*

Describes the dataset

**background\_mean[n]:** (required) *NX\_FLOAT*

The mean background under the reflection peak

**@description:** (optional) *NX\_CHAR*

Describes the dataset

**int\_prf[n]:** (optional) *NX\_FLOAT*

The estimate of the reflection intensity by profile fitting

**@description:** (optional) *NX\_CHAR*

Describes the dataset

**int\_prf\_var[n]:** (optional) *NX\_FLOAT*

The variance on the estimate of the reflection intensity by profile fitting

**@description:** (optional) *NX\_CHAR*

Describes the dataset

**int\_sum[n]:** (required) *NX\_FLOAT*

The estimate of the reflection intensity by summation

**@description:** (optional) *NX\_CHAR*

Describes the dataset

**int\_sum\_var[n]:** (required) *NX\_FLOAT*

The variance on the estimate of the reflection intensity by summation

**@description:** (optional) *NX\_CHAR*

Describes the dataset

**lp[n]:** (required) *NX\_FLOAT*

The LP correction factor to be applied to the reflection intensities

**@description:** (optional) *NX\_CHAR*

Describes the dataset

**prf\_cc[n]:** (optional) *NX\_FLOAT*

The correlation of the reflection profile with the reference profile used in profile fitting

**@description:** (optional) *NX\_CHAR*

Describes the dataset

**overlaps:** (optional) *NX\_INT*

An adjacency list specifying the spatial overlaps of reflections. The adjacency list is specified using an array data type where the elements of the array are the indices of the adjacent overlapped reflection

**@description:** (optional) *NX\_CHAR*

Describes the dataset

**polar\_angle[n]:** (optional) *NX\_FLOAT* {units=*NX\_ANGLE*}

Polar angle of reflection centroid, following the NeXus simple (spherical polar) coordinate system

**@description:** (optional) *NX\_CHAR*

Describes the dataset

**azimuthal\_angle[n]:** (optional) *NX\_FLOAT* {units=*NX\_ANGLE*}

Azimuthal angle of reflection centroid, following the NeXus simple (spherical polar) coordinate system

**NXDL Source:** [https://github.com/nexusformat/definitions/blob/master/base\\_classes/NXreflections.nxdl.xml](https://github.com/nexusformat/definitions/blob/master/base_classes/NXreflections.nxdl.xml)

**NXroot****Status:**

base class, extends *NXObject*

**Description:**

Definition of the root NeXus group.

**Symbols:**

No symbol table

**Groups cited:** *NXentry***Structure:****@NX\_class:** (optional) *NX\_CHAR*

The root of any NeXus data file is an NXroot class (no other choice is allowed for a valid NeXus data file). This attribute cements that definition.

Obligatory value: NXroot

**@file\_time:** (optional) *NX\_CHAR*

Date and time file was originally created

**@file\_name:** (optional) *NX\_CHAR*

File name of original NeXus file

**@file\_update\_time:** (optional) *NX\_CHAR*

Date and time of last file change at close

**@NeXus\_version:** (optional) *NX\_CHAR*

Version of NeXus API used in writing the file.

Only used when the NAPI has written the file. Note that this is different from the version of the base class or application definition version number.

**@HDF\_version:** (optional) *NX\_CHAR*

Version of HDF (version 4) library used in writing the file

**@HDF5\_Version:** (optional) *NX\_CHAR*

Version of HDF5 library used in writing the file.

Note this attribute is spelled with uppercase “V”, different than other version attributes.

**@XML\_version:** (optional) *NX\_CHAR*

Version of XML support library used in writing the XML file

**@h5py\_version:** (optional) *NX\_CHAR*

Version of h5py Python package used in writing the file

**@creator:** (optional) *NX\_CHAR*

facility or program where file originated

**@default:** (optional) *NX\_CHAR*

Declares which *NXentry* group contains the data to be shown by default. It is needed to resolve ambiguity when more than one *NXentry* group exists. The value is the name of the default *NXentry* group.

It is recommended (as of NIAC2014) to use this attribute to help define the path to the default dataset to be plotted. See [http://wiki.nexusformat.org/2014\\_How\\_to\\_find\\_default\\_data](http://wiki.nexusformat.org/2014_How_to_find_default_data) for a summary of the discussion.

**ENTRY:** (required) *NXentry*

entries

**NXDL Source:** [https://github.com/nexusformat/definitions/blob/master/base\\_classes/NXroot.nxdl.xml](https://github.com/nexusformat/definitions/blob/master/base_classes/NXroot.nxdl.xml)

## NXsample

**Status:**

base class, extends *NXObject*

**Description:**

Any information on the sample.

This could include scanned variables that are associated with one of the data dimensions, e.g. the magnetic field, or logged data, e.g. monitored temperature vs elapsed time.

**Symbols:**

symbolic array lengths to be coordinated between various fields

**n\_comp:** number of compositions

**n\_Temp:** number of temperatures

**n\_eField:** number of values in applied electric field

**n\_mField:** number of values in applied magnetic field

**n\_pField:** number of values in applied pressure field

**n\_sField:** number of values in applied stress field

**Groups cited:** *NXbeam*, *NXdata*, *NXenvironment*, *NXgeometry*, *NXlog*, *NXpositioner*, *NXsample\_component*

#### Structure:

**name:** (optional) *NX\_CHAR*

Descriptive name of sample

**chemical\_formula:** (optional) *NX\_CHAR*

The chemical formula specified using CIF conventions. Abbreviated version of CIF standard:

- Only recognized element symbols may be used.
- Each element symbol is followed by a ‘count’ number. A count of ‘1’ may be omitted.
- A space or parenthesis must separate each cluster of (element symbol + count).
- Where a group of elements is enclosed in parentheses, the multiplier for the group must follow the closing parentheses. That is, all element and group multipliers are assumed to be printed as subscripted numbers.
- Unless the elements are ordered in a manner that corresponds to their chemical structure, the order of the elements within any group or moiety depends on whether or not carbon is present.
- If carbon is present, the order should be:
  - C, then H, then the other elements in alphabetical order of their symbol.
  - If carbon is not present, the elements are listed purely in alphabetic order of their symbol.
- This is the *Hill* system used by Chemical Abstracts.

**temperature[n\_Temp]:** (optional) *NX\_FLOAT* {units=*NX\_TEMPERATURE*}

Sample temperature. This could be a scanned variable

**electric\_field[n\_eField]:** (optional) *NX\_FLOAT* {units=*NX\_VOLTAGE*}

Applied electric field

**@direction:** (optional) *NX\_CHAR*

Any of these values: x | y | z

**magnetic\_field[n\_mField]:** (optional) *NX\_FLOAT* {units=*NX\_ANY*}

Applied magnetic field

**@direction:** (optional) *NX\_CHAR*

Any of these values: x | y | z

**stress\_field[n\_sField]:** (optional) *NX\_FLOAT* {units=*NX\_ANY*}

Applied external stress field

**@direction:** (optional) *NX\_CHAR*

Any of these values: x | y | z

**pressure[n\_pField]:** (optional) *NX\_FLOAT* {units=*NX\_PRESSURE*}

Applied pressure

**changer\_position:** (optional) *NX\_INT* {units=*NX\_UNITLESS*}

Sample changer position

**unit\_cell\_abc[3]:** (optional) *NX\_FLOAT* {units=*NX\_LENGTH*}

Crystallography unit cell parameters a, b, and c

**unit\_cell\_alpha\_beta\_gamma[3]:** (optional) *NX\_FLOAT* {units=*NX\_ANGLE*}

Crystallography unit cell parameters alpha, beta, and gamma

**unit\_cell[n\_comp, 6]:** (optional) *NX\_FLOAT* {units=*NX\_LENGTH*}

Unit cell parameters (lengths and angles)

**unit\_cell\_volume[n\_comp]:** (optional) *NX\_FLOAT* {units=*NX\_VOLUME*}

Volume of the unit cell

**sample\_orientation[3]:** (optional) *NX\_FLOAT* {units=*NX\_ANGLE*}

This will follow the Busing-Levy convention: W. R. Busing and H. A. Levy (1967). Acta Cryst. 22, 457-464

**orientation\_matrix[n\_comp, 3, 3]:** (optional) *NX\_FLOAT*

Orientation matrix of single crystal sample using Busing-Levy convention: W. R. Busing and H. A. Levy (1967). Acta Cryst. 22, 457-464

**ub\_matrix[n\_comp, 3, 3]:** (optional) *NX\_FLOAT*

UB matrix of single crystal sample using Busing-Levy convention: W. R. Busing and H. A. Levy (1967). Acta Cryst. 22, 457-464. This is the multiplication of the orientation\_matrix, given above, with the *B* matrix which can be derived from the lattice constants.

**mass[n\_comp]:** (optional) *NX\_FLOAT* {units=*NX\_MASS*}

Mass of sample

**density[n\_comp]:** (optional) *NX\_FLOAT* {units=*NX\_MASS\_DENSITY*}

Density of sample

**relative\_molecular\_mass[n\_comp]:** (optional) *NX\_FLOAT* {units=*NX\_MASS*}

Relative Molecular Mass of sample

**type:** (optional) *NX\_CHAR*

Any of these values:

- sample
- sample+can
- can
- sample+buffer
- buffer
- calibration sample
- normalisation sample

- simulated data
- none
- sample environment

**situation:** (optional) *NX\_CHAR*

The atmosphere will be one of the components, which is where its details will be stored; the relevant components will be indicated by the entry in the sample\_component member.

Any of these values:

- air
- vacuum
- inert atmosphere
- oxidising atmosphere
- reducing atmosphere
- sealed can
- other

**description:** (optional) *NX\_CHAR*

Description of the sample

**preparation\_date:** (optional) *NX\_DATE\_TIME*

Date of preparation of the sample

**component[n\_comp]:** (optional) *NX\_CHAR*

Details of the component of the sample and/or can

**sample\_component[n\_comp]:** (optional) *NX\_CHAR*

Type of component

Any of these values: sample|can|atmosphere|kit

**concentration[n\_comp]:** (optional) *NX\_FLOAT* {units=*NX\_MASS\_DENSITY*}

Concentration of each component

**volume\_fraction[n\_comp]:** (optional) *NX\_FLOAT*

Volume fraction of each component

**scattering\_length\_density[n\_comp]:** (optional) *NX\_FLOAT* {units=*NX\_SCATTERING\_LENGTH\_DENSITY*}

Scattering length density of each component

**unit\_cell\_class:** (optional) *NX\_CHAR*

In case it is all we know and we want to record/document it

Any of these values:

- triclinic
- monoclinic
- orthorhombic
- tetragonal

- rhombohedral
- hexagonal
- cubic

**space\_group[n\_comp]:** (optional) *NX\_CHAR*

Crystallographic space group

**point\_group[n\_comp]:** (optional) *NX\_CHAR*

Crystallographic point group, deprecated if space\_group present

**path\_length:** (optional) *NX\_FLOAT* {units=*NX\_LENGTH*}

Path length through sample/can for simple case when it does not vary with scattering direction

**path\_length\_window:** (optional) *NX\_FLOAT* {units=*NX\_LENGTH*}

Thickness of a beam entry/exit window on the can (mm) - assumed same for entry and exit

**thickness:** (optional) *NX\_FLOAT* {units=*NX\_LENGTH*}

sample thickness

**external\_DAC:** (optional) *NX\_FLOAT* {units=*NX\_ANY*}

value sent to user's sample setup

**short\_title:** (optional) *NX\_CHAR*

20 character fixed length sample description for legends

**rotation\_angle:** (optional) *NX\_FLOAT* {units=*NX\_ANGLE*}

Optional rotation angle for the case when the powder diagram has been obtained through an omega-2theta scan like from a traditional single detector powder diffractometer

**x\_translation:** (optional) *NX\_FLOAT* {units=*NX\_LENGTH*}

Translation of the sample along the X-direction of the laboratory coordinate system

**distance:** (optional) *NX\_FLOAT* {units=*NX\_LENGTH*}

Translation of the sample along the Z-direction of the laboratory coordinate system

**geometry:** (optional) *NXgeometry*

The position and orientation of the center of mass of the sample

**BEAM:** (optional) *NXbeam*

Details of beam incident on sample - used to calculate sample/beam interaction point

**SAMPLE\_COMPONENT:** (optional) *NXsample\_component*

One group per sample component This is the preferred way of recording per component information over the n\_comp arrays

**transmission:** (optional) *NXdata*

As a function of Wavelength

**temperature\_log:** (optional) *NXlog*

temperature\_log.value is a link to e.g. temperature\_env.sensor1.value\_log.value

**temperature\_env:** (optional) *NXenvironment*

Additional sample temperature environment information

**magnetic\_field\_log:** (optional) [NXlog](#)

magnetic\_field\_log.value is a link to e.g. magnetic\_field\_env.sensor1.value\_log.value

**magnetic\_field\_env:** (optional) [NXenvironment](#)

Additional sample magnetic environment information

**external\_ADC:** (optional) [NXlog](#)

logged value (or logic state) read from user's setup

**POSITIONER:** (optional) [NXpositioner](#)

Any positioner (motor, PZT, ...) used to locate the sample

**NXDL Source:** [https://github.com/nexusformat/definitions/blob/master/base\\_classes/NXsample.nxdl.xml](https://github.com/nexusformat/definitions/blob/master/base_classes/NXsample.nxdl.xml)

## NXsample\_component

**Status:**

base class, extends [NXobject](#)

**Description:**

One group like this per component can be recorded For a sample consisting of multiple components.

**Symbols:**

symbolic array lengths to be coordinated between various fields

**n\_Temp:** number of temperatures

**n\_eField:** number of values in applied electric field

**n\_mField:** number of values in applied magnetic field

**n\_pField:** number of values in applied pressure field

**n\_sField:** number of values in applied stress field

**Groups cited:** [NXdata](#)

**Structure:**

**name:** (optional) [NX\\_CHAR](#)

Descriptive name of sample component

**chemical\_formula:** (optional) [NX\\_CHAR](#)

The chemical formula specified using CIF conventions. Abbreviated version of CIF standard:

- Only recognized element symbols may be used.
- Each element symbol is followed by a ‘count’ number. A count of ‘1’ may be omitted.
- A space or parenthesis must separate each cluster of (element symbol + count).
- Where a group of elements is enclosed in parentheses, the multiplier for the group must follow the closing parentheses. That is, all element and group multipliers are assumed to be printed as subscripted numbers.
- Unless the elements are ordered in a manner that corresponds to their chemical structure, the order of the elements within any group or moiety depends on whether or not carbon is present.

- If carbon is present, the order should be:
  - C, then H, then the other elements in alphabetical order of their symbol.
  - If carbon is not present, the elements are listed purely in alphabetic order of their symbol.
- This is the *Hill* system used by Chemical Abstracts.

**unit\_cell\_abc[3]:** (optional) *NX\_FLOAT* {units=*NX\_LENGTH*}

Crystallography unit cell parameters a, b, and c

**unit\_cell\_alphabetagamma[3]:** (optional) *NX\_FLOAT* {units=*NX\_ANGLE*}

Crystallography unit cell parameters alpha, beta, and gamma

**unit\_cell\_volume:** (optional) *NX\_FLOAT* {units=*NX\_VOLUME*}

Volume of the unit cell

**sample\_orientation[3]:** (optional) *NX\_FLOAT* {units=*NX\_ANGLE*}

This will follow the Busing and Levy convention from Acta.Crysta v22, p457 (1967)

**orientation\_matrix[3, 3]:** (optional) *NX\_FLOAT*

Orientation matrix of single crystal sample component. This will follow the Busing and Levy convention from Acta.Crysta v22, p457 (1967)

**mass:** (optional) *NX\_FLOAT* {units=*NX\_MASS*}

Mass of sample component

**density:** (optional) *NX\_FLOAT* {units=*NX\_MASS\_DENSITY*}

Density of sample component

**relative\_molecular\_mass:** (optional) *NX\_FLOAT* {units=*NX\_MASS*}

Relative Molecular Mass of sample component

**description:** (optional) *NX\_CHAR*

Description of the sample component

**volume\_fraction:** (optional) *NX\_FLOAT*

Volume fraction of component

**scattering\_length\_density:** (optional) *NX\_FLOAT* {units=*NX\_SCATTERING\_LENGTH\_DENSITY*}

Scattering length density of component

**unit\_cell\_class:** (optional) *NX\_CHAR*

In case it is all we know and we want to record/document it

Any of these values:

- triclinic
- monoclinic
- orthorhombic
- tetragonal
- rhombohedral
- hexagonal

- cubic

**space\_group:** (optional) *NX\_CHAR*

Crystallographic space group

**point\_group:** (optional) *NX\_CHAR*

Crystallographic point group, deprecated if space\_group present

**transmission:** (optional) *NXdata*

As a function of Wavelength

**NXDL Source:** [https://github.com/nexusformat/definitions/blob/master/base\\_classes/NXsample\\_component.nxdl.xml](https://github.com/nexusformat/definitions/blob/master/base_classes/NXsample_component.nxdl.xml)

## **NXsensor**

### **Status:**

base class, extends *NXObject*

### **Description:**

A sensor used to monitor an external condition

The condition itself is described in *NXenvironment*.

### **Symbols:**

No symbol table

**Groups cited:** *NXgeometry*, *NXlog*, *NXorientation*

### **Structure:**

**model:** (optional) *NX\_CHAR*

Sensor identification code/model number

**name:** (optional) *NX\_CHAR*

Name for the sensor

**short\_name:** (optional) *NX\_CHAR*

Short name of sensor used e.g. on monitor display program

**attached\_to:** (optional) *NX\_CHAR*

where sensor is attached to (“sample” | “can”)

**measurement:** (optional) *NX\_CHAR*

name for measured signal

Any of these values:

- temperature
- pH
- magnetic\_field
- electric\_field
- conductivity

- resistance
- voltage
- pressure
- flow
- stress
- strain
- shear
- surface\_pressure

**type:** (optional) *NX\_CHAR*

The type of hardware used for the measurement. Examples (suggestions but not restrictions):

**Temperature** J | K | T | E | R | S | Pt100 | Rh/Fe

**pH** Hg/Hg<sub>2</sub>Cl<sub>2</sub> | Ag/AgCl | ISFET

**Ion selective electrode** specify species; e.g. Ca<sup>2+</sup>

**Magnetic field** Hall

**Surface pressure** wilhelmy plate

**run\_control:** (optional) *NX\_BOOLEAN*

Is data collection controlled or synchronised to this quantity: 1=no, 0=to “value”, 1=to “value\_deriv1”, etc.

**high\_trip\_value:** (optional) *NX\_FLOAT* {units=*NX\_ANY*}

Upper control bound of sensor reading if using run\_control

**low\_trip\_value:** (optional) *NX\_FLOAT* {units=*NX\_ANY*}

Lower control bound of sensor reading if using run\_control

**value[n]:** (optional) *NX\_FLOAT* {units=*NX\_ANY*}

nominal setpoint or average value - need [n] as may be a vector

**value\_deriv1[ref(value)]:** (optional) *NX\_FLOAT* {units=*NX\_ANY*}

Nominal/average first derivative of value e.g. strain rate - same dimensions as “value” (may be a vector)

**value\_deriv2[ref(value)]:** (optional) *NX\_FLOAT* {units=*NX\_ANY*}

Nominal/average second derivative of value - same dimensions as “value” (may be a vector)

**external\_field\_brief:** (optional) *NX\_CHAR*

Any of these values:

- along beam
- across beam
- transverse
- solenoidal
- flow shear gradient
- flow vorticity

**geometry:** (optional) *NXgeometry*

Defines the axes for logged vector quantities if they are not the global instrument axes

**value\_log:** (optional) *NXlog*

Time history of sensor readings

**value\_deriv1\_log:** (optional) *NXlog*

Time history of first derivative of sensor readings

**value\_deriv2\_log:** (optional) *NXlog*

Time history of second derivative of sensor readings

**external\_field\_full:** (optional) *NXorientation*

For complex external fields not satisfied by External\_field\_brief

**NXDL Source:** [https://github.com/nexusformat/definitions/blob/master/base\\_classes/NXsensor.nxdl.xml](https://github.com/nexusformat/definitions/blob/master/base_classes/NXsensor.nxdl.xml)

## NXshape

**Status:**

base class, extends *NXObject*

**Description:**

legacy class - (used by *NXgeometry*) - the shape and size of a component.

This is the description of the general shape and size of a component, which may be made up of numobj separate elements - it is used by the *NXgeometry* class

**Symbols:**

No symbol table

**Groups cited:** none

**Structure:**

**shape:** (optional) *NX\_CHAR*

general shape of a component

Any of these values:

- nxflat
- nxcylinder
- nxbox
- nxsphere
- nxcone
- nxelliptical
- nxtoroidal
- nxparabolic
- nxpolynomial

**size[numobj, nshapepar]:** (optional) *NX\_FLOAT* {units=*NX\_LENGTH*}

physical extent of the object along its local axes (after NXorientation) with the center of mass at the local origin (after NXtranslation). The meaning and location of these axes will vary according to the value of the “shape” variable. nshapepar defines how many parameters:

- For “nxcylinder” type the parameters are (diameter,height) and a three value orientation vector of the cylinder.
- For the “nxbox” type the parameters are (length,width,height).
- For the “nxsphere” type the parameters are (diameter).
- For nxcone cone half aperture
- For nxelliptical, semi-major axis, semi-minor-axis, angle of major axis and pole
- For nxtoroidal, major radius, minor radius
- For nxparabolic, parabolic parameter a
- For nxpolynomial, an array of polynom coefficients, the dimension of the array encodes the degree of the polynom

**direction:** (optional) *NX\_CHAR*

Any of these values: concave | convex

**NXDL Source:** [https://github.com/nexusformat/definitions/blob/master/base\\_classes/NXshape.nxdl.xml](https://github.com/nexusformat/definitions/blob/master/base_classes/NXshape.nxdl.xml)

## NXslit

**Status:**

base class, extends *NXObject*

**Description:**

A simple slit.

For more complex geometries, *NXaperture* should be used.

**Symbols:**

No symbol table

**Groups cited:** none

**Structure:**

**depends\_on:** (optional) *NX\_CHAR*

Points to the path of the last element in the geometry chain that places this object in space. When followed through that chain is supposed to end at an element depending on “.” i.e. the origin of the coordinate system. If desired the location of the slit can also be described relative to an NXbeam, which will allow a simple description of a non-centred slit.

**x\_gap:** (optional) *NX\_NUMBER* {units=*NX\_LENGTH*}

Size of the gap opening in the first dimension of the local coordinate system.

**y\_gap:** (optional) *NX\_NUMBER* {units=*NX\_LENGTH*}

Size of the gap opening in the second dimension of the local coordinate system.

**NXDL Source:** [https://github.com/nexusformat/definitions/blob/master/base\\_classes/NXslit.nxdl.xml](https://github.com/nexusformat/definitions/blob/master/base_classes/NXslit.nxdl.xml)

## NXsource

### Status:

base class, extends [NXobject](#)

### Description:

The neutron or x-ray storage ring/facility.

### Symbols:

No symbol table

### Groups cited:

[NXdata](#), [NXgeometry](#), [NXnote](#)

### Structure:

**distance:** (optional) [NX\\_FLOAT](#) {units=[NX\\_LENGTH](#)}

Effective distance from sample Distance as seen by radiation from sample. This number should be negative to signify that it is upstream of the sample.

**name:** (optional) [NX\\_CHAR](#)

Name of source

**@short\_name:** (optional) [NX\\_CHAR](#)

short name for source, perhaps the acronym

**type:** (optional) [NX\\_CHAR](#)

type of radiation source (pick one from the enumerated list and spell exactly)

Any of these values:

- Spallation Neutron Source
- Pulsed Reactor Neutron Source
- Reactor Neutron Source
- Synchrotron X-ray Source
- Pulsed Muon Source
- Rotating Anode X-ray
- Fixed Tube X-ray
- UV Laser
- Free-Electron Laser
- Optical Laser
- Ion Source
- UV Plasma Source

**probe:** (optional) [NX\\_CHAR](#)

type of radiation probe (pick one from the enumerated list and spell exactly)

Any of these values:

- neutron
- x-ray

- muon
- electron
- ultraviolet
- visible light
- positron
- proton

**power:** (optional) *NX\_FLOAT* {units=*NX\_POWER*}

Source power

**emittance\_x:** (optional) *NX\_FLOAT* {units=*NX\_EMITTANCE*}

Source emittance (nm-rad) in X (horizontal) direction.

**emittance\_y:** (optional) *NX\_FLOAT* {units=*NX\_EMITTANCE*}

Source emittance (nm-rad) in Y (horizontal) direction.

**sigma\_x:** (optional) *NX\_FLOAT* {units=*NX\_LENGTH*}

particle beam size in x

**sigma\_y:** (optional) *NX\_FLOAT* {units=*NX\_LENGTH*}

particle beam size in y

**flux:** (optional) *NX\_FLOAT* {units=*NX\_FLUX*}

Source intensity/area (example: s-1 cm-2)

**energy:** (optional) *NX\_FLOAT* {units=*NX\_ENERGY*}

Source energy. For storage rings, this would be the particle beam energy. For X-ray tubes, this would be the excitation voltage.

**current:** (optional) *NX\_FLOAT* {units=*NX\_CURRENT*}

Accelerator, X-ray tube, or storage ring current

**voltage:** (optional) *NX\_FLOAT* {units=*NX\_VOLTAGE*}

Accelerator voltage

**frequency:** (optional) *NX\_FLOAT* {units=*NX\_FREQUENCY*}

Frequency of pulsed source

**period:** (optional) *NX\_FLOAT* {units=*NX\_PERIOD*}

Period of pulsed source

**target\_material:** (optional) *NX\_CHAR*

Pulsed source target material

Any of these values:

- Ta
- W
- depleted\_U
- enriched\_U

- Hg
- Pb
- C

**number\_of\_bunches:** (optional) *NX\_INT*

For storage rings, the number of bunches in use.

**bunch\_length:** (optional) *NX\_FLOAT* {units=*NX\_TIME*}

For storage rings, temporal length of the bunch

**bunch\_distance:** (optional) *NX\_FLOAT* {units=*NX\_TIME*}

For storage rings, time between bunches

**pulse\_width:** (optional) *NX\_FLOAT* {units=*NX\_TIME*}

temporal width of source pulse

**mode:** (optional) *NX\_CHAR*

source operating mode

Any of these values:

- Single Bunch: for storage rings
- Multi Bunch: for storage rings

**top\_up:** (optional) *NX\_BOOLEAN*

Is the synchrotron operating in top\_up mode?

**last\_fill:** (optional) *NX\_NUMBER* {units=*NX\_CURRENT*}

For storage rings, the current at the end of the most recent injection.

**@time:** (optional) *NX\_DATE\_TIME*

date and time of the most recent injection.

**notes:** (optional) *NXnote*

any source/facility related messages/events that occurred during the experiment

**bunch\_pattern:** (optional) *NXdata*

For storage rings, description of the bunch pattern. This is useful to describe irregular bunch patterns.

**title:** (optional) *NX\_CHAR*

name of the bunch pattern

**pulse\_shape:** (optional) *NXdata*

source pulse shape

**geometry:** (optional) *NXgeometry*

“Engineering” location of source

**distribution:** (optional) *NXdata*

The wavelength or energy distribution of the source

**NXDL Source:** [https://github.com/nexusformat/definitions/blob/master/base\\_classes/NXsource.nxdl.xml](https://github.com/nexusformat/definitions/blob/master/base_classes/NXsource.nxdl.xml)

## NXsubentry

### Status:

base class, extends [NXobject](#)

### Description:

Group of multiple application definitions for “multi-modal” (e.g. SAXS/WAXS) measurements.

NXsubentry is a base class virtually identical to [NXentry](#) and is used as the (overlay) location for application definitions. Use a separate NXsubentry for each application definition.

To use NXsubentry with a hypothetical application definition called NXmyappdef:

- Create a group with attribute `NX_class="NXsubentry"`
- Within that group, create a field called `definition="NXmyappdef"`.
- There are two optional attributes of definition: `version` and `URL`

The intended use is to define application definitions for a multi-modal (a.k.a. multi-technique) [NXentry](#). Previously, an application definition replaced [NXentry](#) with its own definition. With the increasing popularity of instruments combining multiple techniques for data collection (such as SAXS/WAXS instruments), it was recognized the application definitions must be entered in the NeXus data file tree as children of [NXentry](#).

### Symbols:

No symbol table

**Groups cited:** [NXcollection](#), [NXdata](#), [NXinstrument](#), [NXmonitor](#), [NXnote](#), [NXparameters](#), [NXprocess](#), [NXsample](#), [NXuser](#)

### Structure:

**@default:** (optional) [NX\\_CHAR](#)

Declares which [NXdata](#) group contains the data to be shown by default. It is needed to resolve ambiguity when more than one [NXdata](#) group exists. The value is the name of the default [NXdata](#) group.

It is recommended (as of NIAC2014) to use this attribute to help define the path to the default dataset to be plotted. See [http://wiki.nexusformat.org/2014\\_How\\_to\\_find\\_default\\_data](http://wiki.nexusformat.org/2014_How_to_find_default_data) for a summary of the discussion.

**@IDF\_Version:** (optional) [NX\\_CHAR](#)

ISIS Muon IDF\_Version

**title:** (optional) [NX\\_CHAR](#)

Extended title for entry

**experiment\_identifier:** (optional) [NX\\_CHAR](#)

Unique identifier for the experiment, defined by the facility, possibly linked to the proposals

**experiment\_description:** (optional) [NX\\_CHAR](#)

Brief summary of the experiment, including key objectives.

**collection\_identifier:** (optional) [NX\\_CHAR](#)

User or Data Acquisition defined group of NeXus files or [NXentry](#)

**collection\_description:** (optional) [NX\\_CHAR](#)

Brief summary of the collection, including grouping criteria.

**entry\_identifier:** (optional) *NX\_CHAR*

unique identifier for the measurement, defined by the facility.

**definition:** (optional) *NX\_CHAR*

Official NeXus NXDL schema to which this subentry conforms

**@version:** (optional) *NX\_CHAR*

NXDL version number

**@URL:** (optional) *NX\_CHAR*

URL of NXDL file

**definition\_local:** (optional) *NX\_CHAR*

Local NXDL schema extended from the subentry specified in the **definition** field. This contains any locally-defined, additional fields in the subentry.

**@version:** (optional) *NX\_CHAR*

NXDL version number

**@URL:** (optional) *NX\_CHAR*

URL of NXDL file

**start\_time:** (optional) *NX\_DATE\_TIME*

Starting time of measurement

**end\_time:** (optional) *NX\_DATE\_TIME*

Ending time of measurement

**duration:** (optional) *NX\_INT* {units=*NX\_TIME*}

Duration of measurement

**collection\_time:** (optional) *NX\_FLOAT* {units=*NX\_TIME*}

Time transpired actually collecting data i.e. taking out time when collection was suspended due to e.g. temperature out of range

**run\_cycle:** (optional) *NX\_CHAR*

Such as “2007-3”. Some user facilities organize their beam time into run cycles.

**program\_name:** (optional) *NX\_CHAR*

Name of program used to generate this file

**@version:** (optional) *NX\_CHAR*

Program version number

**@configuration:** (optional) *NX\_CHAR*

configuration of the program

**revision:** (optional) *NX\_CHAR*

Revision id of the file due to re-calibration, reprocessing, new analysis, new instrument definition format, ...

**@comment:** (optional) *NX\_CHAR*

**pre\_sample\_flightpath:** (optional) *NX\_FLOAT* {units=*NX\_LENGTH*}

This is the flightpath before the sample position. This can be determined by a chopper, by the moderator or the source itself. In other words: it the distance to the component which gives the T0 signal to the detector electronics. If another component in the NXinstrument hierarchy provides this information, this should be a link.

**experiment\_documentation:** (optional) *NXnote*

Description of the full experiment (document in pdf, latex, ...)

**notes:** (optional) *NXnote*

Notes describing entry

**thumbnail:** (optional) *NXnote*

A small image that is representative of the entry. An example of this is a 640x480 jpeg image automatically produced by a low resolution plot of the NXdata.

**@mime\_type:** (optional) *NX\_CHAR*

The value should be an `image/*`

Obligatory value: `image/*`

**USER:** (optional) *NXuser*

**SAMPLE:** (optional) *NXsample*

**INSTRUMENT:** (optional) *NXinstrument*

**COLLECTION:** (optional) *NXcollection*

**MONITOR:** (optional) *NXmonitor*

**DATA:** (optional) *NXdata*

**PARAMETERS:** (optional) *NXparameters*

**PROCESS:** (optional) *NXprocess*

**NXDL Source:** [https://github.com/nexusformat/definitions/blob/master/base\\_classes/NXsubentry.nxdl.xml](https://github.com/nexusformat/definitions/blob/master/base_classes/NXsubentry.nxdl.xml)

## NXtransformations

**Status:**

base class, extends *NXObject*

**Description:**

Collection of axis-based translations and rotations to describe a geometry. May also contain axes that do not move and therefore do not have a transformation type specified, but are useful in understanding coordinate frames within which transformations are done, or in documenting important directions, such as the direction of gravity.

A nested sequence of transformations lists the offset and rotation steps needed to describe the position and orientation of any movable or fixed device.

There will be one or more transformations (axes) defined by one or more fields for each transformation. The all-caps name `AXISNAME` designates the particular axis generating a transformation (e.g. a rotation axis or a translation axis or a general axis). The attribute `units="NX_TRANSFORMATION"` designates the units will be appropriate to the `transformation_type` attribute:

- `NX_LENGTH` for translation

- NX\_ANGLE for rotation
- NX\_UNITLESS for axes for which no transformation type is specified

This class will usually contain all axes of a sample stage or goniometer or a detector. The NeXus default McSTAS coordinate frame is assumed, but additional useful coordinate axes may be defined by using axes for which no transformation type has been specified.

The entry point (depends\_on) will be outside of this class and point to a field in here. Following the chain may also require following depends\_on links to transformations outside, for example to a common base table. If a relative path is given, it is relative to the group enclosing the depends\_on specification.

For a chain of three transformations, where  $T_1$  depends on  $T_2$  and that in turn depends on  $T_3$ , the final transformation  $T_f$  is

$$T_f = T_3 T_2 T_1$$

In explicit terms, the transformations are a subset of affine transformations expressed as 4x4 matrices that act on homogeneous coordinates,  $w = (x, y, z, 1)^T$ .

For rotation and translation,

$$T_r = \begin{pmatrix} R & o \\ 0_3 & 1 \end{pmatrix}$$

$$T_t = \begin{pmatrix} I_3 & t + o \\ 0_3 & 1 \end{pmatrix}$$

where  $R$  is the usual 3x3 rotation matrix,  $o$  is an offset vector,  $0_3$  is a row of 3 zeros,  $I_3$  is the 3x3 identity matrix and  $t$  is the translation vector.

$o$  is given the offset attribute,  $t$  is given by the vector attribute multiplied by the field value, and  $R$  is defined as a rotation about an axis in the direction of vector, of angle of the field value.

#### NOTE

One possible use of NXtransformations is to define the motors and transformations for a diffractometer (goniometer). Such use is mentioned in the NXinstrument base class. Use one NXtransformations group for each diffractometer and name the group appropriate to the device. Collecting the motors of a sample table or xyz-stage in an NXtransformation group is equally possible.

#### Symbols:

No symbol table

#### Groups cited:

#### Structure:

**AXISNAME:** (optional) *NX\_NUMBER* {units=*NX\_TRANSFORMATION*}

Units need to be appropriate for translation or rotation

The name of this field is not forced. The user is free to use any name that does not cause confusion. When using more than one AXISNAME field, make sure that each field name is unique in the same group, as required by HDF5.

The values given should be the start points of exposures for the corresponding frames. The end points should be given in AXISNAME\_end.

**@transformation\_type:** (optional) *NX\_CHAR*

The transformation\_type may be translation, in which case the values are linear displacements along the axis, rotation, in which case the values are angular rotations around the axis.

If this attribute is omitted, this is an axis for which there is no motion to be specified, such as the direction of gravity, or the direction to the source, or a basis vector of a coordinate frame.

Any of these values: translation|rotation

**@vector:** (optional) *NX\_NUMBER*

Three values that define the axis for this transformation. The axis should be normalized to unit length, making it dimensionless. For rotation axes, the direction should be chosen for a right-handed rotation with increasing angle. For translation axes the direction should be chosen for increasing displacement.

**@offset:** (optional) *NX\_NUMBER*

A fixed offset applied before the transformation (three vector components).

**@offset\_units:** (optional) *NX\_CHAR*

Units of the offset. Values should be consistent with NX\_LENGTH.

**@depends\_on:** (optional) *NX\_CHAR*

Points to the path to a field defining the axis on which this depends or the string “.”.

**AXISNAME\_end:** (optional) *NX\_NUMBER* {units=*NX\_TRANSFORMATION*}

AXISNAME\_end is a placeholder for a name constructed from the actual name of an axis to which \_end has been appended.

The values in this field are the end points of the motions that start at the corresponding positions given in the AXISNAME field.

**AXISNAME\_increment\_set:** (optional) *NX\_NUMBER* {units=*NX\_TRANSFORMATION*}

AXISNAME\_increment\_set is a placeholder for a name constructed from the actual name of an axis to which \_increment\_set has been appended.

The value of this optional field is the intended average range through which the corresponding axis moves during the exposure of a frame. Ideally, the value of this field added to each value of AXISNAME would agree with the corresponding values of AXISNAME\_end, but there is a possibility of significant differences. Use of AXISNAME\_end is recommended.

**NXDL Source:** [https://github.com/nexusformat/definitions/blob/master/base\\_classes/NXtransformations.nxdl.xml](https://github.com/nexusformat/definitions/blob/master/base_classes/NXtransformations.nxdl.xml)

## NXtranslation

**Status:**

base class, extends *NXObject*

**Description:**

legacy class - (used by *NXgeometry*) - general spatial location of a component.

**Symbols:**

No symbol table

**Groups cited:** *NXgeometry*

**Structure:**

**distances[numobj, 3]:** (optional) *NX\_FLOAT* {units=*NX\_LENGTH*}

(x,y,z) This field describes the lateral movement of a component. The pair of groups NXtranslation and NXorientation together describe the position of a component. For absolute position, the origin is the scattering center (where a perfectly aligned sample would be) with the z-axis pointing downstream and the y-axis pointing gravitationally up. For a relative position the NXtranslation is taken into account before the NXorientation. The axes are right-handed and orthonormal.

**geometry:** (optional) *NXgeometry*

Link to other object if we are relative, else absent

**NXDL Source:** [https://github.com/nexusformat/definitions/blob/master/base\\_classes/NXtranslation.nxdl.xml](https://github.com/nexusformat/definitions/blob/master/base_classes/NXtranslation.nxdl.xml)

**NXuser****Status:**

base class, extends *NXObject*

**Description:**

Contact information for a user.

The format allows more than one user with the same affiliation and contact information, but a second *NXuser* group should be used if they have different affiliations, etc.

**Symbols:**

No symbol table

**Groups cited:** none**Structure:**

**name:** (optional) *NX\_CHAR*

Name of user responsible for this entry

**role:** (optional) *NX\_CHAR*

Role of user responsible for this entry. Suggested roles are “local\_contact”, “principal\_investigator”, and “proposer”

**affiliation:** (optional) *NX\_CHAR*

Affiliation of user

**address:** (optional) *NX\_CHAR*

Address of user

**telephone\_number:** (optional) *NX\_CHAR*

Telephone number of user

**fax\_number:** (optional) *NX\_CHAR*

Fax number of user

**email:** (optional) *NX\_CHAR*

Email of user

**facility\_user\_id:** (optional) *NX\_CHAR*

facility based unique identifier for this person e.g. their identification code on the facility address/contact database

**NXDL Source:** [https://github.com/nexusformat/definitions/blob/master/base\\_classes/NXuser.nxdl.xml](https://github.com/nexusformat/definitions/blob/master/base_classes/NXuser.nxdl.xml)

## **NXvelocity\_selector**

**Status:**

base class, extends *NXObject*

**Description:**

A neutron velocity selector

**Symbols:**

No symbol table

**Groups cited:** *NXgeometry*

**Structure:**

**type:** (optional) *NX\_CHAR*

velocity selector type

**rotation\_speed:** (optional) *NX\_FLOAT* {units=*NX\_FREQUENCY*}

velocity selector rotation speed

**radius:** (optional) *NX\_FLOAT* {units=*NX\_LENGTH*}

radius at beam centre

**spwidth:** (optional) *NX\_FLOAT* {units=*NX\_LENGTH*}

spoke width at beam centre

**length:** (optional) *NX\_FLOAT* {units=*NX\_LENGTH*}

rotor length

**num:** (optional) *NX\_INT* {units=*NX\_UNITLESS*}

number of spokes/lamella

**twist:** (optional) *NX\_FLOAT* {units=*NX\_ANGLE*}

twist angle along axis

**table:** (optional) *NX\_FLOAT* {units=*NX\_ANGLE*}

offset vertical angle

**height:** (optional) *NX\_FLOAT* {units=*NX\_LENGTH*}

input beam height

**width:** (optional) *NX\_FLOAT* {units=*NX\_LENGTH*}

input beam width

**wavelength:** (optional) *NX\_FLOAT* {units=*NX\_WAVELENGTH*}

wavelength

**wavelength\_spread:** (optional) *NX\_FLOAT* {units=*NX\_WAVELENGTH*}

deviation FWHM /Wavelength

**geometry:** (optional) *NXgeometry*

**NXDL Source:** [https://github.com/nexusformat/definitions/blob/master/base\\_classes/NXvelocity\\_selector.nxdl.xml](https://github.com/nexusformat/definitions/blob/master/base_classes/NXvelocity_selector.nxdl.xml)

## NXxraylens

### Status:

base class, extends *NXObject*

### Description:

An X-ray lens, typically at a synchrotron X-ray beam line.

Based on information provided by Gerd Wellenreuther (DESY).

### Symbols:

No symbol table

### Groups cited:

### Structure:

**lens\_geometry:** (optional) *NX\_CHAR*

Geometry of the lens

Any of these values:

- paraboloid
- spherical
- elliptical
- hyperbolical

**symmetric:** (optional) *NX\_BOOLEAN*

Is the device symmetric?

**cylindrical:** (optional) *NX\_BOOLEAN*

Is the device cylindrical?

**focus\_type:** (optional) *NX\_CHAR*

The type of focus of the lens

Any of these values: line | point

**lens\_thickness:** (optional) *NX\_FLOAT* {units=*NX\_LENGTH*}

Thickness of the lens

**lens\_length:** (optional) *NX\_FLOAT* {units=*NX\_LENGTH*}

Length of the lens

**curvature:** (optional) *NX\_FLOAT* {units=*NX\_LENGTH*}

Radius of the curvature as measured in the middle of the lens

**aperture:** (optional) *NX\_FLOAT* {units=*NX\_LENGTH*}

Diameter of the lens.

**number\_of\_lenses:** (optional) *NX\_INT*

Number of lenses that make up the compound lens.

**lens\_material:** (optional) *NX\_CHAR*

Material used to make the lens.

**gas:** (optional) *NX\_CHAR*

Gas used to fill the lens

**gas\_pressure:** (optional) *NX\_FLOAT* {units=*NX\_PRESSURE*}

Gas pressure in the lens

**cylinder\_orientation:** (optional) *NXnote*

Orientation of the cylinder axis.

**NXDL Source:** [https://github.com/nexusformat/definitions/blob/master/base\\_classes/NXxraylens.nxdl.xml](https://github.com/nexusformat/definitions/blob/master/base_classes/NXxraylens.nxdl.xml)

### 3.3.2 Application Definitions

A description of each NeXus application definition is given. NeXus application definitions define the *minimum* set of terms that *must* be used in an instance of that class. Application definitions also may define terms that are optional in the NeXus data file. The definition, in this case, reserves the exact term by declaring its spelling and description. Consider an application definition as a *contract* between a data provider (such as the beam line control system) and a data consumer (such as a data analysis program for a scientific technique) that describes the information is certain to be available in a data file.

Use NeXus links liberally in data files to reduce duplication of data. In application definitions involving raw data, write the raw data in the *NXinstrument* tree and then link to it from the location(s) defined in the relevant application definition.

***NXarchive*** This is a definition for data to be archived by ICAT (<http://www.icatproject.org/>).

***NXarpes*** This is an application definition for angular resolved photo electron spectroscopy.

***NXcanSAS*** Implementation of the canSAS standard to store reduced small-angle scattering data of any dimension.

***NXdirecttof*** This is a application definition for raw data from a direct geometry TOF spectrometer

***NXfluo*** This is an application definition for raw data from an X-ray fluorescence experiment

***NXindirecttof*** This is a application definition for raw data from a direct geometry TOF spectrometer

***NXiqproc*** Application definition for any  $I(Q)$  data.

***NXlauetof*** This is the application definition for a TOF laue diffractometer

***NXmonopd*** Monochromatic Neutron and X-Ray Powder diffractometer

***NXmx*** functional application definition for macromolecular crystallography

***NXrefscan*** This is an application definition for a monochromatic scanning reflectometer.

***NXreftof*** This is an application definition for raw data from a TOF reflectometer.

***NXsas*** raw, monochromatic 2-D SAS data with an area detector

***NXsastof*** raw, 2-D SAS data with an area detector with a time-of-flight source

***NXscan*** Application definition for a generic scan instrument.

**NXspe** NXSPE Inelastic Format. Application definition for NXSPE file format.

**NXsqom** This is the application definition for S(Q,OM) processed data.

**NXstxm** Application definition for a STXM instrument.

**NXtas** This is an application definition for a triple axis spectrometer.

**NXtofpd** This is a application definition for raw data from a TOF neutron powder diffractometer

**NXtofraw** This is an application definition for raw data from a generic TOF instrument

**NXtofsingle** This is a application definition for raw data from a generic TOF instrument

**NXtomo** This is the application definition for x-ray or neutron tomography raw data.

**NXtomophase** This is the application definition for x-ray or neutron tomography raw data with phase contrast variation at each point.

**NXtomoproc** This is an application definition for the final result of a tomography experiment: a 3D construction of some volume of physical properties.

**NXxas** This is an application definition for raw data from an X-ray absorption spectroscopy experiment.

**NXxasproc** Processed data from XAS. This is energy versus I(incoming)/I(absorbed).

**NXxbase** This definition covers the common parts of all monochromatic single crystal raw data application definitions.

**NXxeuler** raw data from a four-circle diffractometer with an eulerian cradle, extends *NXxbase*

**NXxkappa** raw data from a kappa geometry (CAD4) single crystal diffractometer, extends *NXxbase*

**NXxlaue** raw data from a single crystal laue camera, extends *NXxrot*

**NXxlaueplate** raw data from a single crystal Laue camera, extends *NXxlaue*

**NXxnb** raw data from a single crystal diffractometer, extends *NXxbase*

**NXxrot** raw data from a rotation camera, extends *NXxbase*

## NXarchive

### Status:

application definition, extends *NXObject*

### Description:

This is a definition for data to be archived by ICAT (<http://www.icatproject.org/>).

### Symbols:

No symbol table

### Groups cited:

*NXentry*, *NXinstrument*, *NXsample*, *NXsource*, *NXuser*

### Structure:

**entry:** (required) *NXentry*

**@index:** (required) *NX\_CHAR*

**title:** (required) *NX\_CHAR*

**experiment\_identifier:** (required) *NX\_CHAR*

unique identifier for the experiment

**experiment\_description:** (required) *NX\_CHAR*

Brief description of the experiment and its objectives

**collection\_identifier:** (required) *NX\_CHAR*

ID of user or DAQ define group of data files

**collection\_description:** (required) *NX\_CHAR*

Brief summary of the collection, including grouping criteria

**entry\_identifier:** (required) *NX\_CHAR*

unique identifier for this measurement as provided by the facility

**start\_time:** (required) *NX\_DATE\_TIME*

**end\_time:** (required) *NX\_DATE\_TIME*

**duration:** (required) *NX\_FLOAT* {units=*NX\_TIME*}

TODO: needs documentation

**collection\_time:** (required) *NX\_FLOAT* {units=*NX\_TIME*}

TODO: needs documentation

**run\_cycle:** (required) *NX\_CHAR*

TODO: needs documentation

**revision:** (required) *NX\_CHAR*

revision ID of this file, may be after recalibration, reprocessing etc.

**definition:** (required) *NX\_CHAR*

Official NeXus NXDL schema to which this file conforms

Obligatory value: NXarchive

**program:** (required) *NX\_CHAR*

The program and version used for generating this file

**@version:** (required) *NX\_CHAR*

**release\_date:** (required) *NX\_CHAR* {units=*NX\_TIME*}

when this file is to be released into PD

**user:** (required) *NXuser*

**name:** (required) *NX\_CHAR*

**role:** (required) *NX\_CHAR*

role of the user

**facility\_user\_id:** (required) *NX\_CHAR*

ID of the user in the facility bureaucracy database

**instrument:** (required) *NXinstrument*

**name:** (required) *NX\_CHAR*

**description:** (required) *NX\_CHAR*

Brief description of the instrument

**SOURCE:** (required) *NXsource*

**type:** (required) *NX\_CHAR*

Any of these values:

- Spallation Neutron Source
- Pulsed Reactor Neutron Source
- Reactor Neutron Source
- Synchrotron X-Ray Source
- Pulsed Muon Source
- Rotating Anode X-Ray
- Fixed Tube X-Ray

**name:** (required) *NX\_CHAR*

**probe:** (required) *NX\_CHAR*

Any of these values: neutron|x-ray|electron

**sample:** (required) *NXsample*

**name:** (required) *NX\_CHAR*

Descriptive name of sample

**sample\_id:** (required) *NX\_CHAR*

Unique database id of the sample

**description:** (required) *NX\_CHAR*

**type:** (required) *NX\_CHAR*

Any of these values:

- sample
- sample+can
- calibration sample
- normalisation sample
- simulated data
- none
- sample\_environment

**chemical\_formula:** (required) *NX\_CHAR*

Chemical formula formatted according to CIF conventions

**preparation\_date:** (required) *NX\_CHAR* {units=*NX\_TIME*}

**situation:** (required) *NX\_CHAR*

Description of the environment the sample is in: air, vacuum, oxidizing atmosphere, dehydrated, etc.

**temperature:** (required) *NX\_FLOAT* {units=*NX\_TEMPERATURE*}

**magnetic\_field:** (required) *NX\_FLOAT* {units=*NX\_CURRENT*}

**electric\_field:** (required) *NX\_FLOAT* {units=*NX\_VOLTAGE*}

**stress\_field:** (required) *NX\_FLOAT* {units=*NX\_UNITLESS*}

**pressure:** (required) *NX\_FLOAT* {units=*NX\_PRESSURE*}

**NXDL Source:** <https://github.com/nexusformat/definitions/blob/master/applications/NXarchive.nxdl.xml>

## NXarpes

### Status:

application definition, extends *NXObject*

### Description:

This is an application definition for angular resolved photo electron spectroscopy.

It has been drawn up with hemispherical electron analysers in mind.

### Symbols:

No symbol table

**Groups cited:** *NXdata*, *NXdetector*, *NXentry*, *NXinstrument*, *NXmonochromator*, *NXsample*, *NXsource*

### Structure:

**ENTRY:** (required) *NXentry*

**@entry:** (required) *NX\_CHAR*

NeXus convention is to use “entry1”, “entry2”, … for analysis software to locate each entry.

**title:** (required) *NX\_CHAR*

**start\_time:** (required) *NX\_DATE\_TIME*

**definition:** (required) *NX\_CHAR*

Official NeXus NXDL schema to which this file conforms.

Obligatory value: NXarpes

**INSTRUMENT:** (required) *NXinstrument*

**SOURCE:** (required) *NXsource*

**type:** (required) *NX\_CHAR*

**name:** (required) *NX\_CHAR*

**probe:** (required) *NX\_CHAR*

Obligatory value: x-ray

**monochromator:** (required) *NXmonochromator*

**energy:** (required) *NX\_NUMBER* {units=*NX\_ENERGY*}

**analyser:** (required) *NXdetector*

**data:** (required) *NX\_NUMBER*

**lens\_mode:** (required) *NX\_CHAR*

setting for the electron analyser lens

**acquisition\_mode:** (required) *NX\_CHAR*

Any of these values: `swept` | `fixed`

**entrance\_slit\_shape:** (required) `NX_CHAR`  
 Any of these values: `curved` | `straight`

**entrance\_slit\_setting:** (required) `NX_NUMBER` {units=`NX_ANY`}  
 dial setting of the entrance slit

**entrance\_slit\_size:** (required) `NX_CHAR` {units=`NX_LENGTH`}  
 size of the entrance slit

**pass\_energy:** (required) `NX_CHAR` {units=`NX_ENERGY`}  
 energy of the electrons on the mean path of the analyser

**time\_per\_channel:** (required) `NX_CHAR` {units=`NX_TIME`}  
 todo: define more clearly

**angles:** (required) `NX_NUMBER` {units=`NX_ANGLE`}  
 Angular axis of the analyser data which dimension the axis applies to is defined using the normal NXdata methods.

**energies:** (required) `NX_NUMBER` {units=`NX_ENERGY`}  
 Energy axis of the analyser data which dimension the axis applies to is defined using the normal NXdata methods.

**sensor\_size[]:** (required) `NX_INT`  
 number of raw active elements in fast and slow pixel dimension direction

**region\_origin[]:** (required) `NX_INT`  
 origin of rectangular region selected for readout

**region\_size[]:** (required) `NX_INT`  
 size of rectangular region selected for readout

**SAMPLE:** (required) `NXsample`

**name:** (required) `NX_CHAR`  
 Descriptive name of sample

**temperature:** (required) `NX_NUMBER` {units=`NX_TEMPERATURE`}

**DATA:** (required) `NXdata`

**NXDL Source:** <https://github.com/nexusformat/definitions/blob/master/applications/NXarpes.nxdl.xml>

## NXcanSAS

### Status:

application definition, extends *NXObject*

### Description:

Implementation of the canSAS standard to store reduced small-angle scattering data of any dimension.

For more details, see:

- <http://www.cansas.org/>
- <http://www.cansas.org/formats/canSAS1d/1.1/doc/>
- <http://cansas-org.github.io/canSAS2012/>
- [https://github.com/canSAS-org/NXcanSAS\\_examples](https://github.com/canSAS-org/NXcanSAS_examples)

The minimum requirements for *reduced* small-angle scattering data as described by canSAS are summarized in the following figure:

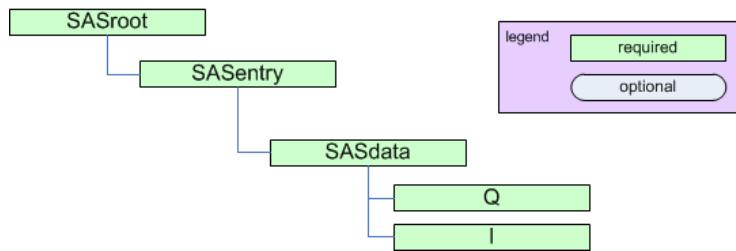


Fig. 10: The minimum requirements for *reduced* small-angle scattering data. (full image) See [below](#) for the minimum required information for a NeXus data file written to the NXcanSAS specification.

### Implementation of canSAS standard in NeXus

This application definition is an implementation of the canSAS standard for storing both one-dimensional and multi-dimensional *reduced* small-angle scattering data.

- NXcanSAS is for reduced SAS data and metadata to be stored together in one file.
- *Reduced* SAS data consists of  $I(\vec{Q})$  or  $I(|\vec{Q}|)$
- External file links are not to be used for the reduced data.
- A good practice/practise is, at least, to include a reference to how the data was acquired and processed. Yet this is not a requirement.
- There is no need for NXcanSAS to refer to any raw data.

The canSAS data format has a structure similar to NeXus, not identical. To allow canSAS data to be expressed in NeXus, yet identifiable by the canSAS standard, an additional group attribute `cansAS_class` was introduced. Here is the mapping of some common groups.

group (*)	NX_class	canSAS_class
sasentry	NXEntry	SASentry
sasdata	NXdata	SASdata
sasdetector	NXdetector	SASdetector
sasinstrument	NXinstrument	SASinstrument
sasnote	NXnote	SASnote
sasprocess	NXprocess	SASprocess
sasprocessnote	NXcollection	SASprocessnote
sastransmission	NXdata	SAStransmission_spectrum
sassample	NXsample	SASsample
sassource	NXsource	SASsource

(\*) The name of each group is a suggestion, not a fixed requirement and is chosen as fits each data file. See the section on defining [NXDL group and field names](#).

Refer to the NeXus Coordinate System drawing (*The NeXus Coordinate System*) for choice and direction of *x*, *y*, and *z* axes.

### The minimum required information for a NeXus data file written to the NXcanSAS specification.

```

1 NXcanSAS HDF5 data file
2 entry : NXentry
3   @NX_class = "NXentry"
4   @canSAS_class = "SASentry"
5   @version = "1.0"
6   definition = "NXcanSAS"
7   run = "<see the documentation>"
8   title = "something descriptive yet short"
9   data : NXdata
10  @NX_class = "NXdata"
11  @canSAS_class = "SASdata"
12  @signal = "I"
13  @I_axes = "<see the documentation>"
14  @Q_indices : NX_INT = <see the documentation>
15  I : NX_NUMBER
16  @units = <see the documentation>
17  Q : NX_NUMBER
18  @units = NX_PER_LENGTH

```

#### Symbols:

No symbol table

**Groups cited:** *NXaperture*, *NXcollection*, *NXcollimator*, *NXdata*, *NXdetector*, *NXentry*, *NXinstrument*, *NXnote*, *NXprocess*, *NXsample*, *NXsource*

#### Structure:

**ENTRY:** (required) [NXentry](#)

Place the canSAS SASentry group as a child of a NeXus NXentry group (when data from multiple techniques are being stored) or as a replacement for the NXentry group.

Note: It is required for all numerical objects to provide a *units* attribute that describes the

engineering units. Use the Unidata UDunits<sup>1</sup> specification as this is compatible with various community standards.

**@default:** (optional) *NX\_CHAR*

Declares which *NXdata* group contains the data to be shown by default. It is needed to resolve ambiguity when more than one *NXdata* group exists. The value is the name of the default *NXdata* group. Usually, this will be the name of the first *SASdata* group.

**@canSAS\_class:** (required) *NX\_CHAR*

Official canSAS group: **SASentry**

Obligatory value: SASentry

**@version:** (required) *NX\_CHAR*

Describes the version of the canSAS standard used to write this data. This must be a text (not numerical) representation. Such as:

```
@version="1.0"
```

Obligatory value: 1.0

**definition:** (required) *NX\_CHAR*

Official NeXus NXDL schema to which this subentry conforms.

Obligatory value: NXcanSAS

**title:** (required) *NX\_CHAR*

Title of this *SASentry*. Make it so that you can recognize the data by its title. Could be the name of the sample, the name for the measured data, or something else representative.

**run:** (required) *NX\_CHAR*

Run identification for this *SASentry*. For many facilities, this is an integer, such as an experiment number. Use multiple instances of *run* as needed, keeping in mind that HDF5 requires unique names for all entities in a group.

**@name:** (optional) *NX\_CHAR*

Optional string attribute to identify this particular *run*. Could use this to associate (correlate) multiple *SASdata* elements with *run* elements.

**DATA:** (required) *NXdata*

A *SASData* group contains a single reduced small-angle scattering data set that can be represented as  $I(\vec{Q})$  or  $I(|\vec{Q}|)$ .

$Q$  can be either a vector ( $\vec{Q}$ ) or a vector magnitude ( $|\vec{Q}|$ )

The name of each *SASdata* group must be unique within a *SASentry* group. Suggest using names such as *sasdata01*.

NOTE: For the first *SASdata* group, be sure to write the chosen name into the *SASentry*/**@default** attribute, as in:

```
SASentry/@default="sasdata01"
```

A *SASdata* group has several attributes:

---

<sup>1</sup> The UDunits specification also includes instructions for derived units.

- I\_axes
- Q\_indices
- Mask\_indices

To indicate the dependency relationships of other varied parameters, use attributes similar to @Mask\_indices (such as @Temperature\_indices or @Pressure\_indices).

**@canSAS\_class:** (required) *NX\_CHAR*

Official canSAS group: NXcanSAS (applications); SASdata

Obligatory value: SASdata

**@signal:** (required) *NX\_CHAR*

Name of the default data field.

Obligatory value:

- I: For canSAS **SASdata**, this is always “I”.

**@I\_axes:** (required) *NX\_CHAR*

String array that defines the independent data fields used in the default plot for all of the dimensions of the *signal* field (the *signal* field is the field in this group that is named by the *signal* attribute of this group). One entry is provided for every dimension of the *I* data object. Such as:

```
@I_axes="Temperature", "Time", "Pressure", "Q", "Q"
```

Since there are five items in the list, the intensity field of this example *I* must be a five-dimensional array (rank=5).

**@Q\_indices:** (required) *NX\_INT*

Integer or integer array that describes which indices (of the *I* data object) are used to reference the *Q* data object. The items in this array use zero-based indexing. Such as:

```
@Q_indices=1, 3, 4
```

which indicates that *Q* requires three indices from the *I* data object: one for time and two for *Q* position. Thus, in this example, the *Q* data is time-dependent:  $\vec{Q}(t)$ .

**@mask:** (required) *NX\_CHAR*

Name of the data mask field.

The data *mask* must have the same shape as the *data* field. Positions in the mask correspond to positions in the *data* field. The value of the mask field may be either a boolean array where `false` means *no mask* and `true` means *mask* or a more descriptive array as defined in *NXdetector*.

**@Mask\_indices:** (optional) *NX\_CHAR*

Integer or integer array that describes which indices (of the *I* data object) are used to reference the *Mask* data object. The items in this array use zero-based indexing. Such as:

```
@Mask_indices=3, 4
```

which indicates that  $Q$  requires two indices from the  $I$  data object for  $Q$  position.

**@timestamp:** (optional) *NX\_DATE\_TIME*

ISO-8601 time<sup>2</sup>

**Q:** (required) *NX\_NUMBER* {units=*NX\_PER\_LENGTH*}

Array of  $Q$  data to accompany  $I$ .

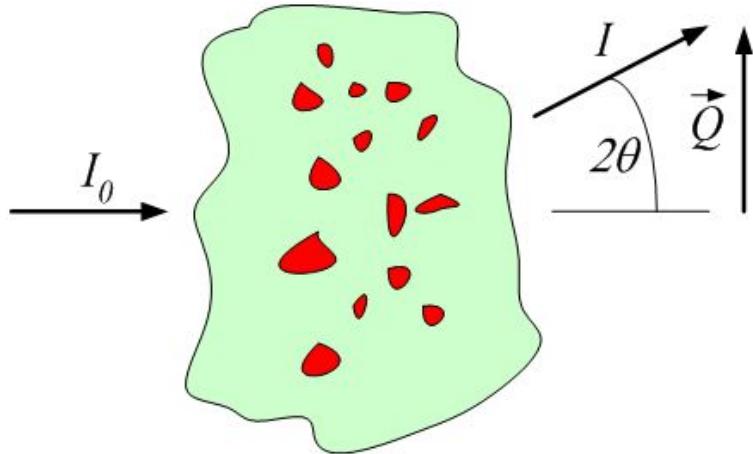


Fig. 11: The  $\vec{Q}$  geometry. (full image)

$Q$  may be represented as either the three-dimensional scattering vector  $\vec{Q}$  or the magnitude of the scattering vector,  $|\vec{Q}|$ .

$$|\vec{Q}| = (4\pi/\lambda)\sin(\theta)$$

When we write  $Q$ , we may refer to either or both of  $|\vec{Q}|$  or  $\vec{Q}$ , depending on the context.

**@units:** (required) *NX\_CHAR*

Engineering units to use when expressing  $Q$  and related terms.

Data expressed in other units will generate a warning from validation software and may not be processed by some analysis software packages.

Any of these values:

- 1/m
- 1/nm: preferred
- 1/angstrom

**@uncertainties:** (optional) *NX\_CHAR*

<sup>2</sup> ISO-8601 standard time representation.

NeXus dates and times are reported in ISO-8601 (e.g., yyyy-mm-ddThh:mm:ss) or modified ISO-8601 (e.g., yyyy-mm-dd hh:mm:ss). See: <http://www.w3.org/TR/NOTE-datetime> or [http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/ISO\\_8601](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/ISO_8601) for more details.

(optional: for numerical arrays)

Names the dataset (in this SASdata group) that provides the uncertainty to be used for data analysis. The name of the dataset containing the  $Q$  uncertainty is flexible. The name must be unique in the *SASdata* group.

Such as:

```
@uncertainties="Q_uncertainties"
```

The *uncertainties* field will have the same *shape* (dimensions) as the  $Q$  field.

These values are the estimates of uncertainty of each  $Q$ . By default, this will be interpreted to be the estimated standard deviation. In special cases, when a standard deviation cannot possibly be used, its value can specify another measure of distribution width.

There may also be a subdirectory (optional) with constituent components.

---

**Note:** To report distribution in reported  $Q$  values, use the `@resolutions` attribute. It is possible for both `@resolutions` and `uncertainties` to be reported.

---

`@resolutions`: (optional) *NX\_CHAR*

(optional: for numerical arrays)

Names the dataset (in this SASdata group) containing the  $Q$  resolution. The name of the dataset containing the  $Q$  resolution is flexible. The name must be unique in the *SASdata* group.

The *resolutions* field will have the same *shape* (dimensions) as the  $Q$  field.

Generally, this is the principal resolution of each  $Q$ . Names the data object (in this SASdata group) that provides the  $Q$  resolution to be used for data analysis. Such as:

```
@resolutions="Qdev"
```

To specify two-dimensional resolution for slit-smearing geometry, such as ( $dQw$ ,  $dQl$ ), use a string array, such as:

```
@resolutions="dQw", "dQl"
```

There may also be a subdirectory (optional) with constituent components.

This pattern will demonstrate how to introduce further as-yet unanticipated terms related to the data.

By default, the values of the resolutions data object are assumed to be one standard deviation of any function used to approximate the resolution function. This equates to the width of the gaussian distribution if a Gaussian is chosen. See the `@resolutions_description` attribute.

---

**Note:** To report uncertainty in reported  $Q$  values, use the @uncertainties attribute. It is possible for both @resolutions and uncertainties to be reported.

---

**@resolutions\_description:** (optional) *NX\_CHAR*

(optional) Generally, this describes the  $Q$  @resolutions data object. By default, the value is assumed to be “Gaussian”. These are suggestions:

- Gaussian
- Lorentzian
- Square : note that the full width of the square would be ~2.9 times the standard deviation specified in the vector
- Triangular
- Sawtooth-outward : vertical edge pointing to larger  $Q$
- Sawtooth-inward vertical edge pointing to smaller  $Q$
- Bin : range of values contributing (for example, when 2-D detector data have been reduced to a 1-D  $I(|Q|)$  dataset)

For other meanings, it may be necessary to provide further details such as the function used to assess the resolution. In such cases, use additional datasets or a *NXnote* subgroup to include that detail.

**I:** (required) *NX\_NUMBER*

Array of intensity ( $I$ ) data.

The intensity may be represented in one of these forms:

**absolute units:**  $d\Sigma/d\Omega(Q)$  differential cross-section per unit volume per unit solid angle (such as: 1/cm/sr or 1/m/sr)

**absolute units:**  $d\sigma/d\Omega(Q)$  differential cross-section per unit atom per unit solid angle (such as: cm<sup>2</sup> or m<sup>2</sup>)

**arbitrary units:**  $I(Q)$  usually a ratio of two detectors but units are meaningless (such as: a.u. or counts)

This presents a few problems for analysis software to sort out when reading the data. Fortunately, it is possible to analyze the *units* to determine which type of intensity is being reported and make choices at the time the file is read. But this is an area for consideration and possible improvement.

One problem arises with software that automatically converts data into some canonical units used by that software. The software should not convert units between these different types of intensity indiscriminately.

A second problem is that when arbitrary units are used, then the set of possible analytical results is restricted. With such units, no meaningful volume fraction or number density can be determined directly from  $I(Q)$ .

In some cases, it is possible to apply a factor to convert the arbitrary units to an absolute scale. This should be considered as a possibility of the analysis process.

Where this documentation says *typical units*, it is possible that small-angle data may be presented in other units and still be consistent with NeXus. See the [NeXus Data Units](#) section.

**@units:** (required) [NX\\_CHAR](#)

Engineering units to use when expressing  $I$  and intensity-related terms.

Data expressed in other units (or missing a @units attribute) will be treated as `arbitrary` by some software packages.

For software using the UDUNITS-2 library, `arbitrary` will be changed to `unknown` for handling with that library.

Any of these values:

- `1/m`: includes  $m^2/m^3$  and  $1/m/\text{sr}$
- `1/cm`: includes  $cm^2/cm^3$  and  $1/cm/\text{sr}$
- `m2/g`
- `cm2/g`
- `arbitrary`

**@uncertainties:** (optional) [NX\\_CHAR](#)

(optional: for numerical arrays)

Names the dataset (in this SASdata group) that provides the uncertainty of  $I$  to be used for data analysis. The name of the dataset containing the  $I$  uncertainty is flexible. The name must be unique in the *SASdata* group.

Generally, this is the estimate of the uncertainty of each  $I$ . Typically the estimated standard deviation.

`Idev` is the canonical name from the 1D standard. The NXcanSAS standard allows for the name to be described using this attribute. Such as:

```
@uncertainties="Idev"
```

**@scaling\_factor:** (optional) [NX\\_CHAR](#)

(optional) Names the field (a.k.a. dataset) that contains a factor to multiply  $I$ . By default, this value is unity. Should an uncertainty be associated with the scaling factor field, the field containing that uncertainty would be designated via the `uncertainties` attribute. Such as:

```
I : NX_NUMBER
@uncertainties="Idev" : NX_CHAR
@scaling_factor="I_scaling" : NX_CHAR
Idev : NX_NUMBER
I_scaling : NX_NUMBER
@uncertainties="I_scaling_dev" : NX_CHAR
I_scaling_dev : NX_NUMBER
```

The exact names for `I_scaling` and `I_scaling_dev` are not defined by NXcanSAS. The user has the flexibility to use names different than those shown in this example.

**Idev:** (optional) [NX\\_NUMBER](#)

Estimated **uncertainty** (usually standard deviation) in  $I$ . Must have the same units as  $I$ .

When present, the name of this field is also recorded in the *uncertainties* attribute of  $I$ , as in:

```
I/@uncertainties="Idev"
```

**@units:** (required) *NX\_CHAR*

Engineering units to use when expressing  $I$  and intensity-related terms.

Data expressed in other units (or missing a @units attribute) will generate a warning from any validation process and will be treated as arbitrary by some analysis software packages.

For software using the UDUNITS-2 library, arbitrary will be changed to unknown for handling with that library.

Any of these values:

- 1/m: includes m<sup>2</sup>/m<sup>3</sup> and 1/m/sr
- 1/cm: includes cm<sup>2</sup>/cm<sup>3</sup> and 1/cm/sr
- m<sup>2</sup>/g
- cm<sup>2</sup>/g
- arbitrary

**Qdev:** (optional) *NX\_NUMBER* {units=*NX\_PER\_LENGTH*}

Estimated  $Q$  **resolution** (usually standard deviation). Must have the same units as  $Q$ .

When present, the name of this field is also recorded in the *resolutions* attribute of  $Q$ , as in:

```
Q/@resolutions="Qdev"
```

or:

```
Q/@resolutions="dQw", "dQl"
```

**@units:** (required) *NX\_CHAR*

Engineering units to use when expressing  $Q$  and related terms.

Data expressed in other units may not be processed by some software packages.

Any of these values:

- 1/m
- 1/nm: preferred
- 1/angstrom

**dQw:** (optional) *NX\_NUMBER* {units=*NX\_PER\_LENGTH*}

$Q$  **resolution** along the axis of scanning (the high-resolution *slit width* direction). Useful for defining resolution data from slit-smearing instruments such as Bonse-Hart geometry. Must have the same units as  $Q$ .

When present, the name of this field is also recorded in the *resolutions* attribute of *Q*, as in:

```
Q/@resolutions="dQw", "dQl"
```

**@units:** (required) *NX\_CHAR*

Engineering units to use when expressing *Q* and related terms.

Data expressed in other units may not be processed by some software packages.

Any of these values:

- 1/m
- 1/nm: preferred
- 1/angstrom

**dQl:** (optional) *NX\_NUMBER* {units=*NX\_PER\_LENGTH*}

*Q resolution* perpendicular to the axis of scanning (the low-resolution *slit length* direction). Useful for defining resolution data from slit-smearing instruments such as Bonse-Hart geometry. Must have the same units as *Q*.

When present, the name of this field is also recorded in the *resolutions* attribute of *Q*, as in:

```
Q/@resolutions="dQw", "dQl"
```

**@units:** (required) *NX\_CHAR*

Engineering units to use when expressing *Q* and related terms.

Data expressed in other units may not be processed by some software packages.

Any of these values:

- 1/m
- 1/nm: preferred
- 1/angstrom

**Qmean:** (optional) *NX\_NUMBER* {units=*NX\_PER\_LENGTH*}

Mean value of *Q* for this data point. Useful when describing data that has been binned from higher-resolution data.

It is expected that *Q* is provided and that both *Q* and *Qmean* will have the same units.

**@units:** (required) *NX\_CHAR*

Engineering units to use when expressing *Q* and related terms.

Data expressed in other units may not be processed by some software packages.

Any of these values:

- 1/m
- 1/nm: preferred

- 1/angstrom

**ShadowFactor:** (optional) *NX\_CHAR* {units=*NX\_DIMENSIONLESS*}

A numerical factor applied to pixels affected by the beam stop penumbra.  
Used in data files from NIST/NCNR instruments.

See: J.G. Barker and J.S. Pedersen (1995) *J. Appl. Cryst.* **28**, 105-114.

**INSTRUMENT:** (optional) *NXinstrument*

Description of the small-angle scattering instrument.

Consider, carefully, the relevance to the SAS data analysis process when adding sub-groups in this **NXinstrument** group. Additional information can be added but will likely be ignored by standardized data analysis processes.

The NeXus *NXbeam* base class may be added as a subgroup of this **NXinstrument** group or as a subgroup of the **NXsample** group to describe properties of the beam at any point downstream from the source.

**@canSAS\_class:** (required) *NX\_CHAR*

Official canSAS group: NXcanSAS (applications); SASinstrument

Obligatory value: SASinstrument

**APERTURE:** (optional) *NXaperture*

*NXaperture* is generic and limits the variation in data files.

Possible NeXus base class alternatives are: *NXpinhole* or *NXslit*.

**@canSAS\_class:** (required) *NX\_CHAR*

Official canSAS group: NXcanSAS (applications); SASaperture

Obligatory value: SASaperture

**shape:** (required) *NX\_CHAR*

describe the type of aperture (pinhole, 4-blade slit, Soller slit, ...)

**x\_gap:** (optional) *NX\_NUMBER* {units=*NX\_LENGTH*}

opening along the *x* axis

**y\_gap:** (optional) *NX\_NUMBER* {units=*NX\_LENGTH*}

opening along the *y* axis

**COLLIMATOR:** (optional) *NXcollimator*

Description of a collimating element (defines the divergence of the beam) in the instrument.

To document a slit, pinhole, or the beam, refer to the documentation of the **NXinstrument** group above.

**@canSAS\_class:** (required) *NX\_CHAR*

Official canSAS group: NXcanSAS (applications); SAScollimation

Obligatory value: SAScollimation

**length:** (optional) *NX\_NUMBER* {units=*NX\_LENGTH*}

Amount/length of collimation inserted (as on a SANS instrument)

**distance:** (optional) *NX\_NUMBER* {units=*NX\_LENGTH*}

Distance from this collimation element to the sample

**DETECTOR:** (optional) *NXdetector*

Description of a detector in the instrument.

**@canSAS\_class:** (required) *NX\_CHAR*

Official canSAS group: NXcanSAS (applications); SASdetector

Obligatory value: SASdetector

**name:** (required) *NX\_CHAR*

Identifies the name of this detector

**SDD:** (optional) *NX\_NUMBER* {units=*NX\_LENGTH*}

Distance between sample and detector.

Note: In NXdetector, the *distance* field records the distance to the previous component ... most often the sample. This use is the same as SDD for most SAS instruments but not all. For example, Bonse-Hart cameras have one or more crystals between the sample and detector.

We define here the field SDD to document without ambiguity the distance between sample and detector.

**slit\_length:** (optional) *NX\_NUMBER* {units=*NX\_PER\_LENGTH*}

Slit length of the instrument for this detector, expressed in the same units as *Q*.

**x\_position:** (optional) *NX\_NUMBER* {units=*NX\_LENGTH*}

Location of the detector in *x*

**y\_position:** (optional) *NX\_NUMBER* {units=*NX\_LENGTH*}

Location of the detector in *y*

**roll:** (optional) *NX\_NUMBER* {units=*NX\_ANGLE*}

Rotation of the detector about the *z* axis (roll)

**pitch:** (optional) *NX\_NUMBER* {units=*NX\_ANGLE*}

Rotation of the detector about the *x* axis (roll)

**yaw:** (optional) *NX\_NUMBER* {units=*NX\_ANGLE*}

Rotation of the detector about the *y* axis (yaw)

**beam\_center\_x:** (optional) *NX\_FLOAT* {units=*NX\_LENGTH*}

Position of the beam center on the detector.

This is the *x* position where the direct beam would hit the detector plane.

This is a length and can be outside of the actual detector. The length can be in physical units or pixels as documented by the units attribute. The value can be any real number (positive, zero, or negative).

**beam\_center\_y:** (optional) *NX\_FLOAT* {units=*NX\_LENGTH*}

Position of the beam center on the detector.

This is the y position where the direct beam would hit the detector plane. This is a length and can be outside of the actual detector. The length can be in physical units or pixels as documented by the units attribute. The value can be any real number (positive, zero, or negative).

**x\_pixel\_size:** (optional) *NX\_FLOAT* {units=*NX\_LENGTH*}

Size of each detector pixel. If it is scalar all pixels are the same size

**y\_pixel\_size:** (optional) *NX\_FLOAT* {units=*NX\_LENGTH*}

Size of each detector pixel. If it is scalar all pixels are the same size

**SOURCE:** (optional) *NXsource*

Description of the radiation source.

**@canSAS\_class:** (required) *NX\_CHAR*

Official canSAS group: NXcanSAS (applications); SASSource

Obligatory value: SASSource

**radiation:** (required) *NX\_CHAR*

Name of the radiation used. Note that this is **not** the name of the facility!

Any of these values:

- Spallation Neutron Source
- Pulsed Reactor Neutron Source
- Reactor Neutron Source
- Synchrotron X-ray Source
- Pulsed Muon Source
- Rotating Anode X-ray
- Fixed Tube X-ray
- UV Laser
- Free-Electron Laser
- Optical Laser
- Ion Source
- UV Plasma Source
- neutron
- x-ray
- muon
- electron
- ultraviolet
- visible light
- positron
- proton

**beam\_shape:** (optional) *NX\_CHAR*

Text description of the shape of the beam (incident on the sample).

<b>incident_wavelength:</b>	(optional)	<i>NX_NUMBER</i>
{units= <i>NX_WAVELENGTH</i> }		

wavelength ( $\lambda$ ) of radiation incident on the sample

**wavelength\_min:** (optional) *NX\_NUMBER* {units=*NX\_WAVELENGTH*}

Some facilities specify wavelength using a range. This is the lowest wavelength in such a range.

**wavelength\_max:** (optional) *NX\_NUMBER* {units=*NX\_WAVELENGTH*}

Some facilities specify wavelength using a range. This is the highest wavelength in such a range.

<b>incident_wavelength_spread:</b>	(optional)	<i>NX_NUMBER</i>
{units= <i>NX_WAVELENGTH</i> }		

Some facilities specify wavelength using a range. This is the width (FWHM) of such a range.

**beam\_size\_x:** (optional) *NX\_NUMBER* {units=*NX\_LENGTH*}

Size of the incident beam along the x axis.

**beam\_size\_y:** (optional) *NX\_NUMBER* {units=*NX\_LENGTH*}

Size of the incident beam along the y axis.

**SAMPLE:** (optional) *NXsample*

Description of the sample.

**@canSAS\_class:** (required) *NX\_CHAR*

Official canSAS group: NXcanSAS (applications); SASsample

Obligatory value: SASsample

**name:** (required) *NX\_CHAR*

**ID:** Text string that identifies this sample.

**thickness:** (optional) *NX\_FLOAT* {units=*NX\_LENGTH*}

Thickness of this sample

**transmission:** (optional) *NX\_NUMBER* {units=*NX\_DIMENSIONLESS*}

Transmission ( $I/I_0$ ) of this sample. There is no *units* attribute as this number is dimensionless.

Note: the ability to store a transmission *spectrum*, instead of a single value, is provided elsewhere in the structure, in the *SAStransmission\_spectrum* element.

**temperature:** (optional) *NX\_NUMBER* {units=*NX\_TEMPERATURE*}

Temperature of this sample.

**details:** (optional) *NX\_CHAR*

Any additional sample details.

**x\_position:** (optional) *NX\_NUMBER* {units=*NX\_LENGTH*}

Location of the sample in *x*

**y\_position:** (optional) *NX\_NUMBER* {units=*NX\_LENGTH*}

Location of the sample in *y*

**roll:** (optional) *NX\_NUMBER* {units=*NX\_ANGLE*}

Rotation of the sample about the *z* axis (roll)

**pitch:** (optional) *NX\_NUMBER* {units=*NX\_ANGLE*}

Rotation of the sample about the *x* axis (roll)

**yaw:** (optional) *NX\_NUMBER* {units=*NX\_ANGLE*}

Rotation of the sample about the *y* axis (yaw)

**PROCESS:** (optional) *NXprocess*

Description of a processing or analysis step.

Add additional fields as needed to describe value(s) of any variable, parameter, or term related to the *SASprocess* step. Be sure to include *units* attributes for all numerical fields.

**@canSAS\_class:** (required) *NX\_CHAR*

Official canSAS group: NXcanSAS (applications); SASprocess

Obligatory value: SASprocess

**name:** (optional) *NX\_CHAR*

Optional name for this data processing or analysis step

**date:** (optional) *NX\_DATE\_TIME*

Optional date for this data processing or analysis step.<sup>2</sup>

**description:** (optional) *NX\_CHAR*

Optional description for this data processing or analysis step

**term:** (optional) *NX\_CHAR*

Specifies the value of a single variable, parameter, or term (while defined here as a string, it could be a number) related to the *SASprocess* step.

Note: The name *term* is not required, it could take any name, as long as the name is unique within this group.

**NOTE:** (optional) *NXnote*

Any additional notes or subprocessing steps will be documented here.

An **NXnote** group can be added to any NeXus group at or below the **NXentry** group. It is shown here as a suggestion of a good place to *consider* its use.

**COLLECTION:** (optional) *NXcollection*

Describes anything about *SASprocess* that is not already described.

Any content not defined in the canSAS standard can be placed at this point.

Note: The name of this group is flexible, it could take any name, as long as it is unique within the **NXprocess** group.

**@canSAS\_class:** (required) *NX\_CHAR*

Official canSAS group: NXcanSAS (applications); SASprocessnote

Obligatory value: SASprocessnote

**COLLECTION:** (optional) *NXcollection*

Free form description of anything not covered by other elements.

**@canSAS\_class:** (required) *NX\_CHAR*

Official canSAS group: NXcanSAS (applications); SASnote

Obligatory value: SASnote

**DATA:** (optional) *NXdata*

The *SASTransmission\_spectrum* element

This describes certain data obtained from a variable-wavelength source such as pulsed-neutron source.

The name of each *SASTransmission\_spectrum* group must be unique within a SASentry group. Suggest using names such as *sastransmission\_spectrum01*.

**@canSAS\_class:** (required) *NX\_CHAR*

Official canSAS group: NXcanSAS (applications); SASTransmission\_spectrum

Obligatory value: SASTransmission\_spectrum

**@signal:** (required) *NX\_CHAR*

Name of the default data field.

Obligatory value:

- T: For **SASTransmission\_spectrum**, this is always “T”.

**@T\_axes:** (required) *NX\_CHAR*

Obligatory value:

- T: the wavelengths field (as a dimension scale) corresponding to this transmission

**@name:** (required) *NX\_CHAR*

Identify what type of spectrum is being described. It is expected that this value will take either of these two values:

value	meaning
sample	measurement with the sample and container
can	measurement with just the container

**@timestamp:** (optional) *NX\_DATE\_TIME*

ISO-8601 time<sup>2</sup>

**lambda:** (required) *NX\_NUMBER* {units=*NX\_WAVELENGTH*}

Wavelength of the radiation.

This array is of the same shape as T and Tdev.

**T:** (required) *NX\_NUMBER* {units=*NX\_DIMENSIONLESS*}

Transmission values ( $I/I_0$ ) as a function of wavelength.

This array is of the same shape as `lambda` and `Tdev`.

**@uncertainties:** (required) *NX\_CHAR*

Names the dataset (in this SASdata group) that provides the uncertainty of each transmission  $T$  to be used for data analysis. The name of the dataset containing the  $T$  uncertainty is expected to be `Tdev`.

Typically:

`@uncertainties="Tdev"`

**Tdev:** (required) *NX\_NUMBER* {units=*NX\_DIMENSIONLESS*}

Estimated uncertainty (usually standard deviation) in  $T$ . Must have the same units as  $T$ .

This is the field is named in the *uncertainties* attribute of `T`, as in:

`T/@uncertainties="Tdev"`

This array is of the same shape as `lambda` and `T`.

**NXDL Source:** <https://github.com/nexusformat/definitions/blob/master/applications/NXcanSAS.nxdl.xml>

## NXdirecttof

### Status:

application definition, extends *NXtofraw*

### Description:

This is a application definition for raw data from a direct geometry TOF spectrometer

### Symbols:

No symbol table

**Groups cited:** *NXdisk\_chopper*, *NXentry*, *NXfermi\_chopper*, *NXinstrument*

### Structure:

**entry:** (required) *NXentry*

**title:** (required) *NX\_CHAR*

**start\_time:** (required) *NX\_DATE\_TIME*

**definition:** (required) *NX\_CHAR*

Official NeXus NXDL schema to which this file conforms

Obligatory value: `NXdirecttof`

**INSTRUMENT:** (required) *NXinstrument*

We definitely want the rotation\_speed and energy of the chopper. Thus either a fermi\_chopper or a disk\_chopper group is required.

**fermi\_chopper:** (optional) *NXfermi\_chopper*

**rotation\_speed:** (required) *NX\_FLOAT* {units=*NX\_FREQUENCY*}

chopper rotation speed  
**energy:** (required) *NX\_FLOAT* {units=*NX\_ENERGY*}  
 energy selected  
**disk\_chopper:** (optional) *NXdisk\_chopper*  
**rotation\_speed:** (required) *NX\_FLOAT* {units=*NX\_FREQUENCY*}  
 chopper rotation speed  
**energy:** (required) *NX\_FLOAT* {units=*NX\_ENERGY*}  
 energy selected

**NXDL Source:** <https://github.com/nexusformat/definitions/blob/master/applications/NXdirectttof.nxdl.xml>

## NXfluo

### Status:

application definition, extends *NXObject*

### Description:

This is an application definition for raw data from an X-ray fluorescence experiment

### Symbols:

No symbol table

**Groups cited:** *NXdata*, *NXdetector*, *NXentry*, *NXinstrument*, *NXmonitor*, *NXmonochromator*, *NXsample*, *NXsource*

### Structure:

**entry:** (required) *NXentry*

**title:** (required) *NX\_CHAR*

**start\_time:** (required) *NX\_DATE\_TIME*

**definition:** (required) *NX\_CHAR*

Official NeXus NXDL schema to which this file conforms.

Obligatory value: NXfluo

**INSTRUMENT:** (required) *NXinstrument*

**SOURCE:** (required) *NXsource*

**type:** (required) *NX\_CHAR*

**name:** (required) *NX\_CHAR*

**probe:** (required) *NX\_CHAR*

Obligatory value: x-ray

**monochromator:** (required) *NXmonochromator*

**wavelength:** (required) *NX\_FLOAT*

**fluorescence:** (required) *NXdetector*

**data[nenergy]:** (required) *NX\_INT*

**energy[nenergy]:** (required) *NX\_FLOAT*

**SAMPLE:** (required) *NXsample*

**name:** (required) *NX\_CHAR*

Descriptive name of sample

**MONITOR:** (required) *NXmonitor*

**mode:** (required) *NX\_CHAR*

Count to a preset value based on either clock time (timer) or received monitor counts (monitor).

Any of these values: monitor|timer

**preset:** (required) *NX\_FLOAT*

preset value for time or monitor

**data:** (required) *NX\_INT*

**data:** (required) *NXdata*

**energy** → /entry/instrument/fluorescence/energy

**data** → /entry/instrument/fluorescence/data

**NXDL Source:** <https://github.com/nexusformat/definitions/blob/master/applications/NXfluo.nxdl.xml>

## **NXindirecttof**

**Status:**

application definition, extends *NXtofraw*

**Description:**

This is a application definition for raw data from a direct geometry TOF spectrometer

**Symbols:**

No symbol table

**Groups cited:** *NXentry*, *NXinstrument*, *NXmonochromator*

**Structure:**

**entry:** (required) *NXentry*

**title:** (required) *NX\_CHAR*

**start\_time:** (required) *NX\_DATE\_TIME*

**definition:** (required) *NX\_CHAR*

Official NeXus NXDL schema to which this file conforms

Obligatory value: NXindirecttof

**INSTRUMENT:** (required) *NXinstrument*

**analyser:** (required) *NXmonochromator*

**energy[nDet]:** (required) *NX\_FLOAT* {units=*NX\_ENERGY*}

analyzed energy

**polar\_angle[ndet]:** (required) *NX\_FLOAT* {units=*NX\_ANGLE*}

polar angle towards sample

**distance[ndet]:** (required) *NX\_FLOAT* {units=*NX\_LENGTH*}

distance from sample

**NXDL Source:** <https://github.com/nexusformat/definitions/blob/master/applications/NXindirecttof.nxdl.xml>

## NXiqproc

### Status:

application definition, extends *NXobject*

### Description:

Application definition for any  $I(Q)$  data.

### Symbols:

No symbol table

**Groups cited:** *NXdata*, *NXentry*, *NXinstrument*, *NXparameters*, *NXprocess*, *NXsample*, *NXsource*

### Structure:

**ENTRY:** (required) *NXentry*

**@entry:** (required) *NX\_CHAR*

**title:** (required) *NX\_CHAR*

**definition:** (required) *NX\_CHAR*

Official NeXus NXDL schema to which this file conforms

Obligatory value: NXiqproc

**instrument:** (required) *NXinstrument*

**name:** (required) *NX\_CHAR*

Name of the instrument from which this data was reduced.

**SOURCE:** (required) *NXsource*

**type:** (required) *NX\_CHAR*

**name:** (required) *NX\_CHAR*

**probe:** (required) *NX\_CHAR*

Any of these values: neutron|x-ray|electron

**SAMPLE:** (required) *NXsample*

**name:** (required) *NX\_CHAR*

Descriptive name of sample

**reduction:** (required) *NXprocess*

**program:** (required) *NX\_CHAR*

**version:** (required) *NX\_CHAR*

**input:** (required) *NXparameters*

Input parameters for the reduction program used

**filenames:** (required) *NX\_CHAR*

Raw data files used to generate this I(Q)

**output:** (required) *NXparameters*

Eventual output parameters from the data reduction program used

**DATA:** (required) *NXdata*

**data[NE, NQX, NQY]:** (required) *NX\_INT*

This is I(Q). The client has to analyse the dimensions of I(Q). Often, multiple I(Q) for various environment conditions are measured; that would be the first dimension. Q can be multidimensional, this accounts for the further dimensions in the data

**variable[NE]:** (required) *NX\_CHAR*

**@varied\_variable:** (required) *NX\_CHAR*

The real name of the varied variable in the first dim of data, temperature, P, MF etc...

**qx[NQX]:** (required) *NX\_CHAR*

Values for the first dimension of Q

**qy[NQY]:** (required) *NX\_CHAR*

Values for the second dimension of Q

**NXDL Source:** <https://github.com/nexusformat/definitions/blob/master/applications/NXiqproc.nxdl.xml>

## **NXlauetof**

**Status:**

application definition, extends *NXObject*

**Description:**

This is the application definition for a TOF laue diffractometer

**Symbols:**

No symbol table

**Groups cited:** *NXdata*, *NXdetector*, *NXentry*, *NXinstrument*, *NXmonitor*, *NXsample*

**Structure:**

**entry:** (required) *NXentry*

**definition:** (required) *NX\_CHAR*

Official NeXus NXDL schema to which this file conforms

Obligatory value: NXlauetof

**instrument:** (required) *NXinstrument*

**detector:** (required) *NXdetector*

This assumes a planar 2D detector. All angles and distances refer to the center of the detector.

**polar\_angle:** (required) *NX\_FLOAT* {units=*NX\_ANGLE*}

The polar\_angle (two theta) where the detector is placed.

**azimuthal\_angle:** (required) *NX\_FLOAT* {units=*NX\_ANGLE*}

The azimuthal angle where the detector is placed.

**data[number of x pixels, number of y pixels, nTOF]:** (required) *NX\_INT*

**@signal:** (required) *NX\_POSINT*

Obligatory value: 1

**x\_pixel\_size:** (required) *NX\_FLOAT* {units=*NX\_LENGTH*}

**y\_pixel\_size:** (required) *NX\_FLOAT* {units=*NX\_LENGTH*}

**distance:** (required) *NX\_FLOAT* {units=*NX\_LENGTH*}

**time\_of\_flight[nTOF]:** (required) *NX\_FLOAT*  
{units=*NX\_TIME\_OF\_FLIGHT*}

**sample:** (required) *NXsample*

**name:** (required) *NX\_CHAR*

Descriptive name of sample

**orientation\_matrix[3, 3]:** (required) *NX\_FLOAT*

The orientation matrix according to Busing and Levy conventions. This is not strictly necessary as the UB can always be derived from the data. But let us bow to common usage which includes the UB nearly always.

**unit\_cell[6]:** (required) *NX\_FLOAT*

The unit cell, a, b, c, alpha, beta, gamma. Again, not strictly necessary, but normally written.

**control:** (required) *NXmonitor*

**mode:** (required) *NX\_CHAR*

**Count to a preset value based on either clock time (timer) or received monitor counts (monitor).**

Any of these values: monitor|timer

**preset:** (required) *NX\_FLOAT*

preset value for time or monitor

**data[nTOF]:** (required) *NX\_INT*

use these attributes primary=1 signal=1

**time\_of\_flight[nTOF]:** (required) *NX\_FLOAT* {units=*NX\_TIME\_OF\_FLIGHT*}

**name:** (required) *NXdata*

**data** -> /NXentry/NXinstrument/NXdetector/data

**time\_of\_flight** -> /NXentry/NXinstrument/NXdetector/time\_of\_flight

**NXDL Source:** <https://github.com/nexusformat/definitions/blob/master/applications/NXlauetof.nxdl.xml>

## NXmonopd

### Status:

application definition, extends *NXObject*

### Description:

Monochromatic Neutron and X-Ray Powder diffractometer

Instrument definition for a powder diffractometer at a monochromatic neutron or X-ray beam. This is both suited for a powder diffractometer with a single detector or a powder diffractometer with a position sensitive detector.

### Symbols:

No symbol table

**Groups cited:** *NXcrystal*, *NXdata*, *NXdetector*, *NXentry*, *NXinstrument*, *NXmonitor*, *NXsample*, *NXsource*

### Structure:

**entry:** (required) *NXentry*

**title:** (required) *NX\_CHAR*

**start\_time:** (required) *NX\_DATE\_TIME*

**definition:** (required) *NX\_CHAR*

Official NeXus NXDL schema to which this file conforms

Obligatory value: NXmonopd

**INSTRUMENT:** (required) *NXinstrument*

**SOURCE:** (required) *NXsource*

**type:** (required) *NX\_CHAR*

**name:** (required) *NX\_CHAR*

**probe:** (required) *NX\_CHAR*

Any of these values: neutron|x-ray|electron

**CRYSTAL:** (required) *NXcrystal*

**wavelength[i]:** (required) *NX\_FLOAT* {units=*NX\_WAVELENGTH*}

Optimum diffracted wavelength

**DETECTOR:** (required) *NXdetector*

**polar\_angle[ndet]:** (required) *NX\_FLOAT*

where ndet = number of detectors

**data[ndet]:** (required) *NX\_INT*

detector signal (usually counts) are already corrected for detector efficiency

**SAMPLE:** (required) *NXsample*

**name:** (required) *NX\_CHAR*

Descriptive name of sample

**rotation\_angle:** (required) *NX\_FLOAT* {units=*NX\_ANGLE*}

Optional rotation angle for the case when the powder diagram has been obtained through an omega-2theta scan like from a traditional single detector powder diffractometer

**MONITOR:** (required) *NXmonitor*

**mode:** (required) *NX\_CHAR*

Count to a preset value based on either clock time (timer) or received monitor counts (monitor).

Any of these values: monitor|timer

**preset:** (required) *NX\_FLOAT*

preset value for time or monitor

**integral:** (required) *NX\_FLOAT* {units=*NX\_ANY*}

Total integral monitor counts

**DATA:** (required) *NXdata*

**polar\_angle** → /NXentry/NXinstrument/NXdetector/polar\_angle

Link to polar angle in /NXentry/NXinstrument/NXdetector

**data** → /NXentry/NXinstrument/NXdetector/data

Link to data in /NXentry/NXinstrument/NXdetector

**NXDL Source:** <https://github.com/nexusformat/definitions/blob/master/applications/NXmonopd.nxdl.xml>

## NXmx

### Status:

application definition, extends *NXObject*

### Description:

functional application definition for macromolecular crystallography

### Symbols:

These symbols will be used below to coordinate datasets with the same shape. Most MX x-ray detectors will produce two-dimensional images. Some will produce three-dimensional images, using one of the indices to select a detector module.

**dataRank:** rank of the data field

**np:** number of scan points

**i:** number of detector pixels in the slowest direction

**j:** number of detector pixels in the second slowest direction

**k:** number of detector pixels in the third slowest direction

**m:** number of channels in the incident beam spectrum, if known

**Groups cited:** *NXattenuator*, *NXbeam*, *NXcollection*, *NXdata*, *NXdetector\_group*, *NXdetector\_module*, *NXdetector*, *NXentry*, *NXinstrument*, *NXsample*, *NXsource*, *NXtransformations*

### Structure:

**ENTRY:** (required) *NXentry*

**title:** (optional) *NX\_CHAR*

**start\_time:** (optional) *NX\_DATE\_TIME*

**end\_time:** (optional) *NX\_DATE\_TIME*

**definition:** (required) *NX\_CHAR*

NeXus NXDL schema to which this file conforms

Obligatory value: NXmx

**INSTRUMENT:** (required) *NXinstrument*

**name:** (required) *NX\_CHAR*

Name of instrument

**@short\_name:** (required) *NX\_CHAR*

short name for instrument, perhaps the acronym

**ATTENUATOR:** (optional) *NXattenuator*

**attenuator\_transmission:** (optional) *NX\_NUMBER*  
{units=*NX\_UNITLESS*}

**DETECTOR\_GROUP:** (optional) *NXdetector\_group*

Optional logical grouping of detector elements.

Each detector element is represented as an NXdetector group with its own detector data array. Each detector data array may be further decomposed into array sections by use of NXdetector\_module groups. The names are given in the group\_names field.

The groups are defined hierarchically, with names given in the group\_names field, unique identifying indices given in the field group\_index, and the level in the hierarchy given in the group\_parent field. For example if an x-ray detector, DET, consists of four elements in a rectangular array:

DTL	DTR
DLL	DLR

We could have:

group_names: ["DET", "DTL", "DTR", "DLL", "DLR"]
group_index: [1, 2, 3, 4, 5]
group_parent: [-1, 1, 1, 1, 1]

**group\_names[ref(group\_index)]:** (required) *NX\_CHAR*

An array of the names of the detector elements or hierarchical groupings of detector elements.

Specified in the base classes as comma separated list of names, but new code should use an array of names as quoted strings.

**group\_index[i]:** (required) *NX\_INT*

An array of unique indices for detector elements or groupings of detector elements.

Each element is a unique ID for the corresponding group named in the field group\_names. The IDs are positive integers starting with 1.

**group\_parent[ref(group\_index)]:** (required) *NX\_INT*

An array of the hierarchical levels of the parents of detector elements or groupings of detector elements.

A top-level element or grouping has parent level -1

**DETECTOR:** (required) *NXdetector*

Normally the detector group will have the name `detector`. However, in the case of multiple detector elements, each element needs a uniquely named `NXdetector` group.

**depends\_on:** (required) *NX\_CHAR***data[np, i, j, k]:** (required) *NX\_NUMBER*

For a dimension-2 detector, the rank of the data array will be 3. For a dimension-3 detector, the rank of the data array will be 4. This allows for the introduction of the frame number as the first index.

**description:** (optional) *NX\_CHAR*

name/manufacturer/model/etc. information

**time\_per\_channel:** (optional) *NX\_CHAR* {units=*NX\_TIME*}

todo: define more clearly

**distance:** (optional) *NX\_FLOAT* {units=*NX\_LENGTH*}

Distance from the sample to the beam center. This value is a guidance only, the proper geometry can be found following the depends\_on axis chain.

**dead\_time:** (optional) *NX\_FLOAT* {units=*NX\_TIME*}

Detector dead time

**count\_time:** (optional) *NX\_NUMBER* {units=*NX\_TIME*}

Elapsed actual counting time

**beam\_center\_x:** (optional) *NX\_FLOAT* {units=*NX\_LENGTH*}

This is the x position where the direct beam would hit the detector. This is a length and can be outside of the actual detector. The length can be in physical units or pixels as documented by the units attribute.

**beam\_center\_y:** (optional) *NX\_FLOAT* {units=*NX\_LENGTH*}

This is the y position where the direct beam would hit the detector. This is a length and can be outside of the actual detector. The length can be in physical units or pixels as documented by the units attribute.

**angular\_calibration\_applied:** (optional) *NX\_BOOLEAN*

True when the angular calibration has been applied in the electronics, false otherwise.

**angular\_calibration[i, j, k]:** (optional) *NX\_FLOAT*

Angular calibration data.

**flatfield\_applied:** (optional) *NX\_BOOLEAN*

True when the flat field correction has been applied in the electronics, false otherwise.

**flatfield[i, j, k]:** (optional) *NX\_FLOAT*

Flat field correction data.

**flatfield\_error[i, j, k]:** (optional) *NX\_FLOAT*

Errors of the flat field correction data.

**pixel\_mask\_applied:** (optional) *NX\_BOOLEAN*

True when the pixel mask correction has been applied in the electronics, false otherwise.

**pixel\_mask[i, j, k]:** (optional) *NX\_INT*

The 32-bit pixel mask for the detector. Can be either one mask for the whole dataset (i.e. an array with indices i, j) or each frame can have its own mask (in which case it would be an array with indices np, i, j). Contains a bit field for each pixel to signal dead, blind or high or otherwise unwanted or undesirable pixels. They have the following meaning:

- bit 0: gap (pixel with no sensor)
- bit 1: dead
- bit 2: under responding
- bit 3: over responding
- bit 4: noisy
- bit 5: -undefined-
- bit 6: pixel is part of a cluster of problematic pixels (bit set in addition to others)
- bit 7: -undefined-
- bit 8: user defined mask (e.g. around beamstop)
- bits 9-30: -undefined-
- bit 31: virtual pixel (corner pixel with interpolated value)

Normal data analysis software would not take pixels into account when a bit in (mask & 0x0000FFFF) is set. Tag bit in the upper two bytes would indicate special pixel properties that normally would not be a sole reason to reject the intensity value (unless lower bits are set).

If the full bit depths is not required, providing a mask with fewer bits is permissible.

If needed, additional pixel masks can be specified by including additional entries named pixel\_mask\_N, where N is an integer. For example, a general bad pixel mask could be specified in pixel\_mask that indicates noisy and dead pixels, and an additional pixel mask from experiment-specific shadowing could be specified in pixel\_mask\_2. The cumulative mask is the bitwise OR of pixel\_mask and any pixel\_mask\_N entries.

**countrate\_correction\_applied:** (optional) *NX\_BOOLEAN*

True when a count-rate correction has already been applied in the data recorded here, false otherwise.

**bit\_depth\_readout:** (optional) *NX\_INT*

How many bits the electronics record per pixel.

**detector\_readout\_time:** (optional) *NX\_FLOAT* {units=*NX\_TIME*}

Time it takes to read the detector (typically milliseconds). This is important to know for time resolved experiments.

**frame\_time:** (optional) *NX\_FLOAT* {units=*NX\_TIME*}

This is time for each frame. This is exposure\_time + readout time.

**gain\_setting:** (optional) *NX\_CHAR*

The gain setting of the detector. This influences background.

**saturation\_value:** (optional) *NX\_INT*

The value at which the detector goes into saturation. Data above this value is known to be invalid.

**sensor\_material:** (optional) *NX\_CHAR*

At times, radiation is not directly sensed by the detector. Rather, the detector might sense the output from some converter like a scintillator. This is the name of this converter material.

**sensor\_thickness:** (optional) *NX\_FLOAT* {units=*NX\_LENGTH*}

At times, radiation is not directly sensed by the detector. Rather, the detector might sense the output from some converter like a scintillator. This is the thickness of this converter material.

**threshold\_energy:** (optional) *NX\_FLOAT* {units=*NX\_ENERGY*}

Single photon counter detectors can be adjusted for a certain energy range in which they work optimally. This is the energy setting for this.

**type:** (optional) *NX\_CHAR*

Description of type such as scintillator, ccd, pixel, image plate, CMOS,  
...

**TRANSFORMATIONS:** (optional) *NXtransformations*

Suggested location for axes (transformations) to do with the detector

**COLLECTION:** (optional) *NXcollection*

Suggested container for detailed non-standard detector information like corrections applied automatically or performance settings.

**DETECTOR\_MODULE:** (required) *NXdetector\_module*

Many detectors consist of multiple smaller modules that are operated in sync and store their data in a common dataset. To allow consistent parsing of the experimental geometry, this application definiton requires all detectors to define a detector module, even if there is only one.

This group specifies the hyperslab of data in the data array associated with the detector that contains the data for this module. If the module is associated with a full data array, rather than with a hyperslab within a

larger array, then a single module should be defined, spanning the entire array.

**data\_origin:** (required) *NX\_INT*

A dimension-2 or dimension-3 field which gives the indices of the origin of the hyperslab of data for this module in the main area detector image in the parent NXdetector module.

The data\_origin is 0-based.

The frame number dimension (np) is omitted. Thus the data\_origin field for a dimension-2 dataset with indices (np, i, j) will be an array with indices (i, j), and for a dimension-3 dataset with indices (np, i, j, k) will be an array with indices (i, j, k).

The *order* of indices (i, j or i, j, k) is slow to fast.

**data\_size:** (required) *NX\_INT*

Two or three values for the size of the module in pixels in each direction. Dimensionality and order of indices is the same as for data\_origin.

**data\_stride:** (optional) *NX\_INT*

Two or three values for the stride of the module in pixels in each direction. By default the stride is [1,1] or [1,1,1], and this is the most likely case. This optional field is included for completeness.

**module\_offset:** (required) *NX\_NUMBER* {units=*NX\_LENGTH*}

Offset of the module in regards to the origin of the detector in an arbitrary direction.

**@transformation\_type:** (required) *NX\_CHAR*

Obligatory value: translation

**@vector:** (required) *NX\_CHAR*

**@offset:** (required) *NX\_CHAR*

**@depends\_on:** (required) *NX\_CHAR*

**fast\_pixel\_direction:** (required) *NX\_NUMBER* {units=*NX\_LENGTH*}

Values along the direction of *fastest varying* pixel direction. The direction itself is given through the vector attribute

**@transformation\_type:** (required) *NX\_CHAR*

Obligatory value: translation

**@vector:** (required) *NX\_CHAR*

**@offset:** (required) *NX\_CHAR*

**@depends\_on:** (required) *NX\_CHAR*

**slow\_pixel\_direction:** (required) *NX\_NUMBER*  
{units=*NX\_LENGTH*}

Values along the direction of *slowest varying* pixel direction. The direction itself is given through the vector attribute

**@transformation\_type:** (required) *NX\_CHAR*

Obligatory value: translation

**@vector:** (required) *NX\_CHAR*

**@offset:** (required) *NX\_CHAR*

**@depends\_on:** (required) *NX\_CHAR*

**SAMPLE:** (required) *NXsample*

**name:** (optional) *NX\_CHAR*

Descriptive name of sample

**depends\_on:** (optional) *NX\_CHAR*

This is a requirement to describe for any scan experiment. The reason it is optional is mainly to accommodate XFEL single shot exposures.

The axis on which the sample position depends may be stored anywhere, but is normally stored in the NXtransformations NXtransformations group within the NXsample group.

**temperature:** (optional) *NX\_CHAR* {units=*NX\_TEMPERATURE*}

**TRANSFORMATIONS:** (optional) *NXtransformations*

This is the recommended location for sample goniometer and other related axes.

This is a requirement to describe for any scan experiment. The reason it is optional is mainly to accommodate XFEL single shot exposures.

Use of the depends\_on field and the NXtransformations group is strongly recommended. As noted above this should be an absolute requirement to have for any scan experiment.

The reason it is optional is mainly to accommodate XFEL single shot exposures.

**BEAM:** (required) *NXbeam*

<b>incident_wavelength:</b>	(optional)	<i>NX_FLOAT</i>
{units= <i>NX_WAVELENGTH</i> }		

In the case of a monochromatic beam this is the scalar wavelength.

Several other use cases are permitted, depending on the presence or absence of other incident\_wavelength\_X fields.

In the case of a polychromatic beam this is an array of length **m** of wavelengths, with the relative weights in incident\_wavelength\_weight.

In the case of a monochromatic beam that varies shot-to-shot, this is an array of wavelengths, one for each recorded shot. Here, incident\_wavelength\_weight and incident\_wavelength\_spread are not set.

In the case of a polychromatic beam that varies shot-to-shot, this is an array of length **m** with the relative weights in incident\_wavelength\_weight as a 2D array.

In the case of a polychromatic beam that varies shot-to- shot and where the channels also vary, this is a 2D array of dimensions **np** by **m** (slow to fast) with the relative weights in incident\_wavelength\_weight as a 2D array.

**incident\_wavelength\_weight:** (optional) *NX\_FLOAT*

In the case of a polychromatic beam this is an array of length **m** of the relative weights of the corresponding wavelengths in incident\_wavelength.

In the case of a polychromatic beam that varies shot-to- shot, this is a 2D array of dimensions **np** by **m** (slow to fast) of the relative weights of the corresponding wavelengths in incident\_wavelength.

**incident\_wavelength\_spread:** (optional) *NX\_FLOAT*  
{units=*NX\_WAVELENGTH*}

The wavelength spread FWHM for the corresponding wavelength(s) in incident\_wavelength.

In the case of shot-to-shot variation in the wavelength spread, this is a 2D array of dimension **np** by **m** (slow to fast) of the spreads of the corresponding wavelengths in incident\_wavelength.

**flux:** (optional) *NX\_FLOAT* {units=*NX\_FLUX*}

flux density incident on beam plane area in photons per second per unit area

In the case of a beam that varies in flux shot-to-shot, this is an array of values, one for each recorded shot.

**total\_flux:** (optional) *NX\_FLOAT* {units=*NX\_FREQUENCY*}

flux incident on beam plane in photons per second

In the case of a beam that varies in total flux shot-to-shot, this is an array of values, one for each recorded shot.

**incident\_beam\_size[2]:** (optional) *NX\_FLOAT* {units=*NX\_LENGTH*}

Two-element array of FWHM (if Gaussian or Airy function) or diameters (if top hat) or widths (if rectangular) of beam in the order x, y

**profile:** (optional) *NX\_CHAR*

The beam profile, Gaussian, Airy function, top-hat or rectangular. The profile is given in the plane of incidence of the beam on the sample.

Any of these values: Gaussian | Airy | top-hat | rectangular

**incident\_polarisation\_stokes[np, 4]:** (optional) *NX\_CHAR*

**incident\_wavelength\_spectrum:** (optional) *NXdata*

**SOURCE:** (required) *NXsource*

The neutron or x-ray storage ring/facility. Note, the NXsource base class has many more fields available, but at present we only require the name.

**name:** (required) *NX\_CHAR*

Name of source

**@short\_name:** (required) *NX\_CHAR*

short name for source, perhaps the acronym

**DATA:** (required) *NXdata*

**NXDL Source:** <https://github.com/nexusformat/definitions/blob/master/applications/NXmx.nxdl.xml>

## NXrefscan

### Status:

application definition, extends *NXObject*

### Description:

This is an application definition for a monochromatic scanning reflectometer.

It does not have the information to calculate the resolution since it does not have any apertures.

### Symbols:

No symbol table

**Groups cited:** *NXdata*, *NXdetector*, *NXentry*, *NXinstrument*, *NXmonitor*, *NXmonochromator*, *NXsample*, *NXsource*

### Structure:

**entry:** (required) *NXentry*

**title:** (required) *NX\_CHAR*

**start\_time:** (required) *NX\_DATE\_TIME*

**end\_time:** (required) *NX\_DATE\_TIME*

**definition:** (required) *NX\_CHAR*

Official NeXus NXDL schema to which this file conforms

Obligatory value: NXrefscan

**instrument:** (required) *NXinstrument*

**SOURCE:** (required) *NXsource*

**type:** (required) *NX\_CHAR*

**name:** (required) *NX\_CHAR*

**probe:** (required) *NX\_CHAR*

Any of these values: neutron|x-ray|electron

**monochromator:** (required) *NXmonochromator*

**wavelength:** (required) *NX\_FLOAT* {units=*NX\_WAVELENGTH*}

**DETECTOR:** (required) *NXdetector*

**data[NP]:** (required) *NX\_INT*

**polar\_angle[NP]:** (required) *NX\_FLOAT* {units=*NX\_ANGLE*}

**sample:** (required) *NXsample*

**name:** (required) *NX\_CHAR*  
Descriptive name of sample

**rotation\_angle[NP]:** (required) *NX\_FLOAT* {units=*NX\_ANGLE*}

**control:** (required) *NXmonitor*

**mode:** (required) *NX\_CHAR*  
Count to a preset value based on either clock time (timer) or received monitor counts (monitor).  
Any of these values: monitor|timer

**preset:** (required) *NX\_FLOAT*  
preset value for time or monitor

**data[NP]:** (required) *NX\_FLOAT* {units=*NX\_ANY*}  
Monitor counts for each step

**data:** (required) *NXdata*  
**data** -> /NXentry/NXinstrument/NXdetector/data  
**rotation\_angle** -> /NXentry/NXsample/rotation\_angle  
**polar\_angle** -> /NXentry/NXinstrument/NXdetector/polar\_angle

**NXDL Source:** <https://github.com/nexusformat/definitions/blob/master/applications/NXrefscan.nxdl.xml>

## NXreftof

### Status:

application definition, extends *NXObject*

### Description:

This is an application definition for raw data from a TOF reflectometer.

### Symbols:

No symbol table

**Groups cited:** *NXdata*, *NXdetector*, *NXdisk\_chopper*, *NXentry*, *NXinstrument*, *NXmonitor*, *NXsample*

### Structure:

**entry:** (required) *NXentry*

**title:** (required) *NX\_CHAR*

**start\_time:** (required) *NX\_DATE\_TIME*

**end\_time:** (required) *NX\_DATE\_TIME*

**definition:** (required) *NX\_CHAR*  
Official NeXus NXDL schema to which this file conforms  
Obligatory value: NXreftof

**instrument:** (required) *NXinstrument*

**name:** (required) *NX\_CHAR*

**chopper:** (required) *NXdisk\_chopper*

**distance:** (required) *NX\_FLOAT* {units=*NX\_LENGTH*}

Distance between chopper and sample

**detector:** (required) *NXdetector*

**data[xsize, ysize, nTOF]:** (required) *NX\_INT*

**time\_of\_flight[nTOF]:** (required) *NX\_FLOAT*  
{units=*NX\_TIME\_OF\_FLIGHT*}

Array of time values for each bin in a time-of-flight measurement

**distance:** (required) *NX\_FLOAT* {units=*NX\_LENGTH*}

**polar\_angle:** (required) *NX\_FLOAT* {units=*NX\_ANGLE*}

**x\_pixel\_size:** (required) *NX\_FLOAT* {units=*NX\_LENGTH*}

**y\_pixel\_size:** (required) *NX\_FLOAT* {units=*NX\_LENGTH*}

**sample:** (required) *NXsample*

**name:** (required) *NX\_CHAR*

Descriptive name of sample

**rotation\_angle:** (required) *NX\_FLOAT* {units=*NX\_ANGLE*}

**control:** (required) *NXmonitor*

**mode:** (required) *NX\_CHAR*

Count to a preset value based on either clock time (timer) or received monitor counts (monitor).

Any of these values: monitor | timer

**preset:** (required) *NX\_FLOAT* {units=*NX\_ANY*}

preset value for time or monitor

**integral:** (required) *NX\_INT*

Total integral monitor counts

**time\_of\_flight:** (required) *NX\_FLOAT* {units=*NX\_TIME\_OF\_FLIGHT*}

Time channels

**data:** (required) *NX\_INT*

Monitor counts in each time channel

**data:** (required) *NXdata*

**data** -> /NXentry/NXinstrument/NXdetector/data

**time\_binning** -> /NXentry/NXinstrument/NXdetector/time\_binning

**NXDL Source:** <https://github.com/nexusformat/definitions/blob/master/applications/NXreftof.nxdl.xml>

## NXsas

### Status:

application definition, extends [NXobject](#)

### Description:

raw, monochromatic 2-D SAS data with an area detector

This is an application definition for raw data (not processed or reduced data) from a 2-D small angle scattering instrument collected with a monochromatic beam and an area detector. It is meant to be suitable both for neutron SANS and X-ray SAXS data.

It covers all raw data from any monochromatic SAS techniques that use an area detector: SAS, WSAS, grazing incidence, GISAS

It covers all raw data from any SAS techniques that use an area detector and a monochromatic beam.

### Symbols:

No symbol table

**Groups cited:** [NXcollimator](#), [NXdata](#), [NXdetector](#), [NXentry](#), [NXgeometry](#), [NXinstrument](#), [NXmonitor](#), [NXmonochromator](#), [NXsample](#), [NXshape](#), [NXsource](#)

### Structure:

**ENTRY:** (required) [NXentry](#)

**@entry:** (required) [NX\\_CHAR](#)

NeXus convention is to use entry1, entry2, ... for analysis software to locate each entry

**title:** (required) [NX\\_CHAR](#)

**start\_time:** (required) [NX\\_DATE\\_TIME](#)

**end\_time:** (required) [NX\\_DATE\\_TIME](#)

**definition:** (required) [NX\\_CHAR](#)

Official NeXus NXDL schema to which this file conforms

Obligatory value: NXsas

**instrument:** (required) [NXinstrument](#)

**name:** (required) [NX\\_CHAR](#)

Name of the instrument actually used to perform the experiment

**source:** (required) [NXsource](#)

**type:** (required) [NX\\_CHAR](#)

type of radiation source

**name:** (required) [NX\\_CHAR](#)

Name of the radiation source

**probe:** (required) [NX\\_CHAR](#)

Any of these values: neutron | x-ray

**monochromator:** (required) [NXmonochromator](#)

**wavelength:** (required) *NX\_FLOAT* {units=*NX\_WAVELENGTH*}

The wavelength of the radiation

**wavelength\_spread:** (required) *NX\_FLOAT*

delta\_lambda/lambda ( $\Delta\lambda/\lambda$ ): Important for resolution calculations

**collimator:** (required) *NXcollimator*

**geometry:** (required) *NXgeometry*

**shape:** (required) *NXshape*

**shape:** (required) *NX\_CHAR*

Any of these values: nxcylinder | nxbox

**size:** (required) *NX\_FLOAT* {units=*NX\_LENGTH*}

The collimation length

**detector:** (required) *NXdetector*

**data[nXPixel, nYPixel]:** (required) *NX\_NUMBER*

This is area detector data, of number of x-pixel versus number of y-pixels. Since the beam center is to be determined as a step of data reduction, it is not necessary to document or assume the position of the beam center in acquired data.

**distance:** (required) *NX\_FLOAT* {units=*NX\_LENGTH*}

The distance between detector and sample

**x\_pixel\_size:** (required) *NX\_FLOAT* {units=*NX\_LENGTH*}

Physical size of a pixel in x-direction

**y\_pixel\_size:** (required) *NX\_FLOAT* {units=*NX\_LENGTH*}

Size of a pixel in y direction

**polar\_angle:** (required) *NX\_FLOAT* {units=*NX\_ANGLE*}

**azimuthal\_angle:** (required) *NX\_FLOAT* {units=*NX\_ANGLE*}

**rotation\_angle:** (required) *NX\_FLOAT* {units=*NX\_ANGLE*}

**aequatorial\_angle:** (required) *NX\_FLOAT* {units=*NX\_ANGLE*}

**beam\_center\_x:** (required) *NX\_FLOAT* {units=*NX\_LENGTH*}

This is the x position where the direct beam would hit the detector. This is a length, not a pixel position, and can be outside of the actual detector.

**beam\_center\_y:** (required) *NX\_FLOAT* {units=*NX\_LENGTH*}

This is the y position where the direct beam would hit the detector. This is a length, not a pixel position, and can be outside of the actual detector.

**sample:** (required) *NXsample*

**name:** (required) *NX\_CHAR*

Descriptive name of sample

**aequatorial\_angle:** (required) *NX\_FLOAT* {units=*NX\_ANGLE*}

**control:** (required) *NXmonitor*

**mode:** (required) *NX\_CHAR*

Count to a preset value based on either clock time (timer) or received monitor counts (monitor).

Any of these values: monitor|timer

**preset:** (required) *NX\_FLOAT*

preset value for time or monitor

**integral:** (required) *NX\_FLOAT* {units=*NX\_ANY*}

Total integral monitor counts

**data:** (required) *NXdata*

**data** → /NXentry/NXinstrument/NXdetector/data

**NXDL Source:** <https://github.com/nexusformat/definitions/blob/master/applications/NXsas.nxdl.xml>

## NXsastof

### Status:

application definition, extends *NXObject*

### Description:

raw, 2-D SAS data with an area detector with a time-of-flight source

It covers all raw data from any SAS techniques that use an area detector at a time-of-flight source.

### Symbols:

No symbol table

**Groups cited:** *NXcollimator*, *NXdata*, *NXdetector*, *NXentry*, *NXgeometry*, *NXinstrument*, *NXmonitor*, *NXsample*, *NXshape*, *NXsource*

### Structure:

**ENTRY:** (required) *NXentry*

**@entry:** (required) *NX\_CHAR*

NeXus convention is to use “entry1”, “entry2”, … for analysis software to locate each entry

**title:** (required) *NX\_CHAR*

**start\_time:** (required) *NX\_DATE\_TIME*

**definition:** (required) *NX\_CHAR*

Official NeXus NXDL schema to which this file conforms

Obligatory value: NXsastof

**instrument:** (required) *NXinstrument*

**name:** (required) *NX\_CHAR*

Name of the instrument actually used to perform the experiment

**source:** (required) *NXsource*

**type:** (required) *NX\_CHAR*  
type of radiation source

**name:** (required) *NX\_CHAR*  
Name of the radiation source

**probe:** (required) *NX\_CHAR*  
Any of these values: neutron | x-ray

**collimator:** (required) *NXcollimator*

**geometry:** (required) *NXgeometry*

**shape:** (required) *NXshape*

**shape:** (required) *NX\_CHAR*  
Any of these values: nxcylinder | nxbox

**size:** (required) *NX\_FLOAT* {units=*NX\_LENGTH*}  
The collimation length

**detector:** (required) *NXdetector*

**data[nXPixel, nYPixel, nTOF]:** (required) *NX\_NUMBER*  
This is area detector data, of number of x-pixel versus number of y-pixels. Since the beam center is to be determined as a step of data reduction, it is not necessary to document or assume the position of the beam center in acquired data.

**time\_of\_flight[nTOF]:** (required) *NX\_FLOAT*  
{units=*NX\_TIME\_OF\_FLIGHT*}

**distance:** (required) *NX\_FLOAT* {units=*NX\_LENGTH*}  
The distance between detector and sample

**x\_pixel\_size:** (required) *NX\_FLOAT* {units=*NX\_LENGTH*}  
Physical size of a pixel in x-direction

**y\_pixel\_size:** (required) *NX\_FLOAT* {units=*NX\_LENGTH*}  
Size of a pixel in y direction

**polar\_angle:** (required) *NX\_FLOAT* {units=*NX\_ANGLE*}

**azimuthal\_angle:** (required) *NX\_FLOAT* {units=*NX\_ANGLE*}

**rotation\_angle:** (required) *NX\_FLOAT* {units=*NX\_ANGLE*}

**aequatorial\_angle:** (required) *NX\_FLOAT* {units=*NX\_ANGLE*}

**beam\_center\_x:** (required) *NX\_FLOAT* {units=*NX\_LENGTH*}  
This is the x position where the direct beam would hit the detector. This is a length, not a pixel position, and can be outside of the actual detector.

**beam\_center\_y:** (required) *NX\_FLOAT* {units=*NX\_LENGTH*}

This is the y position where the direct beam would hit the detector. This is a length, not a pixel position, and can be outside of the actual detector.

**sample:** (required) *NXsample*

**name:** (required) *NX\_CHAR*

Descriptive name of sample

**aequatorial\_angle:** (required) *NX\_FLOAT* {units=*NX\_ANGLE*}

**control:** (required) *NXmonitor*

**mode:** (required) *NX\_CHAR*

Count to a preset value based on either clock time (timer) or received monitor counts (monitor).

Any of these values: monitor | timer

**preset:** (required) *NX\_FLOAT*

preset value for time or monitor

**data[nTOF]:** (required) *NX\_INT*

**time\_of\_flight[nTOF]:** (required) *NX\_FLOAT* {units=*NX\_TIME\_OF\_FLIGHT*}

**data:** (required) *NXdata*

**data** → /NXentry/NXinstrument/NXdetector/data

**time\_of\_flight** → /NXentry/NXinstrument/NXdetector/time\_of\_flight

**NXDL Source:** <https://github.com/nexusformat/definitions/blob/master/applications/NXsastof.nxdl.xml>

## NXscan

### Status:

application definition, extends *NXObject*

### Description:

Application definition for a generic scan instrument.

This definition is more an example then a stringent definition as the content of a given NeXus scan file needs to differ for different types of scans. This example definition shows a scan like done on a rotation camera: the sample is rotated and a detector image, the rotation angle and a monitor value is stored at each step in the scan. In the following, the symbol NP is used to represent the number of scan points. These are the rules for storing scan data in NeXus files which are implemented in this example:

- Each value varied throughout a scan is stored as an array of length NP at its respective location within the NeXus hierarchy.
- For area detectors, NP is the first dimension, example for a detector of 256x256: data [NP, 256, 256]
- The NXdata group contains links to all variables varied in the scan and the data. This to give an equivalent to the more familiar classical tabular representation of scans.

These rules exist for a reason: HDF allows the first dimension of a data set to be unlimited. This means the data can be appended too. Thus a NeXus file built according to the rules given above can be used in the following way:

- At the start of a scan, write all the static information.
- At each scan point, append new data from varied variables and the detector to the file.

**Symbols:**

No symbol table

**Groups cited:** *NXdata, NXdetector, NXentry, NXinstrument, NXmonitor, NXsample*

**Structure:**

**ENTRY:** (required) *NXentry*

**title:** (required) *NX\_CHAR*

**start\_time:** (required) *NX\_DATE\_TIME*

**end\_time:** (required) *NX\_DATE\_TIME*

**definition:** (required) *NX\_CHAR*

Official NeXus NXDL schema to which this file conforms

Obligatory value: NXscan

**INSTRUMENT:** (required) *NXinstrument*

**DETECTOR:** (required) *NXdetector*

**data[NP, xdim, ydim]:** (required) *NX\_INT*

**SAMPLE:** (required) *NXsample*

**rotation\_angle[NP]:** (required) *NX\_FLOAT*

**MONITOR:** (required) *NXmonitor*

**data[NP]:** (required) *NX\_INT*

**DATA:** (required) *NXdata*

**data** → /NXentry/NXinstrument/NXdetector/data

**rotation\_angle** → /NXentry/NXsample/rotation\_angle

**NXDL Source:** <https://github.com/nexusformat/definitions/blob/master/applications/NXscan.nxdl.xml>

**NXspe****Status:**

application definition, extends *NXObject*

**Description:**

NXSPE Inelastic Format. Application definition for NXSPE file format.

**Symbols:**

No symbol table

**Groups cited:** *NXcollection, NXdata, NXentry, NXfermi\_chopper, NXinstrument, NXsample*

**Structure:**

**ENTRY:** (required) *NXentry*

**program\_name:** (required) *NX\_CHAR*

**definition:** (required) *NX\_CHAR*

Official NeXus NXDL schema to which this file conforms.

Any of these values: NXSPE | NXspe

**@version:** (required) *NX\_CHAR*

**NXSPE\_info:** (required) *NXcollection*

**fixed\_energy:** (required) *NX\_FLOAT* {units=*NX\_ENERGY*}

The fixed energy used for this file.

**ki\_over\_kf\_scaling:** (required) *NX\_BOOLEAN*

Indicates whether ki/kf scaling has been applied or not.

**psi:** (required) *NX\_FLOAT* {units=*NX\_ANGLE*}

Orientation angle as expected in DCS-MSlice

**data:** (required) *NXdata*

**azimuthal:** (required) *NX\_FLOAT* {units=*NX\_ANGLE*}

**azimuthal\_width:** (required) *NX\_FLOAT* {units=*NX\_ANGLE*}

**polar:** (required) *NX\_FLOAT* {units=*NX\_ANGLE*}

**polar\_width:** (required) *NX\_FLOAT* {units=*NX\_ANGLE*}

**distance:** (required) *NX\_FLOAT* {units=*NX\_LENGTH*}

**data:** (required) *NX\_NUMBER*

**error:** (required) *NX\_NUMBER*

**energy:** (required) *NX\_FLOAT* {units=*NX\_ENERGY*}

**INSTRUMENT:** (required) *NXinstrument*

**name:** (required) *NX\_CHAR*

**FERMI\_CHOPPER:** (required) *NXfermi\_chopper*

**energy:** (required) *NX\_NUMBER* {units=*NX\_ENERGY*}

**SAMPLE:** (required) *NXsample*

**rotation\_angle:** (required) *NX\_NUMBER* {units=*NX\_ANGLE*}

**seblock:** (required) *NX\_CHAR*

**temperature:** (required) *NX\_NUMBER* {units=*NX\_TEMPERATURE*}

**NXDL Source:** <https://github.com/nexusformat/definitions/blob/master/applications/NXSPE.nxdl.xml>

## NXsqom

**Status:**

application definition, extends [NXobject](#)

**Description:**

This is the application definition for S(Q,OM) processed data.

As this kind of data is in general not on a rectangular grid after data reduction, it is stored as Q,E positions plus their intensity, table like. It is the task of a possible visualisation program to regrid this data in a sensible way.

**Symbols:**

No symbol table

**Groups cited:** [NXdata](#), [NXentry](#), [NXinstrument](#), [NXparameters](#), [NXprocess](#), [NXsample](#), [NXsource](#)

**Structure:**

**ENTRY:** (required) [NXentry](#)

**@entry:** (required) [NX\\_CHAR](#)

**title:** (required) [NX\\_CHAR](#)

**definition:** (required) [NX\\_CHAR](#)

Official NeXus NXDL schema to which this file conforms

Obligatory value: NXsqom

**instrument:** (required) [NXinstrument](#)

**name:** (required) [NX\\_CHAR](#)

Name of the instrument from which this data was reduced.

**SOURCE:** (required) [NXsource](#)

**type:** (required) [NX\\_CHAR](#)

**name:** (required) [NX\\_CHAR](#)

**probe:** (required) [NX\\_CHAR](#)

Any of these values: neutron|x-ray|electron

**SAMPLE:** (required) [NXsample](#)

**name:** (required) [NX\\_CHAR](#)

Descriptive name of sample

**reduction:** (required) [NXprocess](#)

**program:** (required) [NX\\_CHAR](#)

**version:** (required) [NX\\_CHAR](#)

**input:** (required) [NXparameters](#)

Input parameters for the reduction program used

**filenames:** (required) [NX\\_CHAR](#)

Raw data files used to generate this I(Q)

**output:** (required) *NXparameters*

Eventual output parameters from the data reduction program used

**DATA:** (required) *NXdata***data[NP]:** (required) *NX\_INT*

This is the intensity for each point in QE

**qx[NP]:** (required) *NX\_CHAR* {units=*NX\_WAVENUMBER*}

Positions for the first dimension of Q

**qy[NP]:** (required) *NX\_CHAR* {units=*NX\_WAVENUMBER*}

Positions for the the second dimension of Q

**qz[NP]:** (required) *NX\_CHAR* {units=*NX\_WAVENUMBER*}

Positions for the the third dimension of Q

**en[NP]:** (required) *NX\_FLOAT* {units=*NX\_ENERGY*}

Values for the energy transfer for each point

**NXDL Source:** <https://github.com/nexusformat/definitions/blob/master/applications/NXsqom.nxdl.xml>

## NXstxm

**Status:**

application definition, extends *NXObject*

**Description:**

Application definition for a STXM instrument.

The interferometer position measurements, monochromator photon energy values and detector measurements are all treated as NXdetectors and stored within the NXinstrument group as lists of values stored in chronological order. The NXdata group then holds another version of the data in a regular 3D array (NumE by NumY by NumX, for a total of NumP points in a sample image stack type scan). The former data values should be stored with a minimum loss of precision, while the latter values can be simplified and/or approximated in order to fit the constraints of a regular 3D array. ‘Line scans’ and ‘point spectra’ are just sample\_image scan types with reduced dimensions in the same way as single images have reduced E dimensions compared to image ‘stacks’.

**Symbols:**

These symbols will be used below to coordinate the shapes of the datasets.

**numP:** total number of scan points

**numE:** number of photon energies scanned

**numY:** number of pixels in Y direction

**numX:** number of pixels in X direction

**Groups cited:** *NXdata*, *NXdetector*, *NXentry*, *NXinstrument*, *NXmonitor*, *NXmonochromator*, *NXsample*, *NXsource*

**Structure:**

**ENTRY:** (required) *NXentry*

**title:** (required) *NX\_CHAR*

**start\_time:** (required) *NX\_DATE\_TIME*

**end\_time:** (required) *NX\_DATE\_TIME*

**definition:** (required) *NX\_CHAR*

Official NeXus NXDL schema to which this file conforms

Obligatory value: NXstxm

**INSTRUMENT:** (required) *NXinstrument*

**SOURCE:** (required) *NXsource*

**type:** (required) *NX\_CHAR*

**name:** (required) *NX\_CHAR*

**probe:** (required) *NX\_CHAR*

**monochromator:** (required) *NXmonochromator*

**energy[NumP]:** (required) *NX\_CHAR*

**DETECTOR:** (required) *NXdetector*

**data[NumP]:** (required) *NX\_NUMBER*

**sample\_x:** (optional) *NXdetector*

Measurements of the sample position from the x-axis interferometer.

**data[NumP]:** (required) *NX\_FLOAT*

**sample\_y:** (optional) *NXdetector*

Measurements of the sample position from the y-axis interferometer.

**data[NumP]:** (required) *NX\_FLOAT*

**sample\_z:** (optional) *NXdetector*

Measurements of the sample position from the z-axis interferometer.

**data[NumP]:** (required) *NX\_FLOAT*

**SAMPLE:** (required) *NXsample*

**rotation\_angle:** (required) *NX\_FLOAT*

**DATA:** (required) *NXdata*

**stxm\_scan\_type:** (required) *NX\_CHAR*

**Label for typical scan types as a convenience for humans.** Each label corresponds to a specific set of axes being scanned to produce a data array of shape:

- sample point spectrum: (photon\_energy,)
- sample line spectrum: (photon\_energy, sample\_y/sample\_x)
- sample image: (sample\_y, sample\_x)
- sample image stack: (photon\_energy, sample\_y, sample\_x)
- sample focus: (zoneplate\_z, sample\_y/sample\_x)
- osa image: (osa\_y, osa\_x)

- osa focus: (zoneplate\_z, osa\_y/osa\_x)
- detector image: (detector\_y, detector\_x)

The “generic scan” string is to be used when none of the other choices are appropriate.

Any of these values:

- sample point spectrum
- sample line spectrum
- sample image
- sample image stack
- sample focus
- osa image
- osa focus
- detector image
- generic scan

**data:** (required) *NX\_NUMBER*

**Detectors that provide more than one value per scan point should be summarised**

to a single value per scan point for this array in order to simplify plotting.

Note that ‘Line scans’ and focus type scans measure along one spatial dimension but are not restricted to being parallel to the X or Y axes. Such scans should therefore use a single dimension for the positions along the spatial line. The ‘sample\_x’ and ‘sample\_y’ fields should then contain lists of the x- and y-positions and should both have the ‘axis’ attribute pointing to the same dimension.

**energy[NumE]:** (required) *NX\_FLOAT*

**List of photon energies of the X-ray beam. If scanned through multiple values,**  
then an ‘axis’ attribute will be required to link the field to the appropriate data array dimension.

**sample\_y[NumY]:** (required) *NX\_FLOAT*

**List of Y positions on the sample. If scanned through multiple values,**  
then an ‘axis’ attribute will be required to link the field to the appropriate data array dimension.

**sample\_x[NumX]:** (required) *NX\_FLOAT*

**List of X positions on the sample. If scanned through multiple values,**  
then an ‘axis’ attribute will be required to link the field to the appropriate data array dimension.

**control:** (optional) *NXmonitor*

**data:** (required) *NX\_FLOAT*

**Values to use to normalise for time-variations in photon flux. Typically, the synchrotron storage ring**  
electron beam current is used as a proxy for the X-ray beam intensity. Array must have same shape as the NXdata groups.

**NXDL Source:** <https://github.com/nexusformat/definitions/blob/master/applications/NXstxm.nxdl.xml>

## NXtas

### Status:

application definition, extends *NXObject*

### Description:

This is an application definition for a triple axis spectrometer.

It is for the trademark scan of the TAS, the Q-E scan. For your alignment scans use the rules in *NXscan*.

### Symbols:

No symbol table

**Groups cited:** *NXcrystal*, *NXdata*, *NXdetector*, *NXentry*, *NXinstrument*, *NXmonitor*, *NXsample*, *NXsource*

### Structure:

**entry:** (required) *NXentry*

**title:** (required) *NX\_CHAR*

**start\_time:** (required) *NX\_DATE\_TIME*

**definition:** (required) *NX\_CHAR*

Official NeXus NXDL schema to which this file conforms

Obligatory value: NXtas

**INSTRUMENT:** (required) *NXinstrument*

**SOURCE:** (required) *NXsource*

**name:** (required) *NX\_CHAR*

**probe:** (required) *NX\_CHAR*

Any of these values: neutron | x-ray

**monochromator:** (required) *NXcrystal*

**ei[*np*]:** (required) *NX\_FLOAT* {units=*NX\_ENERGY*}

**rotation\_angle[*np*]:** (required) *NX\_FLOAT* {units=*NX\_ANGLE*}

**analyser:** (required) *NXcrystal*

**ef[*np*]:** (required) *NX\_FLOAT* {units=*NX\_ENERGY*}

**rotation\_angle[*np*]:** (required) *NX\_FLOAT* {units=*NX\_ANGLE*}

**polar\_angle[*np*]:** (required) *NX\_FLOAT* {units=*NX\_ANGLE*}

**DETECTOR:** (required) *NXdetector*

**data[*np*]:** (required) *NX\_INT*

**polar\_angle[*np*]:** (required) *NX\_FLOAT* {units=*NX\_ANGLE*}

**SAMPLE:** (required) *NXsample*

**name:** (required) *NX\_CHAR*

Descriptive name of sample

**qh[**np**]:** (required) *NX\_FLOAT* {units=*NX\_DIMENSIONLESS*}  
**qk[**np**]:** (required) *NX\_FLOAT* {units=*NX\_DIMENSIONLESS*}  
**ql[**np**]:** (required) *NX\_FLOAT* {units=*NX\_DIMENSIONLESS*}  
**en[**np**]:** (required) *NX\_FLOAT* {units=*NX\_ENERGY*}  
**rotation\_angle[**np**]:** (required) *NX\_FLOAT* {units=*NX\_ANGLE*}  
**polar\_angle[**np**]:** (required) *NX\_FLOAT* {units=*NX\_ANGLE*}  
**sgu[**np**]:** (required) *NX\_FLOAT* {units=*NX\_ANGLE*}  
**sgl[**np**]:** (required) *NX\_FLOAT* {units=*NX\_ANGLE*}  
**unit\_cell[**6**]:** (required) *NX\_FLOAT* {units=*NX\_LENGTH*}  
**orientation\_matrix[**9**]:** (required) *NX\_FLOAT* {units=*NX\_DIMENSIONLESS*}

**MONITOR:** (required) *NXmonitor*

**mode:** (required) *NX\_CHAR*

Count to a preset value based on either clock time (timer) or received monitor counts (monitor).

Any of these values: monitor | timer

**preset:** (required) *NX\_FLOAT*

preset value for time or monitor

**data[**np**]:** (required) *NX\_FLOAT* {units=*NX\_ANY*}

Total integral monitor counts

**DATA:** (required) *NXdata*

One of the ei,ef,qh,qk,ql,en should get a primary=1 attribute to denote the main scan axis

**ei** -> /NXentry/NXinstrument/monochromator:NXcrystal/ei

**ef** -> /NXentry/NXinstrument/analyizer:NXcrystal/ef

**en** -> /NXentry/NXsample/en

**qh** -> /NXentry/NXsample/qh

**qk** -> /NXentry/NXsample/qk

**ql** -> /NXentry/NXsample/ql

**data** -> /NXentry/NXinstrument/NXdetector/data

**NXDL Source:** <https://github.com/nexusformat/definitions/blob/master/applications/NXtas.nxdl.xml>

**NXtofnpd****Status:**

application definition, extends *NXObject*

**Description:**

This is a application definition for raw data from a TOF neutron powder diffractometer

**Symbols:**

No symbol table

**Groups cited:** *NXdata*, *NXdetector*, *NXentry*, *NXinstrument*, *NXmonitor*, *NXsample*, *NXuser*

**Structure:**

**entry:** (required) *NXentry*

**title:** (required) *NX\_CHAR*

**start\_time:** (required) *NX\_DATE\_TIME*

**definition:** (required) *NX\_CHAR*

Official NeXus NXDL schema to which this file conforms

Obligatory value: NXtofnpd

**pre\_sample\_flightpath:** (required) *NX\_FLOAT* {units=*NX\_LENGTH*}

This is the flight path before the sample position. This can be determined by a chopper, by the moderator or the source itself. In other words: it the distance to the component which gives the T0 signal to the detector electronics. If another component in the NXinstrument hierarchy provides this information, this should be a link.

**user:** (required) *NXuser*

**name:** (required) *NX\_CHAR*

**INSTRUMENT:** (required) *NXinstrument*

**detector:** (required) *NXdetector*

**data[ndet, ntimechan]:** (required) *NX\_INT*

**detector\_number[ndet]:** (required) *NX\_INT*

**distance[ndet]:** (required) *NX\_FLOAT* {units=*NX\_LENGTH*}

distance to sample for each detector

**time\_of\_flight[ntimechan]:** (required) *NX\_FLOAT*  
{units=*NX\_TIME\_OF\_FLIGHT*}

**polar\_angle[ndet]:** (required) *NX\_FLOAT* {units=*NX\_ANGLE*}

polar angle for each detector element

**azimuthal\_angle[ndet]:** (required) *NX\_FLOAT* {units=*NX\_ANGLE*}

azimuthal angle for each detector element

**SAMPLE:** (required) *NXsample*

**name:** (required) *NX\_CHAR*

Descriptive name of sample

**MONITOR:** (required) *NXmonitor*

**mode:** (required) *NX\_CHAR*

Count to a preset value based on either clock time (timer) or received monitor counts (monitor).

Any of these values: monitor|timer

**preset:** (required) *NX\_FLOAT*

preset value for time or monitor

**distance:** (required) *NX\_FLOAT* {units=*NX\_LENGTH*}

**data[ntimechan]:** (required) *NX\_INT*

**time\_of\_flight[ntimechan]:** (required) *NX\_FLOAT*  
{units=*NX\_TIME\_OF\_FLIGHT*}

**data:** (required) *NXdata*

**data** -> /NXentry/NXinstrument/NXdetector/data

**detector\_number** -> /NXentry/NXinstrument/NXdetector/detector\_number

**time\_of\_flight** -> /NXentry/NXinstrument/NXdetector/time\_of\_flight

**NXDL Source:** <https://github.com/nexusformat/definitions/blob/master/applications/NXtofnpd.nxdl.xml>

## NXtofraw

**Status:**

application definition, extends *NXObject*

**Description:**

This is an application definition for raw data from a generic TOF instrument

**Symbols:**

No symbol table

**Groups cited:** *NXdata*, *NXdetector*, *NXentry*, *NXinstrument*, *NXmonitor*, *NXsample*, *NXuser*

**Structure:**

**entry:** (required) *NXentry*

**title:** (required) *NX\_CHAR*

**start\_time:** (required) *NX\_DATE\_TIME*

**definition:** (required) *NX\_CHAR*

Official NeXus NXDL schema to which this file conforms

Obligatory value: NXtofraw

**duration:** (required) *NX\_FLOAT*

**run\_number:** (required) *NX\_INT*

**pre\_sample\_flightpath:** (required) *NX\_FLOAT* {units=*NX\_LENGTH*}

This is the flight path before the sample position. This can be determined by a chopper, by the moderator, or the source itself. In other words: it is the distance to the component which gives the T0 signal to the detector electronics. If another component in the NXinstrument hierarchy provides this information, this should be a link.

**user:** (required) *NXuser*

**name:** (required) *NX\_CHAR*

**instrument:** (required) *NXinstrument*

**detector:** (required) *NXdetector*

**data[ndet, ntimechan]:** (required) *NX\_INT*

**detector\_number[ndet]:** (required) *NX\_INT*

**distance[ndet]:** (required) *NX\_FLOAT* {units=*NX\_LENGTH*}

                distance to sample for each detector

**time\_of\_flight[ntimechan]:** (required) *NX\_FLOAT*  
{units=*NX\_TIME\_OF\_FLIGHT*}

**polar\_angle[ndet]:** (required) *NX\_FLOAT* {units=*NX\_ANGLE*}

                polar angle for each detector element

**azimuthal\_angle[ndet]:** (required) *NX\_FLOAT* {units=*NX\_ANGLE*}

                polar angle for each detector element

**SAMPLE:** (required) *NXsample*

**name:** (required) *NX\_CHAR*

        Descriptive name of sample

**nature:** (required) *NX\_CHAR*

        Any of these values: powder|liquid|single crystal

**MONITOR:** (required) *NXmonitor*

**mode:** (required) *NX\_CHAR*

        Count to a preset value based on either clock time (timer) or received monitor counts (monitor).

        Any of these values: monitor|timer

**preset:** (required) *NX\_FLOAT*

        preset value for time or monitor

**distance:** (required) *NX\_FLOAT* {units=*NX\_LENGTH*}

**data[ntimechan]:** (required) *NX\_INT*

**time\_of\_flight[ntimechan]:** (required) *NX\_FLOAT*  
{units=*NX\_TIME\_OF\_FLIGHT*}

**integral\_counts:** (required) *NX\_INT* {units=*NX\_UNITLESS*}

**data:** (required) *NXdata*

```
data -> /NXentry/NXinstrument/NXdetector/data
detector_number -> /NXentry/NXinstrument/NXdetector/detector_number
time_of_flight -> /NXentry/NXinstrument/NXdetector/time_of_flight
```

**NXDL Source:** <https://github.com/nexusformat/definitions/blob/master/applications/NXtofraw.nxdl.xml>

## NXtofsingle

### Status:

application definition, extends *NXobject*

### Description:

This is a application definition for raw data from a generic TOF instrument

### Symbols:

No symbol table

**Groups cited:** *NXdata*, *NXdetector*, *NXentry*, *NXinstrument*, *NXmonitor*, *NXsample*, *NXuser*

### Structure:

**entry:** (required) *NXentry*

**title:** (required) *NX\_CHAR*

**start\_time:** (required) *NX\_DATE\_TIME*

**definition:** (required) *NX\_CHAR*

Official NeXus NXDL schema to which this file conforms

Obligatory value: NXtofsingle

**duration:** (required) *NX\_FLOAT*

**pre\_sample\_fliptpath:** (required) *NX\_FLOAT* {units=*NX\_LENGTH*}

This is the flight path before the sample position. This can be determined by a chopper, by the moderator or the source itself. In other words: it the distance to the component which gives the T0 signal to the detector electronics. If another component in the NXinstrument hierarchy provides this information, this should be a link.

**user:** (required) *NXuser*

**name:** (required) *NX\_CHAR*

**INSTRUMENT:** (required) *NXinstrument*

**detector:** (required) *NXdetector*

**data[xsize, ysize, ntimechan]:** (required) *NX\_INT*

**distance[1]:** (required) *NX\_FLOAT* {units=*NX\_LENGTH*}

Distance to sample for the center of the detector

**time\_of\_flight[ntimechan]:** (required) *NX\_FLOAT*  
{units=*NX\_TIME\_OF\_FLIGHT*}

**polar\_angle[ndet]:** (required) *NX\_FLOAT* {units=*NX\_ANGLE*}

polar angle for each detector element

**azimuthal\_angle[ndet]:** (required) *NX\_FLOAT* {units=*NX\_ANGLE*}

azimuthal angle for each detector element

**SAMPLE:** (required) *NXsample*

**name:** (required) *NX\_CHAR*

Descriptive name of sample

**nature:** (required) *NX\_CHAR*

Any of these values: powder|liquid|single crystal

**MONITOR:** (required) *NXmonitor*

**mode:** (required) *NX\_CHAR*

Count to a preset value based on either clock time (timer) or received monitor counts (monitor).

Any of these values: monitor|timer

**preset:** (required) *NX\_FLOAT*

preset value for time or monitor

**distance:** (required) *NX\_FLOAT* {units=*NX\_LENGTH*}

**data[ntimechan]:** (required) *NX\_INT*

**time\_of\_flight[ntimechan]:** (required) *NX\_FLOAT*  
{units=*NX\_TIME\_OF\_FLIGHT*}

**data:** (required) *NXdata*

**data** → /NXentry/NXinstrument/NXdetector/data

**detector\_number** → /NXentry/NXinstrument/NXdetector/detector\_number

**time\_of\_flight** → /NXentry/NXinstrument/NXdetector/time\_of\_flight

**NXDL Source:** <https://github.com/nexusformat/definitions/blob/master/applications/NXtofsingle.nxdl.xml>

## NXtomo

### Status:

application definition, extends *NXobject*

### Description:

This is the application definition for x-ray or neutron tomography raw data.

In tomography a number of dark field images are measured, some bright field images and, of course the sample. In order to distinguish between them images carry a image\_key.

### Symbols:

These symbols will be used below to coordinate datasets with the same shape.

**nFrames:** number of frames

**xsize:** number of pixels in X direction

**ysize:** number of pixels in Y direction

**Groups cited:** *NXdata*, *NXdetector*, *NXentry*, *NXinstrument*, *NXmonitor*, *NXsample*, *NXsource*

**Structure:****entry:** (required) *NXentry***title:** (optional) *NX\_CHAR***start\_time:** (optional) *NX\_DATE\_TIME***end\_time:** (optional) *NX\_DATE\_TIME***definition:** (required) *NX\_CHAR*

Official NeXus NXDL schema to which this file conforms

Obligatory value: NXtomo

**instrument:** (required) *NXinstrument***SOURCE:** (optional) *NXsource***type:** (optional) *NX\_CHAR***name:** (optional) *NX\_CHAR***probe:** (optional) *NX\_CHAR*

Any of these values: neutron|x-ray|electron

**detector:** (required) *NXdetector***data[nFrames, xsize, ysize]:** (required) *NX\_INT***image\_key[nFrames]:** (required) *NX\_INT*

In order to distinguish between sample projections, dark and flat images, a magic number is recorded per frame. The key is as follows:

- projection = 0
- flat field = 1
- dark field = 2
- invalid = 3

**x\_pixel\_size:** (optional) *NX\_FLOAT* {units=*NX\_LENGTH*}**y\_pixel\_size:** (optional) *NX\_FLOAT* {units=*NX\_LENGTH*}**distance:** (optional) *NX\_FLOAT* {units=*NX\_LENGTH*}

Distance between detector and sample

**x\_rotation\_axis\_pixel\_position:** (optional) *NX\_FLOAT***y\_rotation\_axis\_pixel\_position:** (optional) *NX\_FLOAT***sample:** (required) *NXsample***name:** (required) *NX\_CHAR*

Descriptive name of sample

**rotation\_angle[nFrames]:** (required) *NX\_FLOAT* {units=*NX\_ANGLE*}

In practice this axis is always aligned along one pixel direction on the detector and usually vertical. There are experiments with horizontal rotation axes, so this would need to be indicated somehow. For now the best way for that is an open question.

---

**x\_translation[nFrames]:** (optional) *NX\_FLOAT* {units=*NX\_LENGTH*}  
**y\_translation[nFrames]:** (optional) *NX\_FLOAT* {units=*NX\_LENGTH*}  
**z\_translation[nFrames]:** (optional) *NX\_FLOAT* {units=*NX\_LENGTH*}  
**control:** (optional) *NXmonitor*  
**data[nFrames]:** (required) *NX\_FLOAT* {units=*NX\_ANY*}  
 Total integral monitor counts for each measured frame. Allows a to correction for fluctuations in the beam between frames.  
**data:** (required) *NXdata*  
*data* -> /NXentry/NXinstrument/detector:NXdetector/data  
**rotation\_angle** -> /NXentry/NXsample/rotation\_angle  
**image\_key** -> /NXentry/NXinstrument/detector:NXdetector/image\_key

**NXDL Source:** <https://github.com/nexusformat/definitions/blob/master/applications/NXtomo.nxdl.xml>

## NXtomophase

### Status:

application definition, extends *NXObject*

### Description:

This is the application definition for x-ray or neutron tomography raw data with phase contrast variation at each point.

In tomography first some dark field images are measured, some bright field images and, of course the sample. In order to properly sort the order of the images taken, a sequence number is stored with each image.

### Symbols:

These symbols will be used below to coordinate datasets with the same shape.

**nBrightFrames:** number of bright frames  
**nDarkFrames:** number of dark frames  
**nSampleFrames:** number of image (sample) frames  
**nPhase:** number of phase settings  
**xsize:** number of pixels in X direction  
**ysize:** number of pixels in Y direction

**Groups cited:** *NXdata*, *NXdetector*, *NXentry*, *NXinstrument*, *NXmonitor*, *NXsample*, *NXsource*

### Structure:

**entry:** (required) *NXentry*  
**title:** (required) *NX\_CHAR*  
**start\_time:** (required) *NX\_DATE\_TIME*  
**end\_time:** (required) *NX\_DATE\_TIME*  
**definition:** (required) *NX\_CHAR*

Official NeXus NXDL schema to which this file conforms

Obligatory value: NXtomophase

**instrument:** (required) *NXinstrument*

**SOURCE:** (required) *NXsource*

**type:** (required) *NX\_CHAR*

**name:** (required) *NX\_CHAR*

**probe:** (required) *NX\_CHAR*

Any of these values: neutron|x-ray|electron

**bright\_field:** (required) *NXdetector*

**data[nBrightFrames, xsize, ysize]:** (required) *NX\_INT*

**sequence\_number[nBrightFrames]:** (required) *NX\_INT*

**dark\_field:** (required) *NXdetector*

**data[nDarkFrames, xsize, ysize]:** (required) *NX\_INT*

**sequence\_number[nDarkFrames]:** (required) *NX\_INT*

**sample:** (required) *NXdetector*

**data[nSampleFrames, nPhase, xsize, ysize]:** (required) *NX\_INT*

**sequence\_number[nSampleFrames, nPhase]:** (required) *NX\_INT*

**x\_pixel\_size:** (required) *NX\_FLOAT* {units=*NX\_LENGTH*}

**y\_pixel\_size:** (required) *NX\_FLOAT* {units=*NX\_LENGTH*}

**distance:** (required) *NX\_FLOAT* {units=*NX\_LENGTH*}

Distance between detector and sample

**sample:** (required) *NXsample*

**name:** (required) *NX\_CHAR*

Descriptive name of sample

**rotation\_angle[nSampleFrames]:** (required) *NX\_FLOAT* {units=*NX\_ANGLE*}

**x\_translation[nSampleFrames]:** (required) *NX\_FLOAT* {units=*NX\_LENGTH*}

**y\_translation[nSampleFrames]:** (required) *NX\_FLOAT* {units=*NX\_LENGTH*}

**z\_translation[nSampleFrames]:** (required) *NX\_FLOAT* {units=*NX\_LENGTH*}

**control:** (required) *NXmonitor*

**integral[nDarkFrames + nBrightFrames + nSampleFrame]:** (required)  
*NX\_FLOAT* {units=*NX\_ANY*}

Total integral monitor counts for each measured frame. Allows a correction for fluctuations in the beam between frames.

**data:** (required) *NXdata*

**data** → /NXentry/NXinstrument/sample:NXdetector/data

**rotation\_angle** → /NXentry/NXsample/rotation\_angle

**NXDL Source:** <https://github.com/nexusformat/definitions/blob/master/applications/NXtomophase.nxdl.xml>

## NXtomoproc

### Status:

application definition, extends [NXobject](#)

### Description:

This is an application definition for the final result of a tomography experiment: a 3D construction of some volume of physical properties.

### Symbols:

These symbols will be used below to coordinate datasets with the same shape.

**nx**: number of voxels in X direction

**ny**: number of voxels in Y direction

**nz**: number of voxels in Z direction

**Groups cited:** [NXdata](#), [NXentry](#), [NXinstrument](#), [NXparameters](#), [NXprocess](#), [NXsample](#), [NXsource](#)

### Structure:

**entry**: (required) [NXentry](#)

**title**: (required) [NX\\_CHAR](#)

**definition**: (required) [NX\\_CHAR](#)

Official NeXus NXDL schema to which this file conforms

Obligatory value: NXtomoproc

**INSTRUMENT**: (required) [NXinstrument](#)

**SOURCE**: (required) [NXsource](#)

**type**: (required) [NX\\_CHAR](#)

**name**: (required) [NX\\_CHAR](#)

**probe**: (required) [NX\\_CHAR](#)

Any of these values: neutron|x-ray|electron

**SAMPLE**: (required) [NXsample](#)

**name**: (required) [NX\\_CHAR](#)

Descriptive name of sample

**reconstruction**: (required) [NXprocess](#)

**program**: (required) [NX\\_CHAR](#)

Name of the program used for reconstruction

**version**: (required) [NX\\_CHAR](#)

Version of the program used

**date**: (required) [NX\\_DATE\\_TIME](#)

Date and time of reconstruction processing.

**parameters**: (required) [NXparameters](#)

**raw\_file**: (required) [NX\\_CHAR](#)

Original raw data file this data was derived from

**data:** (required) *NXdata*

**data[nx, nx, nz]:** (required) *NX\_INT*

This is the reconstructed volume. This can be different things. Please indicate in the unit attribute what physical quantity this really is.

**@transform:** (required) *NX\_CHAR*

**@offset:** (required) *NX\_CHAR*

**@scaling:** (required) *NX\_CHAR*

**x[nx]:** (required) *NX\_FLOAT* {units=*NX\_ANY*}

This is an array holding the values to use for the x-axis of data. The units must be appropriate for the measurement.

**y[ny]:** (required) *NX\_FLOAT* {units=*NX\_ANY*}

This is an array holding the values to use for the y-axis of data. The units must be appropriate for the measurement.

**z[nz]:** (required) *NX\_FLOAT* {units=*NX\_ANY*}

This is an array holding the values to use for the z-axis of data. The units must be appropriate for the measurement.

**NXDL Source:** <https://github.com/nexusformat/definitions/blob/master/applications/NXtomoproc.nxdl.xml>

## **NXxas**

**Status:**

application definition, extends *NXObject*

**Description:**

This is an application definition for raw data from an X-ray absorption spectroscopy experiment.

This is essentially a scan on energy versus incoming/ absorbed beam.

**Symbols:**

No symbol table

**Groups cited:** *NXdata*, *NXdetector*, *NXentry*, *NXinstrument*, *NXmonitor*, *NXmonochromator*, *NXsample*, *NXsource*

**Structure:**

**ENTRY:** (required) *NXentry*

**@entry:** (required) *NX\_CHAR*

NeXus convention is to use “entry1”, “entry2”, … for analysis software to locate each entry.

**title:** (required) *NX\_CHAR*

**start\_time:** (required) *NX\_DATE\_TIME*

**definition:** (required) *NX\_CHAR*

Official NeXus NXDL schema to which this file conforms

Obligatory value: NXxas

**INSTRUMENT:** (required) *NXinstrument*

**SOURCE:** (required) *NXsource*

**type:** (required) *NX\_CHAR*

**name:** (required) *NX\_CHAR*

**probe:** (required) *NX\_CHAR*

Obligatory value: x-ray

**monochromator:** (required) *NXmonochromator*

**energy[*np*]:** (required) *NX\_FLOAT*

**incoming\_beam:** (required) *NXdetector*

**data[*np*]:** (required) *NX\_INT*

**absorbed\_beam:** (required) *NXdetector*

**data[*np*]:** (required) *NX\_INT*

mark this field with attribute signal=1

**SAMPLE:** (required) *NXsample*

**name:** (required) *NX\_CHAR*

Descriptive name of sample

**MONITOR:** (required) *NXmonitor*

**mode:** (required) *NX\_CHAR*

Count to a preset value based on either clock time (timer) or received monitor counts (monitor).

Any of these values: monitor|timer

**preset:** (required) *NX\_FLOAT*

preset value for time or monitor

**data[*np*]:** (required) *NX\_INT*

**DATA:** (required) *NXdata*

**energy** -> /entry/instrument/monochromator/energy

**absorbed\_beam** -> /entry/instrument/absorbed\_beam/data

**NXDL Source:** <https://github.com/nexusformat/definitions/blob/master/applications/NXxas.nxdl.xml>

## NXxasproc

### Status:

application definition, extends *NXObject*

### Description:

Processed data from XAS. This is energy versus I(incoming)/I(absorbed).

### Symbols:

No symbol table

**Groups cited:** *NXdata*, *NXentry*, *NXparameters*, *NXprocess*, *NXsample*

**Structure:**

**ENTRY:** (required) *NXentry*

**@entry:** (required) *NX\_CHAR*

NeXus convention is to use “entry1”, “entry2”, … for analysis software to locate each entry.

**title:** (required) *NX\_CHAR*

**definition:** (required) *NX\_CHAR*

Official NeXus NXDL schema to which this file conforms

Obligatory value: NXxasproc

**SAMPLE:** (required) *NXsample*

**name:** (required) *NX\_CHAR*

Descriptive name of sample

**XAS\_data\_reduction:** (required) *NXprocess*

**program:** (required) *NX\_CHAR*

Name of the program used for reconstruction

**version:** (required) *NX\_CHAR*

Version of the program used

**date:** (required) *NX\_DATE\_TIME*

Date and time of reconstruction processing.

**parameters:** (required) *NXparameters*

**raw\_file:** (required) *NX\_CHAR*

Original raw data file this data was derived from

**DATA:** (required) *NXdata*

**energy[*np*]:** (required) *NX\_CHAR*

**data[*np*]:** (required) *NX\_FLOAT*

This is corrected and calibrated I(incoming)/I(absorbed). So it is the absorption. Expect attribute signal=1

**NXDL Source:** <https://github.com/nexusformat/definitions/blob/master/applications/NXxasproc.nxdl.xml>

## NXxbase

**Status:**

application definition, extends *NXObject*

**Description:**

This definition covers the common parts of all monochromatic single crystal raw data application definitions.

**Symbols:**

No symbol table

**Groups cited:** *NXdata*, *NXdetector*, *NXentry*, *NXinstrument*, *NXmonitor*, *NXmonochromator*, *NXsample*, *NXsource*

**Structure:**

**entry:** (required) *NXentry*

**title:** (required) *NX\_CHAR*

**start\_time:** (required) *NX\_DATE\_TIME*

**definition:** (required) *NX\_CHAR*

        Official NeXus NXDL schema to which this file conforms

        Obligatory value: NXxbase

**instrument:** (required) *NXinstrument*

**source:** (required) *NXsource*

**type:** (required) *NX\_CHAR*

**name:** (required) *NX\_CHAR*

**probe:** (required) *NX\_CHAR*

            Any of these values: neutron|x-ray|electron

**monochromator:** (required) *NXmonochromator*

**wavelength:** (required) *NX\_FLOAT* {units=*NX\_WAVELENGTH*}

**detector:** (required) *NXdetector*

        The name of the group is detector if there is only one detector, if there are several, names have to be detector1, detector2, ... detectorn.

**data[*np*, number of x pixels, number of y pixels]:** (required) *NX\_INT*

            The area detector data, the first dimension is always the number of scan points, the second and third are the number of pixels in x and y. The origin is always assumed to be in the center of the detector. maxOccurs is limited to the the number of detectors on your instrument.

**@signal:** (required) *NX\_POSINT*

                Obligatory value: 1

**x\_pixel\_size:** (required) *NX\_FLOAT* {units=*NX\_LENGTH*}

**y\_pixel\_size:** (required) *NX\_FLOAT* {units=*NX\_LENGTH*}

**distance:** (required) *NX\_FLOAT* {units=*NX\_LENGTH*}

**frame\_start\_number:** (required) *NX\_INT*

                This is the start number of the first frame of a scan. In PX one often scans a couple of frames on a give sample, then does something else, then returns to the same sample and scans some more frames. Each time with a new data file. This number helps concatenating such measurements.

**sample:** (required) *NXsample*

**name:** (required) *NX\_CHAR*

Descriptive name of sample

**orientation\_matrix[3, 3]:** (required) *NX\_FLOAT*

The orientation matrix according to Busing and Levy conventions. This is not strictly necessary as the UB can always be derived from the data. But let us bow to common usage which includes the UB nearly always.

**unit\_cell[6]:** (required) *NX\_FLOAT*

The unit cell, a, b, c, alpha, beta, gamma. Again, not strictly necessary, but normally written.

**temperature[NP]:** (required) *NX\_FLOAT*

The sample temperature or whatever sensor represents this value best

**x\_translation:** (required) *NX\_FLOAT* {units=*NX\_LENGTH*}

Translation of the sample along the X-direction of the laboratory coordinate system

**y\_translation:** (required) *NX\_FLOAT* {units=*NX\_LENGTH*}

Translation of the sample along the Y-direction of the laboratory coordinate system

**distance:** (required) *NX\_FLOAT* {units=*NX\_LENGTH*}

Translation of the sample along the Z-direction of the laboratory coordinate system

**control:** (required) *NXmonitor*

**mode:** (required) *NX\_CHAR*

Count to a preset value based on either clock time (timer) or received monitor counts (monitor).

Any of these values: monitor | timer

**preset:** (required) *NX\_FLOAT*

preset value for time or monitor

**integral:** (required) *NX\_FLOAT* {units=*NX\_ANY*}

Total integral monitor counts

**DATA:** (required) *NXdata*

The name of this group id data if there is only one detector; if there are several the names will be data1, data2, data3 and will point to the corresponding detector groups in the instrument hierarchy.

**data** → /NXentry/NXinstrument/NXdetector/data

**NXDL Source:** <https://github.com/nexusformat/definitions/blob/master/applications/NXxbase.nxdl.xml>

## NXxeuler

### Status:

application definition, extends *NXbase*

### Description:

raw data from a four-circle diffractometer with an eulerian cradle, extends *NXbase*

It extends *NXbase*, so the full definition is the content of *NXbase* plus the data defined here. All four angles are logged in order to support arbitrary scans in reciprocal space.

### Symbols:

No symbol table

**Groups cited:** *NXdata*, *NXdetector*, *NXentry*, *NXinstrument*, *NXsample*

### Structure:

**entry:** (required) *NXentry*

**definition:** (required) *NX\_CHAR*

Official NeXus NXDL schema to which this file conforms

Obligatory value: NXxeuler

**instrument:** (required) *NXinstrument*

**detector:** (required) *NXdetector*

**polar\_angle[*np*]:** (required) *NX\_FLOAT* {units=*NX\_ANGLE*}

The polar\_angle (two theta) where the detector is placed at each scan point.

**sample:** (required) *NXsample*

**rotation\_angle[*np*]:** (required) *NX\_FLOAT* {units=*NX\_ANGLE*}

This is an array holding the sample rotation angle at each scan point

**chi[*np*]:** (required) *NX\_FLOAT* {units=*NX\_ANGLE*}

This is an array holding the chi angle of the eulerian cradle at each scan point

**phi[*np*]:** (required) *NX\_FLOAT* {units=*NX\_ANGLE*}

This is an array holding the phi rotation of the eulerian cradle at each scan point

**name:** (required) *NXdata*

**polar\_angle** -> /NXentry/NXinstrument/NXdetector/polar\_angle

**rotation\_angle** -> /NXentry/NXsample/rotation\_angle

**chi** -> /NXentry/NXsample/chi

**phi** -> /NXentry/NXsample/phi

**NXDL Source:** <https://github.com/nexusformat/definitions/blob/master/applications/NXxeuler.nxdl.xml>

## NXxkappa

### Status:

application definition, extends [NXbase](#)

### Description:

raw data from a kappa geometry (CAD4) single crystal diffractometer, extends [NXbase](#)

This is the application definition for raw data from a kappa geometry (CAD4) single crystal diffractometer.  
It extends [NXbase](#), so the full definition is the content of [NXbase](#) plus the data defined here.

### Symbols:

No symbol table

### Groups cited:

### Structure:

**entry:** (required) [NXentry](#)

**definition:** (required) [NX\\_CHAR](#)

Official NeXus NXDL schema to which this file conforms

Obligatory value: NXxkappa

**instrument:** (required) [NXinstrument](#)

**detector:** (required) [NXdetector](#)

**polar\_angle[np]:** (required) [NX\\_FLOAT](#) {units=[NX\\_ANGLE](#)}

The polar\_angle (two theta) at each scan point

**sample:** (required) [NXsample](#)

**rotation\_angle[np]:** (required) [NX\\_FLOAT](#) {units=[NX\\_ANGLE](#)}

This is an array holding the sample rotation angle at each scan point

**kappa[np]:** (required) [NX\\_FLOAT](#) {units=[NX\\_ANGLE](#)}

This is an array holding the kappa angle at each scan point

**phi[np]:** (required) [NX\\_FLOAT](#) {units=[NX\\_ANGLE](#)}

This is an array holding the phi angle at each scan point

**alpha:** (required) [NX\\_FLOAT](#) {units=[NX\\_ANGLE](#)}

This holds the inclination angle of the kappa arm.

**name:** (required) [NXdata](#)

**polar\_angle** -> /NXentry/NXinstrument/NXdetector/polar\_angle

**rotation\_angle** -> /NXentry/NXsample/rotation\_angle

**kappa** -> /NXentry/NXsample/kappa

**phi** -> /NXentry/NXsample/phi

**NXDL Source:** <https://github.com/nexusformat/definitions/blob/master/applications/NXxkappa.nxdl.xml>

## NXxlaue

### Status:

application definition, extends [NXxrot](#)

### Description:

raw data from a single crystal laue camera, extends [NXxrot](#)

This is the application definition for raw data from a single crystal laue camera. It extends [NXxrot](#).

### Symbols:

No symbol table

**Groups cited:** [NXdata](#), [NXentry](#), [NXinstrument](#), [NXsource](#)

### Structure:

**entry:** (required) [NXentry](#)

**definition:** (required) [NX\\_CHAR](#)

Official NeXus NXDL schema to which this file conforms

Obligatory value: NXxlaue

**instrument:** (required) [NXinstrument](#)

**source:** (required) [NXsource](#)

**distribution:** (required) [NXdata](#)

This is the wavelength distribution of the beam

**data[ne]:** (required) [NX\\_CHAR](#)

expect signal=1 axes="energy"

**wavelength[ne]:** (required) [NX\\_CHAR](#)  
 {units=[NX\\_WAVELENGTH](#)}

**NXDL Source:** <https://github.com/nexusformat/definitions/blob/master/applications/NXxlaue.nxdl.xml>

## NXxlaueplate

### Status:

application definition, extends [NXxlaue](#)

### Description:

raw data from a single crystal Laue camera, extends [NXxlaue](#)

This is the application definition for raw data from a single crystal Laue camera with an image plate as a detector. It extends [NXxlaue](#).

### Symbols:

No symbol table

**Groups cited:** [NXdetector](#), [NXentry](#), [NXinstrument](#)

### Structure:

**entry:** (required) [NXentry](#)

**definition:** (required) *NX\_CHAR*

Official NeXus NXDL schema to which this file conforms

Obligatory value: NXxlaueplate

**instrument:** (required) *NXinstrument*

**detector:** (required) *NXdetector*

**diameter:** (required) *NX\_FLOAT* {units=*NX\_LENGTH*}

The diameter of a cylindrical detector

**NXDL Source:** <https://github.com/nexusformat/definitions/blob/master/applications/NXxlaueplate.nxdl.xml>

## NXxnb

**Status:**

application definition, extends *NXbase*

**Description:**

raw data from a single crystal diffractometer, extends *NXbase*

This is the application definition for raw data from a single crystal diffractometer measuring in normal beam mode. It extends *NXbase*, so the full definition is the content of *NXbase* plus the data defined here. All angles are logged in order to support arbitrary scans in reciprocal space.

**Symbols:**

No symbol table

**Groups cited:** *NXdata*, *NXdetector*, *NXentry*, *NXinstrument*, *NXsample*

**Structure:**

**entry:** (required) *NXentry*

**definition:** (required) *NX\_CHAR*

Official NeXus NXDL schema to which this file conforms

Obligatory value: NXxnb

**instrument:** (required) *NXinstrument*

**detector:** (required) *NXdetector*

**polar\_angle[np]:** (required) *NX\_FLOAT* {units=*NX\_ANGLE*}

The polar\_angle (gamma) of the detector for each scan point.

**tilt\_angle[np]:** (required) *NX\_FLOAT* {units=*NX\_ANGLE*}

The angle by which the detector has been tilted out of the scattering plane.

**sample:** (required) *NXsample*

**rotation\_angle[np]:** (required) *NX\_FLOAT* {units=*NX\_ANGLE*}

This is an array holding the sample rotation angle at each scan point

**name:** (required) *NXdata*

**polar\_angle** -> /NXentry/NXinstrument/NXdetector/polar\_angle  
**tilt** -> /NXentry/NXinstrument/NXdetector/tilt  
**rotation\_angle** -> /NXentry/NXsample/rotation\_angle

**NXDL Source:** <https://github.com/nexusformat/definitions/blob/master/applications/NXnb.nxdl.xml>

## NXxrot

### Status:

application definition, extends *NXbase*

### Description:

raw data from a rotation camera, extends *NXbase*

This is the application definition for raw data from a rotation camera. It extends *NXbase*, so the full definition is the content of *NXbase* plus the data defined here.

### Symbols:

No symbol table

**Groups cited:** *NXattenuator*, *NXdata*, *NXdetector*, *NXentry*, *NXinstrument*, *NXsample*

### Structure:

**entry:** (required) *NXentry*

**definition:** (required) *NX\_CHAR*

Official NeXus NXDL schema to which this file conforms.

Obligatory value: NXxrot

**instrument:** (required) *NXinstrument*

**detector:** (required) *NXdetector*

**polar\_angle:** (required) *NX\_FLOAT* {units=*NX\_ANGLE*}

The polar\_angle (two theta) where the detector is placed.

**beam\_center\_x:** (required) *NX\_FLOAT* {units=*NX\_LENGTH*}

This is the x position where the direct beam would hit the detector. This is a length, not a pixel position, and can be outside of the actual detector.

**beam\_center\_y:** (required) *NX\_FLOAT* {units=*NX\_LENGTH*}

This is the y position where the direct beam would hit the detector. This is a length, not a pixel position, and can be outside of the actual detector.

**attenuator:** (required) *NXattenuator*

**attenuator\_transmission:** (required) *NX\_FLOAT* {units=*NX\_ANY*}

**sample:** (required) *NXsample*

**rotation\_angle[np]:** (required) *NX\_FLOAT* {units=*NX\_ANGLE*}

This is an array holding the sample rotation start angle at each scan point

**rotation\_angle\_step[np]:** (required) *NX\_FLOAT* {units=*NX\_ANGLE*}

This is an array holding the step made for sample rotation angle at each scan point

**name:** (required) *NXdata*

**rotation\_angle** -> /NXentry/NXsample/rotation\_angle

**NXDL Source:** <https://github.com/nexusformat/definitions/blob/master/applications/NXxrot.nxdl.xml>

### 3.3.3 Contributed Definitions

A description of each NeXus contributed definition is given. NXDL files in the NeXus contributed definitions include propositions from the community for NeXus base classes or application definitions, as well as other NXDL files for long-term archival by NeXus. Consider the contributed definitions as either in *incubation* or a special case not for general use. The *NIAC: The NeXus International Advisory Committee* is charged to review any new contributed definitions and provide feedback to the authors before ratification and acceptance as either a base class or application definition.

**NXcontainer** State of a container holding the sample under investigation.

**NXcsg** constructive solid geometry NeXus class, using *NXquadric*

**NXcxi\_ptycho** Application definition for a ptychography experiment. This is compatible with CXI from version 1.6 (discussed with Filipe Maia) if this application definition

**NXelectrostatic\_kicker** definition for a electrostatic kicker.

**NXmagnetic\_kicker** definition for a magnetic kicker.

**NXquadric** definition of a quadric surface.

**NXquadrupole\_magnet** definition for a quadrupole magnet.

**NXseparator** definition for an electrostatic separator.

**NXsnsevent** This is a definition for event data from Spallation Neutron Source (SNS) at ORNL.

**NXsnshisto** This is a definition for histogram data from Spallation Neutron Source (SNS) at ORNL.

**NXsolenoid\_magnet** definition for a solenoid magnet.

**NXsolid\_geometry** the head node for constructively defined geometry

**NXspecdata** Data collected by SPEC control and data acquisition software

**NXspin\_rotator** definition for a spin rotator.

#### NXcontainer

##### Status:

contributed definition, extends *NXObject*

##### Description:

State of a container holding the sample under investigation.

A container is any object in the beam path which absorbs the beam and whose contribution to the overall attenuation/scattering needs to be determined to process the experimental data. Examples of containers include glass capillary tubes, vanadium cans, windows in furnaces or diamonds in a Diamond Anvil Cell. The following figures show a complex example of a container:

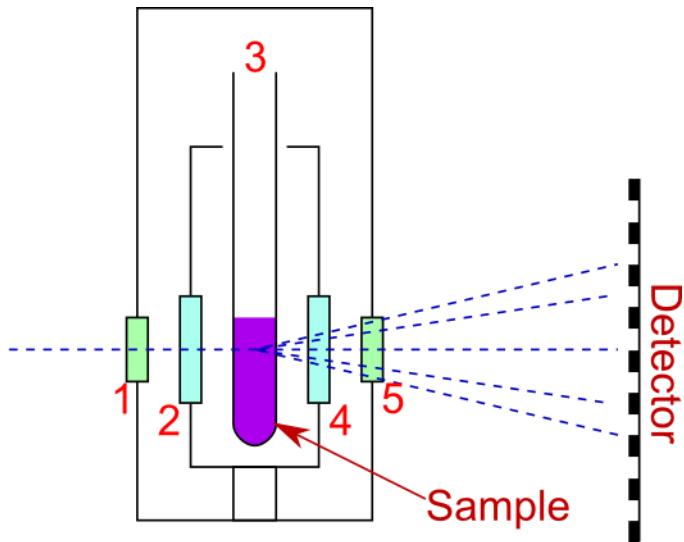


Fig. 12: A hypothetical capillary furnace. The beam passes from left to right (blue dashes), passing through window 1, then window 2, before passing through the downstream wall of the capillary. It is then scattered by the sample with scattered beams passing through the upstream wall of the capillary, then windows 4 and 5. As part of the corrections for a PDF experiment it is necessary to subtract the PDF of the empty container (i.e. each of the windows and the capillary). To calculate the PDF of the empty container it is necessary to have the measured scattering data and to know the nature (e.g. density, elemental composition, etc.) of the portion of the container which the beam passed through.

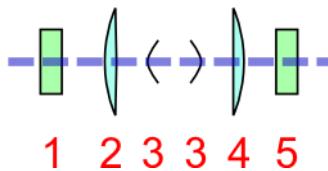


Fig. 13: A complete description of the shapes of the container elements with their orientation relative to the beam and also information on whether they are upstream or downstream of the sample is also therefore important. For example, although the windows 2 and 4 have the same shape, the path taken through them by the beam is very different and this needs to be modelled. Furthermore, it is not inconceivable that windows might move during an experiment and thus the changes to the beampath would need to be accounted for.

This class encodes the position of the container with respect to the sample and allows the calculation of the beampath through the container. It also includes sufficient data to model beam absorption of the container and a link to a dataset containing a measurement of the container with nothing inside, to allow data corrections (at a specific beam energy/measurement time) to be made.

**Symbols:**

No symbol table

**Groups cited:** *NXbeam*, *NXshape*, *NXtransformations*

**Structure:**

**name:** (required) *NX\_CHAR*

Descriptive name of container.

**description:** (required) *NX\_CHAR*

Verbose description of container and how it fits into the wider experimental set up.

**chemical\_formula:** (required) *NX\_CHAR*

Chemical composition of the material the container is made from. Specified using CIF conventions. Abbreviated version of CIF standard:

- Only recognized element symbols may be used.
- Each element symbol is followed by a ‘count’ number. A count of ‘1’ may be omitted.
- A space or parenthesis must separate each cluster of (element symbol + count).
- Where a group of elements is enclosed in parentheses, the multiplier for the group must follow the closing parentheses. That is, all element and group multipliers are assumed to be printed as subscripted numbers.
- Unless the elements are ordered in a manner that corresponds to their chemical structure, the order of the elements within any group or moiety depends on whether or not carbon is present.
- If carbon is present, the order should be:
  - C, then H, then the other elements in alphabetical order of their symbol.
  - If carbon is not present, the elements are listed purely in alphabetic order of their symbol.
- This is the *Hill* system used by Chemical Abstracts.

**density[n\_comp]:** (required) *NX\_FLOAT* {units=*NX\_MASS\_DENSITY*}

Density of the material the container is made from.

**packing\_fraction[n\_comp]:** (required) *NX\_FLOAT* {units=*NX\_UNITLESS*}

Fraction of the volume of the container occupied by the material forming the container.

**relative\_molecular\_mass[n\_comp]:** (required) *NX\_FLOAT* {units=*NX\_MASS*}

Relative molecular mass of container.

**beam:** (required) *NXbeam*

Details of beam incident on container, including the position relative to the sample (to determine whether the container is upstream or downstream of the sample).

**shape:** (required) *NXshape*

Shape of the container. In combination with orientation this should allow the beampath through the container to be modelled to allow the adsorption to be calculated.

**orientation:** (required) *NXtransformations*

The angle the container makes to the beam and how it may change during the experiment. In combination with shape this should allow the beampath through the container to be modelled to allow the adsorption of the container to be calculated.

**reference\_measurement** -> /NXentry

A link to a full data collection which contains the actual measured data for this container within the experimental set up (with no sample or inner container(s)). This data set will also include the wavelength/energy, measurement time and intensity for which these data are valid.

**NXDL Source:** [https://github.com/nexusformat/definitions/blob/master/contributed\\_definitions/NXcontainer.nxdl.xml](https://github.com/nexusformat/definitions/blob/master/contributed_definitions/NXcontainer.nxdl.xml)

## NXcsg

**Status:**

contributed definition, extends *NXObject*

**Description:**

constructive solid geometry NeXus class, using *NXquadric* and *NXoff\_geometry*.

**Symbols:**

No symbol table

**Groups cited:** *NXcsg*

**Structure:**

**operation:** (required) *NX\_CHAR*

One of the standard construction solid geometry set operations, or if the CSG is a pointer to the geometry provided by an *NXquadric* or an *NXoff\_geometry*. Takes values:

Any of these values:

- UNION
- INTERSECTION
- DIFFERENCE
- COMPLEMENT
- IS\_QUADRIC
- IS\_MESH

**geometry:** (optional) *NX\_CHAR*

Path to a field that is either an *NXquadric* (if ‘operation’ = IS\_QUADRIC) or an *NXoff\_geometry* (if ‘operation’ = IS\_MESH) that defines the surface making up the constructive solid geometry component. Compulsory if ‘operation’ is IS\_QUADRIC or IS\_MESH.

**a:** (optional) *NXcsg*

The first operand of constructive solid geometry operation. Compulsory if ‘operation’ is UNION, INTERSECTION, DIFFERENCE or COMPLEMENT.

**b:** (optional) [NXcsg](#)

The second operand of constructive solid geometry operation. Compulsory if ‘operation’ is UNION, INTERSECTION or DIFFERENCE.

**NXDL Source:** [https://github.com/nexusformat/definitions/blob/master/contributed\\_definitions/NXcsg.nxdl.xml](https://github.com/nexusformat/definitions/blob/master/contributed_definitions/NXcsg.nxdl.xml)

## **NXcxi\_ptycho**

### **Status:**

contributed definition, extends [NXobject](#)

### **Description:**

Application definition for a ptychography experiment. This is compatible with CXI from version 1.6 (discussed with Filipe Maia) if this application definition is put at the top “entry” level. Above this a “cxi\_version” field should be defined. The CXI format is name based, rather than class based, and so it is important to pay attention to the naming convention to be CXI compatible. There are duplications due to the format merger. These should be achieved by SoftLinks, with hdf5 Virtual Dataset being used to restructure any data that needs to be remapped.

An example here is that CXI expects the data to always have shape (npts\_x\*npts\_y, frame\_size\_x, frame\_size\_y). For nexus this is only true for arbitrary scan paths with raster format scans taking shape (npts\_x, npts\_y, frame\_size\_x, frame\_size\_y).

### **Symbols:**

These symbols will be used below to coordinate the shapes of the datasets.

**npts\_x:** The number of points in the x direction

**npts\_y:** Number of points in the y direction.

**frame\_size\_x:** Number of detector pixels in x

**frame\_size\_y:** Number of detector pixels in y

**Groups cited:** [NXbeam](#), [NXcollection](#), [NXdata](#), [NXdetector](#), [NXentry](#), [NXinstrument](#), [NXmonitor](#), [NXsample](#), [NXsource](#), [NXtransformations](#)

### **Structure:**

**entry\_1:** (required) [NXentry](#)

**title:** (required) [NX\\_CHAR](#)

**start\_time:** (optional) [NX\\_DATE\\_TIME](#)

**end\_time:** (optional) [NX\\_DATE\\_TIME](#)

**definition:** (required) [NX\\_CHAR](#)

Official NeXus NXDL schema to which this file conforms

Obligatory value: NXptycho

**instrument\_1:** (required) [NXinstrument](#)

**source\_1:** (required) [NXsource](#)

**name:** (required) [NX\\_CHAR](#)

**energy:** (required) [NX\\_FLOAT](#)

This is the energy of the machine, not the beamline.

**probe:** (required) *NX\_FLOAT*

**type:** (required) *NX\_FLOAT*

**beam\_1:** (required) *NXbeam*

**energy:** (required) *NX\_FLOAT*

**@units:** (required) *NX\_CHAR*

**extent:** (required) *NX\_FLOAT*

**@units:** (required) *NX\_CHAR*

**incident\_beam\_divergence:** (required) *NX\_FLOAT*

**@units:** (required) *NX\_CHAR*

**incident\_beam\_energy:** (required) *NX\_FLOAT*

**@units:** (required) *NX\_CHAR*

**incident\_energy\_spread:** (required) *NX\_FLOAT*

**@units:** (required) *NX\_CHAR*

**detector\_1:** (required) *NXdetector*

**@axes:** (required) *NX\_CHAR*

should have value “[, data]”

**@signal:** (required) *NX\_CHAR*

should have value “data”

**translation:** (required) *NX\_FLOAT* {units=*NX\_LENGTH*}

This is an array of shape (npts\_x\*npts\_y, 3) and can be a Virtual Dataset of x and y

**@units:** (required) *NX\_CHAR*

**@axes:** (required) *NX\_CHAR*

this should take the value “translation:\$slowaxisname:\$fastaxisname”

**@interpretation:** (required) *NX\_CHAR*

This should be “image”

**data[npts\_x, npts\_y, frame\_size\_x, frame\_size\_y]:** (required) *NX\_INT*

**x\_pixel\_size:** (required) *NX\_FLOAT* {units=*NX\_LENGTH*}

**@units:** (required) *NX\_CHAR*

**y\_pixel\_size:** (required) *NX\_FLOAT* {units=*NX\_LENGTH*}

**@units:** (required) *NX\_CHAR*

**distance:** (required) *NX\_FLOAT* {units=*NX\_LENGTH*}

The distance between the detector and the sample

**@units:** (required) *NX\_CHAR*

**beam\_center\_x:** (required) *NX\_FLOAT* {units=*NX\_LENGTH*}

**@units:** (required) *NX\_CHAR*

**beam\_center\_y:** (required) *NX\_FLOAT* {units=*NX\_LENGTH*}

**@units:** (required) *NX\_CHAR*

**transformations:** (required) *NXtransformations*

**vector:** (required) *NX\_NUMBER*

**data\_1** -> /NXentry/NXinstrument/NXdetector/data

This data must always have shape (npts\_x\*npts\_y, frame\_size\_x, frame\_size\_y) regardless of the scan pattern. Use hdf5 virtual dataset to achieve this.

**MONITOR:** (required) *NXmonitor*

**data[npts\_x, npts\_y]:** (required) *NX\_FLOAT*

**DATA:** (required) *NXdata*

**@axes:** (required) *NX\_CHAR*

This should be “[x,..]” for arbitrary scanning patterns, and “[x,..,..]” for raster

**@signal:** (required) *NX\_CHAR*

This should be “data”

**x\_indices:** (required) *NX\_CHAR*

**y\_indices:** (required) *NX\_CHAR*

**data** -> /NXentry/NXinstrument/NXdetector/data

**x** -> /NXentry/NXsample/NXtransformations/x

**y** -> /NXentry/NXsample/NXtransformations/y

**data\_1:** (required) *NXcollection*

To ensure CXI compatibility the data in this group must always have shape that is (npts\_x\*npts\_y, frame\_size\_x, frame\_size\_y). For nexus-style raster scans it is proposed that hdf5 virtual dataset is used.

**data** -> /NXentry/NXinstrument/NXdetector/data

**translation** -> /NXentry/NXinstrument/NXdetector/translation

**sample\_1:** (required) *NXsample*

**name:** (optional) *NX\_CHAR*

**transformations:** (required) *NXtransformations*

This must contain two fields with the x and y motors that are linked via the dependency tree according to the real-life motor layout dependency. For raster scans x and y will have shape (npts\_x, npts\_y) For arbitrary scans x and y will be (npts\_x\*npts\_y,) An attribute with the units for each motor is required.

**@vector:** (required) *NX\_NUMBER*

**geometry\_1:** (required) *NXcollection*

**translation** -> /NXentry/NXinstrument/NXdetector/translation

**NXDL Source:** [https://github.com/nexusformat/definitions/blob/master/contributed\\_definitions/NXcxi\\_ptycho.nxdl.xml](https://github.com/nexusformat/definitions/blob/master/contributed_definitions/NXcxi_ptycho.nxdl.xml)

## NXelectrostatic\_kicker

### Status:

contributed definition, extends *NXObject*

### Description:

definition for a electrostatic kicker.

### Symbols:

No symbol table

### Groups cited:

### Structure:

**description:** (required) *NX\_CHAR*

extended description of the kicker.

**beamline\_distance:** (optional) *NX\_FLOAT* {units=*NX\_LENGTH*}

define position of beamline element relative to production target

**timing:** (optional) *NX\_FLOAT* {units=*NX\_TIME*}

kicker timing as defined by `description` attribute

**@description:** (required) *NX\_CHAR*

**set\_current:** (optional) *NX\_FLOAT* {units=*NX\_CURRENT*}

current set on supply.

**set\_voltage:** (optional) *NX\_FLOAT* {units=*NX\_VOLTAGE*}

voltage set on supply.

**read\_current:** (optional) *NXlog*

current read from supply.

**value:** (required) *NX\_CHAR* {units=*NX\_CURRENT*}

**read\_voltage:** (optional) *NXlog*

voltage read from supply.

**value:** (required) *NX\_CHAR* {units=*NX\_VOLTAGE*}

**NXDL Source:** [https://github.com/nexusformat/definitions/blob/master/contributed\\_definitions/NXelectrostatic\\_kicker.nxdl.xml](https://github.com/nexusformat/definitions/blob/master/contributed_definitions/NXelectrostatic_kicker.nxdl.xml)

## NXmagnetic\_kicker

### Status:

contributed definition, extends *NXObject*

### Description:

definition for a magnetic kicker.

### Symbols:

No symbol table

**Groups cited:** [NXlog](#)

**Structure:**

**description:** (required) [NX\\_CHAR](#)

extended description of the kicker.

**beamline\_distance:** (optional) [NX\\_FLOAT](#) {units=[NX\\_LENGTH](#)}

define position of beamline element relative to production target

**timing:** (optional) [NX\\_FLOAT](#) {units=[NX\\_TIME](#)}

kicker timing as defined by `description` attribute

**@description:** (required) [NX\\_CHAR](#)

**set\_current:** (optional) [NX\\_FLOAT](#) {units=[NX\\_CURRENT](#)}

current set on supply.

**set\_voltage:** (optional) [NX\\_FLOAT](#) {units=[NX\\_VOLTAGE](#)}

voltage set on supply.

**read\_current:** (optional) [NXlog](#)

current read from supply.

**value:** (required) [NX\\_CHAR](#) {units=[NX\\_CURRENT](#)}

**read\_voltage:** (optional) [NXlog](#)

voltage read from supply.

**value:** (required) [NX\\_CHAR](#) {units=[NX\\_VOLTAGE](#)}

**NXDL Source:** [https://github.com/nexusformat/definitions/blob/master/contributed\\_definitions/NXmagnetic\\_kicker.nxdl.xml](https://github.com/nexusformat/definitions/blob/master/contributed_definitions/NXmagnetic_kicker.nxdl.xml)

## NXquadric

**Status:**

contributed definition, extends [NXobject](#)

**Description:**

definition of a quadric surface.

**Symbols:**

No symbol table

**Groups cited:** none

**Structure:**

**parameters[10]:** (required) [NX\\_NUMBER](#) {units=[NX\\_PER\\_LENGTH](#)}

Ten real values of the matrix that defines the quadric surface in projective space. Ordered Q11, Q12, Q13, Q22, Q23, Q33, P1, P2, P3, R. Takes a units attribute of dimension reciprocal length. R is scalar. P has dimension reciprocal length, and the given units. Q has dimension reciprocal length squared, and units the square of those given.

**surface\_type:** (optional) [NX\\_CHAR](#)

An optional description of the form of the quadric surface:

Any of these values:

- ELLIPSOID
- ELLIPTIC\_PARABOLOID
- HYPERBOLIC\_PARABOLOID
- ELLIPTIC\_HYPERBOLOID\_OF\_1\_SHEET
- ELLIPTIC\_HYPERBOLOID\_OF\_2\_SHEETS
- ELLIPTIC\_CONE
- ELLIPTIC\_CYLINDER
- HYPERBOLIC\_CYLINDER
- PARABOLIC\_CYLINDER
- SPHEROID
- SPHERE
- PARABOLOID
- HYPERBOLOID\_1\_SHEET
- HYPERBOLOID\_2\_SHEET
- CONE
- CYLINDER
- PLANE
- IMAGINARY
- UNKNOWN

**depends\_on:** (optional) *NX\_CHAR*

Path to an *NXtransformations* that defining the axis on which the orientation of the surface depends.

**NXDL Source:** [https://github.com/nexusformat/definitions/blob/master/contributed\\_definitions/NXquadric.nxdl.xml](https://github.com/nexusformat/definitions/blob/master/contributed_definitions/NXquadric.nxdl.xml)

## NXquadrupole\_magnet

**Status:**

contributed definition, extends *NXObject*

**Description:**

definition for a quadrupole magnet.

**Symbols:**

No symbol table

**Groups cited:** *NXlog*

**Structure:**

**description:** (required) *NX\_CHAR*

extended description of the magnet.

**beamline\_distance:** (optional) *NX\_FLOAT* {units=*NX\_LENGTH*}

define position of beamline element relative to production target

**set\_current:** (optional) *NX\_FLOAT* {units=*NX\_CURRENT*}

current set on supply.

**read\_current:** (optional) *NXlog*

current read from supply.

**value:** (required) *NX\_CHAR* {units=*NX\_CURRENT*}

**read\_voltage:** (optional) *NXlog*

voltage read from supply.

**value:** (required) *NX\_CHAR* {units=*NX\_VOLTAGE*}

**NXDL Source:** [https://github.com/nexusformat/definitions/blob/master/contributed\\_definitions/NXquadrupole\\_magnet.nxdl.xml](https://github.com/nexusformat/definitions/blob/master/contributed_definitions/NXquadrupole_magnet.nxdl.xml)

## NXseparator

### Status:

contributed definition, extends *NXObject*

### Description:

definition for an electrostatic separator.

### Symbols:

No symbol table

### Groups cited:

### Structure:

**description:** (required) *NX\_CHAR*

extended description of the separator.

**beamline\_distance:** (optional) *NX\_FLOAT* {units=*NX\_LENGTH*}

define position of beamline element relative to production target

**set\_Bfield\_current:** (optional) *NX\_FLOAT* {units=*NX\_CURRENT*}

current set on magnet supply.

**set\_Efield\_voltage:** (optional) *NX\_FLOAT* {units=*NX\_VOLTAGE*}

current set on HT supply.

**read\_Bfield\_current:** (optional) *NXlog*

current read from magnet supply.

**value:** (required) *NX\_CHAR* {units=*NX\_CURRENT*}

**read\_Efield\_voltage:** (optional) *NXlog*

voltage read from magnet supply.

**value:** (required) *NX\_CHAR* {units=*NX\_VOLTAGE*}

**read\_Efield\_current:** (optional) *NXlog*

current read from HT supply.

**value:** (required) *NX\_CHAR* {units=*NX\_CURRENT*}

**read\_Efield\_voltage:** (optional) *NXlog*

voltage read from HT supply.

**value:** (required) *NX\_CHAR* {units=*NX\_VOLTAGE*}

**NXDL Source:** [https://github.com/nexusformat/definitions/blob/master/contributed\\_definitions/NXseparator.nxdl.xml](https://github.com/nexusformat/definitions/blob/master/contributed_definitions/NXseparator.nxdl.xml)

## NXsnsevent

### Status:

contributed definition, extends *NXObject*

### Description:

This is a definition for event data from Spallation Neutron Source (SNS) at ORNL.

### Symbols:

No symbol table

**Groups cited:** *NXaperture*, *NXattenuator*, *NXcollection*, *NXcrystal*, *NXdata*, *NXdetector*, *NXdisk\_chopper*, *NXentry*, *NXevent\_data*, *NXgeometry*, *NXinstrument*, *NXlog*, *NXmoderator*, *NXmonitor*, *NXnote*, *NXorientation*, *NXpolarizer*, *NXpositioner*, *NXsample*, *NXshape*, *NXsource*, *NXtranslation*, *NXuser*

### Structure:

**ENTRY:** (required) *NXentry*

**collection\_identifier:** (required) *NX\_CHAR*

**collection\_title:** (required) *NX\_CHAR*

**definition:** (required) *NX\_CHAR*

Official NXDL schema after this file goes to applications.

Obligatory value: NXsnsevent

**duration:** (required) *NX\_FLOAT* {units=*NX\_TIME*}

**end\_time:** (required) *NX\_DATE\_TIME*

**entry\_identifier:** (required) *NX\_CHAR*

**experiment\_identifier:** (required) *NX\_CHAR*

**notes:** (required) *NX\_CHAR*

**proton\_charge:** (required) *NX\_FLOAT* {units=*NX\_CHARGE*}

**raw\_frames:** (required) *NX\_INT*

**run\_number:** (required) *NX\_CHAR*

**start\_time:** (required) *NX\_DATE\_TIME*

**title:** (required) *NX\_CHAR*

**total\_counts:** (required) *NX\_UINT* {units=*NX\_UNITLESS*}

**total\_uncounted\_counts:** (required) *NX\_UINT* {units=*NX\_UNITLESS*}

**DASLogs:** (required) *NXcollection*  
Details of all logs, both from cvinfo file and from HistoTool (frequency and proton\_charge).

**LOG:** (required) *NXlog*

- average\_value:** (required) *NX\_FLOAT*
- average\_value\_error:** (required) *NX\_FLOAT*
- description:** (required) *NX\_CHAR*
- duration:** (required) *NX\_FLOAT*
- maximum\_value:** (required) *NX\_FLOAT*
- minimum\_value:** (required) *NX\_FLOAT*
- time[nvalue]:** (required) *NX\_FLOAT*
- value[nvalue]:** (required) *NX\_FLOAT*

**POSITIONER:** (optional) *NXpositioner*  
Motor logs from cvinfo file.

- average\_value:** (required) *NX\_FLOAT*
- average\_value\_error:** (required) *NX\_FLOAT*
- description:** (required) *NX\_CHAR*
- duration:** (required) *NX\_FLOAT*
- maximum\_value:** (required) *NX\_FLOAT*
- minimum\_value:** (required) *NX\_FLOAT*
- time[numvalue]:** (required) *NX\_FLOAT*
- value[numvalue]:** (required) *NX\_FLOAT*

**SNSHistotool:** (required) *NXnote*

- SNSbanking\_file\_name:** (required) *NX\_CHAR*
- SNSmapping\_file\_name:** (required) *NX\_CHAR*
- author:** (required) *NX\_CHAR*
- command1:** (required) *NX\_CHAR*  
Command string for event2nxl.
- date:** (required) *NX\_CHAR*
- description:** (required) *NX\_CHAR*
- version:** (required) *NX\_CHAR*

**DATA:** (required) *NXdata*

```

data_x_y -> /NXentry/NXinstrument/NXdetector/data_x_y
x_pixel_offset -> /NXentry/NXinstrument/NXdetector/x_pixel_offset
y_pixel_offset -> /NXentry/NXinstrument/NXdetector/y_pixel_offset

EVENT_DATA: (required) NXevent_data
  event_index -> /NXentry/NXinstrument/NXdetector/event_index
  event_pixel_id -> /NXentry/NXinstrument/NXdetector/event_pixel_id
  event_time_of_flight -> /NXentry/NXinstrument/NXdetector/event_time_of_flight
  pulse_time -> /NXentry/NXinstrument/NXdetector/pulse_time

instrument: (required) NXinstrument
  SNSdetector_calibration_id: (required) NX_CHAR
    Detector calibration id from DAS.

  SNSgeometry_file_name: (required) NX_CHAR
  SNStranslation_service: (required) NX_CHAR
  beamline: (required) NX_CHAR
  name: (required) NX_CHAR
  SNS: (required) NXsource
    frequency: (required) NX_FLOAT {units=NX_FREQUENCY}
    name: (required) NX_CHAR
    probe: (required) NX_CHAR
    type: (required) NX_CHAR

DETECTOR: (required) NXdetector
  azimuthal_angle[numx, numy]: (required) NX_FLOAT
    {units=NX_ANGLE}
  data_x_y[numx, numy]: (required) NX_UINT
    expect signal=2 axes="x_pixel_offset,
    y_pixel_offset"
  distance[numx, numy]: (required) NX_FLOAT {units=NX_LENGTH}
  event_index[numpulses]: (required) NX_UINT
  event_pixel_id[numevents]: (required) NX_UINT
  event_time_of_flight[numevents]: (required) NX_FLOAT
    {units=NX_TIME_OF_FLIGHT}
  pixel_id[numx, numy]: (required) NX_UINT
  polar_angle[numx, numy]: (required) NX_FLOAT
    {units=NX_ANGLE}
  pulse_time[numpulses]: (required) NX_FLOAT {units=NX_TIME}
  total_counts: (required) NX_UINT
  x_pixel_offset[numx]: (required) NX_FLOAT {units=NX_LENGTH}

```

**y\_pixel\_offset[numy]:** (required) *NX\_FLOAT* {units=*NX\_LENGTH*}

**origin:** (required) *NXgeometry*

**orientation:** (required) *NXorientation*

**value[6]:** (required) *NX\_FLOAT*

Six out of nine rotation parameters.

**shape:** (required) *NXshape*

**description:** (required) *NX\_CHAR*

**shape:** (required) *NX\_CHAR*

**size[3]:** (required) *NX\_FLOAT* {units=*NX\_LENGTH*}

**translation:** (required) *NXtranslation*

**distance[3]:** (required) *NX\_FLOAT*  
{units=*NX\_LENGTH*}

**DISK\_CHOPPER:** (optional) *NXdisk\_chopper*

**distance:** (required) *NX\_FLOAT* {units=*NX\_LENGTH*}

**moderator:** (required) *NXmoderator*

**coupling\_material:** (required) *NX\_CHAR*

**distance:** (required) *NX\_FLOAT* {units=*NX\_LENGTH*}

**temperature:** (required) *NX\_FLOAT* {units=*NX\_TEMPERATURE*}

**type:** (required) *NX\_CHAR*

**APERTURE:** (optional) *NXaperture*

**x\_pixel\_offset:** (required) *NX\_FLOAT* {units=*NX\_LENGTH*}

**origin:** (required) *NXgeometry*

**orientation:** (required) *NXorientation*

**value[6]:** (required) *NX\_FLOAT*

Six out of nine rotation parameters.

**shape:** (required) *NXshape*

**description:** (required) *NX\_CHAR*

**shape:** (required) *NX\_CHAR*

**size[3]:** (required) *NX\_FLOAT* {units=*NX\_LENGTH*}

**translation:** (required) *NXtranslation*

**distance[3]:** (required) *NX\_FLOAT*  
{units=*NX\_LENGTH*}

**ATTENUATOR:** (optional) *NXattenuator*

**distance:** (required) *NX\_FLOAT* {units=*NX\_LENGTH*}

**POLARIZER:** (optional) *NXpolarizer*

**CRYSTAL:** (optional) *NXcrystal*

**type:** (required) *NX\_CHAR*

**wavelength:** (required) *NX\_FLOAT* {units=*NX\_WAVELENGTH*}

**origin:** (required) *NXgeometry*

**description:** (required) *NX\_CHAR*

**orientation:** (required) *NXorientation*

**value[6]:** (required) *NX\_FLOAT*

Six out of nine rotation parameters.

**shape:** (required) *NXshape*

**description:** (required) *NX\_CHAR*

**shape:** (required) *NX\_CHAR*

**size:** (required) *NX\_FLOAT* {units=*NX\_LENGTH*}

**translation:** (required) *NXtranslation*

**distance[3]:** (required) *NX\_FLOAT*  
{units=*NX\_LENGTH*}

**MONITOR:** (optional) *NXmonitor*

**data[numtimechannels]:** (required) *NX\_UINT*

expect signal=1 axes="time\_of\_flight"

**distance:** (required) *NX\_FLOAT* {units=*NX\_LENGTH*}

**mode:** (required) *NX\_CHAR*

**time\_of\_flight[numtimechannels + 1]:** (required) *NX\_FLOAT*  
{units=*NX\_TIME*}

**sample:** (required) *NXsample*

**changer\_position:** (required) *NX\_CHAR*

**holder:** (required) *NX\_CHAR*

**identifier:** (required) *NX\_CHAR*

**name:** (required) *NX\_CHAR*

Descriptive name of sample

**nature:** (required) *NX\_CHAR*

**USER:** (required) *NXuser*

**facility\_user\_id:** (required) *NX\_CHAR*

**name:** (required) *NX\_CHAR*

**role:** (required) *NX\_CHAR*

**NXDL Source:** [https://github.com/nexusformat/definitions/blob/master/contributed\\_definitions/NXsnsevent.nxdl.xml](https://github.com/nexusformat/definitions/blob/master/contributed_definitions/NXsnsevent.nxdl.xml)

## NXsnshisto

### Status:

contributed definition, extends [NXobject](#)

### Description:

This is a definition for histogram data from Spallation Neutron Source (SNS) at ORNL.

### Symbols:

No symbol table

**Groups cited:** [NXaperture](#), [NXattenuator](#), [NXcollection](#), [NXcrystal](#), [NXdata](#), [NXdetector](#), [NXdisk\\_chopper](#), [NXentry](#), [NXfermi\\_chopper](#), [NXgeometry](#), [NXinstrument](#), [NXlog](#), [NXmoderator](#), [NXmonitor](#), [NXnote](#), [NXorientation](#), [NXpolarizer](#), [NXpositioner](#), [NXsample](#), [NXshape](#), [NXsource](#), [NXtranslation](#), [NXuser](#)

### Structure:

**ENTRY:** (required) [NXentry](#)

**collection\_identifier:** (required) [NX\\_CHAR](#)

**collection\_title:** (required) [NX\\_CHAR](#)

**definition:** (required) [NX\\_CHAR](#)

Official NXDL schema after this file goes to applications.

Obligatory value: NXsnshisto

**duration:** (required) [NX\\_FLOAT](#) {units=[NX\\_TIME](#)}

**end\_time:** (required) [NX\\_DATE\\_TIME](#)

**entry\_identifier:** (required) [NX\\_CHAR](#)

**experiment\_identifier:** (required) [NX\\_CHAR](#)

**notes:** (required) [NX\\_CHAR](#)

**proton\_charge:** (required) [NX\\_FLOAT](#) {units=[NX\\_CHARGE](#)}

**raw\_frames:** (required) [NX\\_INT](#)

**run\_number:** (required) [NX\\_CHAR](#)

**start\_time:** (required) [NX\\_DATE\\_TIME](#)

**title:** (required) [NX\\_CHAR](#)

**total\_counts:** (required) [NX\\_UINT](#) {units=[NX\\_UNITLESS](#)}

**total\_uncounted\_counts:** (required) [NX\\_UINT](#) {units=[NX\\_UNITLESS](#)}

**DASlogs:** (required) [NXcollection](#)

Details of all logs, both from cvinfo file and from HistoTool (frequency and proton\_charge).

**LOG:** (required) [NXlog](#)

**average\_value:** (required) [NX\\_FLOAT](#)

**average\_value\_error:** (required) [NX\\_FLOAT](#)

**description:** (required) [NX\\_CHAR](#)

**duration:** (required) [NX\\_FLOAT](#)

**maximum\_value:** (required) *NX\_FLOAT*  
**minimum\_value:** (required) *NX\_FLOAT*  
**time[nvalue]:** (required) *NX\_FLOAT*  
**value[nvalue]:** (required) *NX\_FLOAT*  
**POSITIONER:** (optional) *NXpositioner*  
 Motor logs from cvinfo file.  
**average\_value:** (required) *NX\_FLOAT*  
**average\_value\_error:** (required) *NX\_FLOAT*  
**description:** (required) *NX\_CHAR*  
**duration:** (required) *NX\_FLOAT*  
**maximum\_value:** (required) *NX\_FLOAT*  
**minimum\_value:** (required) *NX\_FLOAT*  
**time[numvalue]:** (required) *NX\_FLOAT*  
**value[numvalue]:** (required) *NX\_FLOAT*  
**SNSHistoTool:** (required) *NXnote*  
**SNSbanking\_file\_name:** (required) *NX\_CHAR*  
**SNSmapping\_file\_name:** (required) *NX\_CHAR*  
**author:** (required) *NX\_CHAR*  
**command1:** (required) *NX\_CHAR*  
 Command string for event2histo\_nxl.  
**date:** (required) *NX\_CHAR*  
**description:** (required) *NX\_CHAR*  
**version:** (required) *NX\_CHAR*  
**DATA:** (required) *NXdata*  
**data** -> /NXentry/NXinstrument/NXdetector/data  
**data\_x\_time\_of\_flight** -> /NXentry/NXinstrument/NXdetector/data\_x\_time\_of\_flight  
**data\_x\_y** -> /NXentry/NXinstrument/NXdetector/data\_x\_y  
**data\_y\_time\_of\_flight** -> /NXentry/NXinstrument/NXdetector/data\_y\_time\_of\_flight  
**pixel\_id** -> /NXentry/NXinstrument/NXdetector/pixel\_id  
**time\_of\_flight** -> /NXentry/NXinstrument/NXdetector/time\_of\_flight  
**total\_counts** -> /NXentry/NXinstrument/NXdetector/total\_counts  
**x\_pixel\_offset** -> /NXentry/NXinstrument/NXdetector/x\_pixel\_offset  
**y\_pixel\_offset** -> /NXentry/NXinstrument/NXdetector/y\_pixel\_offset  
**instrument:** (required) *NXinstrument*  
**SNSdetector\_calibration\_id:** (required) *NX\_CHAR*  
 Detector calibration id from DAS.

**SNSgeometry\_file\_name:** (required) *NX\_CHAR*

**SNStranslation\_service:** (required) *NX\_CHAR*

**beamline:** (required) *NX\_CHAR*

**name:** (required) *NX\_CHAR*

**SNS:** (required) *NXsource*

- frequency:** (required) *NX\_FLOAT* {units=*NX\_FREQUENCY*}
- name:** (required) *NX\_CHAR*
- probe:** (required) *NX\_CHAR*
- type:** (required) *NX\_CHAR*

**DETECTOR:** (required) *NXdetector*

- azimuthal\_angle[numx, numy]:** (required) *NX\_FLOAT*  
{units=*NX\_ANGLE*}
- data[numx, numy, numtof]:** (required) *NX\_UINT*
- data\_x\_time\_of\_flight[numx, numtof]:** (required) *NX\_UINT*
- data\_x\_y[numx, numy]:** (required) *NX\_UINT*
- data\_y\_time\_of\_flight[numy, numtof]:** (required) *NX\_UINT*
- distance[numx, numy]:** (required) *NX\_FLOAT* {units=*NX\_LENGTH*}
- pixel\_id[numx, numy]:** (required) *NX\_UINT*
- polar\_angle[numx, numy]:** (required) *NX\_FLOAT*  
{units=*NX\_ANGLE*}
- time\_of\_flight[numtof + 1]:** (required) *NX\_FLOAT*  
{units=*NX\_TIME\_OF\_FLIGHT*}
- total\_counts:** (required) *NX\_UINT*
- x\_pixel\_offset[numx]:** (required) *NX\_FLOAT* {units=*NX\_LENGTH*}
- y\_pixel\_offset[numy]:** (required) *NX\_FLOAT* {units=*NX\_LENGTH*}
- origin:** (required) *NXgeometry*
- orientation:** (required) *NXorientation*
- value[6]:** (required) *NX\_FLOAT*

Six out of nine rotation parameters.

**shape:** (required) *NXshape*

**description:** (required) *NX\_CHAR*

**shape:** (required) *NX\_CHAR*

**size[3]:** (required) *NX\_FLOAT* {units=*NX\_LENGTH*}

**translation:** (required) *NXtranslation*

- distance[3]:** (required) *NX\_FLOAT*  
{units=*NX\_LENGTH*}

**DISK\_CHOPPER:** (optional) *NXdisk\_chopper*

Original specification called for NXchopper, which is not a valid NeXus base class. Select either NXdisk\_chopper or NXfermi\_chopper, as appropriate.

**distance:** (required) *NX\_FLOAT* {units=*NX\_LENGTH*}

**FERMI\_CHOPPER:** (optional) *NXfermi\_chopper*

Original specification called for NXchopper, which is not a valid NeXus base class. Select either NXdisk\_chopper or NXfermi\_chopper, as appropriate.

**distance:** (required) *NX\_FLOAT* {units=*NX\_LENGTH*}

**moderator:** (required) *NXmoderator*

**coupling\_material:** (required) *NX\_CHAR*

**distance:** (required) *NX\_FLOAT* {units=*NX\_LENGTH*}

**temperature:** (required) *NX\_FLOAT* {units=*NX\_TEMPERATURE*}

**type:** (required) *NX\_CHAR*

**APERTURE:** (optional) *NXaperture*

**x\_pixel\_offset:** (required) *NX\_FLOAT* {units=*NX\_LENGTH*}

**origin:** (required) *NXgeometry*

**orientation:** (required) *NXorientation*

**value[6]:** (required) *NX\_FLOAT*

Six out of nine rotation parameters.

**shape:** (required) *NXshape*

**description:** (required) *NX\_CHAR*

**shape:** (required) *NX\_CHAR*

**size[3]:** (required) *NX\_FLOAT* {units=*NX\_LENGTH*}

**translation:** (required) *NXtranslation*

**distance[3]:** (required) *NX\_FLOAT*  
{units=*NX\_LENGTH*}

**ATTENUATOR:** (optional) *NXattenuator*

**distance:** (required) *NX\_FLOAT* {units=*NX\_LENGTH*}

**POLARIZER:** (optional) *NXpolarizer*

**CRYSTAL:** (optional) *NXcrystal*

**type:** (required) *NX\_CHAR*

**wavelength:** (required) *NX\_FLOAT* {units=*NX\_WAVELENGTH*}

**origin:** (required) *NXgeometry*

**description:** (required) *NX\_CHAR*

**orientation:** (required) *NXorientation*

**value[6]:** (required) *NX\_FLOAT*

Six out of nine rotation parameters.

**shape:** (required) *NXshape*

**description:** (required) *NX\_CHAR*

**shape:** (required) *NX\_CHAR*

**size:** (required) *NX\_FLOAT* {units=*NX\_LENGTH*}

**translation:** (required) *NXtranslation*

**distance[3]:** (required) *NX\_FLOAT*  
{units=*NX\_LENGTH*}

**MONITOR:** (optional) *NXmonitor*

**data[numtimechannels]:** (required) *NX\_UINT*

**distance:** (required) *NX\_FLOAT* {units=*NX\_LENGTH*}

**mode:** (required) *NX\_CHAR*

**time\_of\_flight[numtimechannels + 1]:** (required) *NX\_FLOAT*  
{units=*NX\_TIME*}

**sample:** (required) *NXsample*

**changer\_position:** (required) *NX\_CHAR*

**holder:** (required) *NX\_CHAR*

**identifier:** (required) *NX\_CHAR*

**name:** (required) *NX\_CHAR*  
Descriptive name of sample

**nature:** (required) *NX\_CHAR*

**USER:** (required) *NXuser*

**facility\_user\_id:** (required) *NX\_CHAR*

**name:** (required) *NX\_CHAR*

**role:** (required) *NX\_CHAR*

**NXDL Source:** [https://github.com/nexusformat/definitions/blob/master/contributed\\_definitions/NXsnshisto.nxdl.xml](https://github.com/nexusformat/definitions/blob/master/contributed_definitions/NXsnshisto.nxdl.xml)

## **NXsolenoid\_magnet**

### **Status:**

contributed definition, extends *NXObject*

### **Description:**

definition for a solenoid magnet.

### **Symbols:**

No symbol table

### **Groups cited:** *NXlog*

### **Structure:**

**description:** (required) *NX\_CHAR*

extended description of the magnet.

**beamline\_distance:** (optional) *NX\_FLOAT* {units=*NX\_LENGTH*}

define position of beamline element relative to production target

**set\_current:** (optional) *NX\_FLOAT* {units=*NX\_CURRENT*}

current set on supply.

**read\_current:** (optional) *NXlog*

current read from supply.

**value:** (required) *NX\_CHAR* {units=*NX\_CURRENT*}

**read\_voltage:** (optional) *NXlog*

voltage read from supply.

**value:** (required) *NX\_CHAR* {units=*NX\_VOLTAGE*}

**NXDL Source:** [https://github.com/nexusformat/definitions/blob/master/contributed\\_definitions/NXsolenoid\\_magnet.nxdl.xml](https://github.com/nexusformat/definitions/blob/master/contributed_definitions/NXsolenoid_magnet.nxdl.xml)

## NXsolid\_geometry

### Status:

contributed definition, extends *NXObject*

### Description:

the head node for constructively defined geometry

### Symbols:

No symbol table

**Groups cited:** *NXcsg*, *NXoff\_geometry*, *NXquadric*

### Structure:

**QUADRIC:** (optional) *NXquadric*

Instances of *NXquadric* making up elements of the geometry.

**OFF\_GEOMETRY:** (optional) *NXoff\_geometry*

Instances of *NXoff\_geometry* making up elements of the geometry.

**CSG:** (optional) *NXcsg*

The geometries defined, made up of instances of *NXquadric* and *NXoff\_geometry*.

**NXDL Source:** [https://github.com/nexusformat/definitions/blob/master/contributed\\_definitions/NXsolid\\_geometry.nxdl.xml](https://github.com/nexusformat/definitions/blob/master/contributed_definitions/NXsolid_geometry.nxdl.xml)

## NXspecdata

### Status:

contributed definition, extends *NXObject*

### Description:

Data collected by SPEC control and data acquisition software

SPEC<sup>1</sup> is software for instrument control and data acquisition in X-ray diffraction experiments.

### Symbols:

No symbol table

**Groups cited:** *NXcrystal*, *NXdata*, *NXentry*, *NXinstrument*, *NXmonitor*, *NXnote*, *NXuser*

### Structure:

#### @default: (required) *NX\_CHAR*

Declares which *NXentry* group contains the data to be shown by default. It is needed to resolve ambiguity when more than one *NXentry* group exists. The value is the name of the default *NXentry* group.

#### @HDF5\_Version: (required) *NX\_CHAR*

Version of HDF5 library used in writing the file (as specified in *NXroot*).

Note this attribute is spelled with uppercase “V”, different than other version attributes.

#### @h5py\_version: (optional) *NX\_CHAR*

version of h5py Python package used to write this HDF5 file

#### @SPEC\_file: (optional) *NX\_CHAR*

original SPEC data file name from #F line in file header

#### @SPEC\_date: (optional) *NX\_CHAR*

date from #D line in file header, in ISO8601 format

#### @SPEC\_epoch: (required) *NX\_INT*

UNIX time epoch from #E line in file header

#### @SPEC\_comments: (optional) *NX\_CHAR*

any #C lines in file header, stored as one string with newlines between comments

#### @SPEC\_num\_headers: (optional) *NX\_INT*

Number of header sections found in the spec file

#### ENTRY: (required) *NXentry*

one scan from a SPEC data file, starts with a #S line

#### @default: (required) *NX\_CHAR*

Declares which *NXdata* group contains the data to be shown by default. It is needed to resolve ambiguity when more than one *NXdata* group exists. The value is the name of the default *NXdata* group.

#### definition: (required) *NX\_CHAR*

---

<sup>1</sup> SPEC: <https://certif.com>

Official NeXus NXDL schema to which this subentry conforms.

Obligatory value: NXspecdata

**scan\_number:** (required) *NX\_NUMBER*

SPEC scan number

**title:** (required) *NX\_CHAR*

SPEC scan number and command, from #S line

SPEC data file line:

```
#S 1 cscan en 690 750 60 0
```

*title:*

```
1 cscan en 690 750 60 0
```

**command:** (required) *NX\_CHAR*

SPEC scan command, from #S line, after the scan number.

**SPEC data file line** #S 1 cscan en 690 750 60 0

**command\*** cscan en 690 750 60 0

**date:** (required) *NX\_DATE\_TIME*

date from #D line in scan header, in ISO8601 format

**comments:** (required) *NX\_CHAR*

Any #C lines in this scan, stored as one string with newlines between comments

**Q:** (required) *NX\_NUMBER*

**#Q – Q (hkl)** at start of scan

array of [h k l]

**TEMP\_SP:** (required) *NX\_NUMBER*

**#X – temperature set point**

**DEGC\_SP:** (required) *NX\_NUMBER*

**#X – temperature set point (C)**

**MONITOR:** (required) *NXmonitor*

**@description:** (required) *NX\_CHAR*

**mode:** (required) *NX\_CHAR*

Count to a preset value based on either clock time (timer) or received monitor counts (monitor).

Any of these values: monitor|timer

**preset:** (required) *NX\_NUMBER*

preset value for time or monitor

- **#M** – counting against this constant monitor count (see #T)

- **#T** – counting against this constant number of seconds (see #M)

**@units:** (required) *NX\_CHAR*

**data:** (required) *NX\_NUMBER*

array(s) of monitor data

**count\_time:** (required) *NX\_NUMBER*

array(s) of monitor data

**data:** (required) *NXdata*

detector (and MCA) data from this scan

**@description:** (required) *NX\_CHAR*

**@signal:** (required) *NX\_CHAR*

name of the field with the plottable data, typically the last column for 1-D scans

This is the primary dependent axis, such as two-theta detector. This field must exist (or be linked) in this *NXdata* group.

**@axes:** (required) *NX\_CHAR*

name(s) of the field(s) for plotting the data, typically the first column for 1-D scans

These are the independent axes, such as positioners. For 2-D or higher dimension data, there will be a field named for each dimension, separated by ":" (preferred) or "," or " " (whitespace).

Such as for 2-D data plotted against *energy* and *th*:

```
@axes = energy:th
```

This(these) field(s) must exist (or be linked) in this *NXdata* group.

**@AXISNAME\_indices:** (required) *NX\_NUMBER*

For each field named in **@axes**, there will be an instance of this attribute, defining into which dimensions of the **@signal** data this field applies. The value of this attribute is a list of index numbers using 0-based indexing (first dimension is 0, seconds is 1, ...).

Such as for 2-D data plotted against *energy* and *th*:

```
@energy_indices = [0]
@th_indices = [1]
```

**data:** (required) *NX\_NUMBER*

one column of data from the scan

HDF5 requires that each member of a group must have a unique name.

Pick the name of column from #L but make it unique which means if the same name is used in more than one column, append a number to the extra instances to make them unique yet preserve their content, just in case they might be different.

Example: seconds seconds becomes seconds and seconda\_1.

**@spec\_name:** (required) *NX\_CHAR*

name as specified in #L line, before it was made unique for HDF5

**@units:** (required) *NX\_CHAR*

Unless stated otherwise, units (not declared in the SPEC data file) are assumed to be *counts* for detectors and “unknown” for positioners or other scan columns.

**intensity\_factor:** (required) *NX\_NUMBER*

#I – intensity normalizing factor

**\_mca\_:** (required) *NX\_NUMBER*

**\_mca\_channel\_:** (required) *NX\_NUMBER*

**\_mca1\_:** (required) *NX\_NUMBER*

**\_mca1\_channel\_:** (required) *NX\_NUMBER*

**counter\_cross\_reference:** (required) *NXnote*

associates values declared in #J and #j scan header lines

**@comment:** (required) *NX\_CHAR*

**@description:** (required) *NX\_CHAR*

**positioner\_cross\_reference:** (required) *NXnote*

associates values declared in #O and #o scan header lines

**@comment:** (required) *NX\_CHAR*

**@description:** (required) *NX\_CHAR*

**spec:** (required) *NXinstrument*

various metadata from the SPEC scan header that have well-known NeXus base classes

**UB:** (required) *NXcrystal*

Orientation matrix of single crystal sample using Busing-Levy convention

**orientation\_matrix[3, 3]:** (required) *NX\_FLOAT*

#G3 line in scan header

**G:** (required) *NXnote*

SPEC geometry variables for this diffractometer geometry (instrument specific)

TODO: give interpreted name for each array value (need to figure out how to get the names)

**@comment:** (required) *NX\_CHAR*

**@description:** (required) *NX\_CHAR*

**G0:** (required) *NX\_NUMBER*

geometry parameters from G[] array (geo mode, sector, etc)

**G1:** (required) *NX\_NUMBER*

geometry parameters from U[] array (lattice constants, orientation reflections)

**G2:** (required) *NX\_NUMBER*

not used, although some files has a single zero value

**G4:** (required) *NX\_NUMBER*

geometry parameters from Q[] array (lambda, frozen angles, cut points, etc)

**positioners:** (required) *NXnote*

names and values of all positioners (#O and #P lines) in scan header

**@description:** (required) *NX\_CHAR*

**positioner:** (required) *NX\_NUMBER*

one positioner from the scan header

HDF5 requires that each member of a group must have a unique name.

SPEC assigns a unique name to each positioner, no extra work is necessary to comply with the HDF5 rule for unique names in a group.

**MCA:** (required) *NXnote*

#@CALIB – coefficients to compute a scale based on the MCA channel number

**@description:** (required) *NX\_CHAR*

**preset\_time:** (required) *NX\_NUMBER*

**elapsed\_live\_time:** (required) *NX\_NUMBER*

**elapsed\_real\_time:** (required) *NX\_NUMBER*

**number\_saved:** (required) *NX\_NUMBER*

**first\_saved:** (required) *NX\_INT*

**last\_saved:** (required) *NX\_INT*

**reduction\_coef:** (required) *NX\_NUMBER*

**calib\_a:** (required) *NX\_NUMBER*

**calib\_b:** (required) *NX\_NUMBER*

**calib\_c:** (required) *NX\_NUMBER*

**ROI:** (required) *NXnote*

**roiN:** (required) *NX\_CHAR*

numbered regions of interest, use an index number as part of the name

**@description:** (required) *NX\_CHAR*

first\_channel, last\_channel

**@first\_channel:** (required) *NX\_INT*

**@last\_channel:** (required) *NX\_INT*

**metadata:** (required) *NXnote*

SPEC metadata (UNICAT-style #H and #V lines)

This is a block that may be unique to SPEC files acquired at certain APS beam lines. Other facilities or instruments may use this block for storing key:value pairs of data where the values have suitable attributes (such as units).

**@description:** (required) *NX\_CHAR*

**SPEC\_user:** (required) *NXuser*

**SPEC\_user:** (required) *NX\_CHAR*

user name from first #C line in file header

**\_unrecognized:** (required) *NXnote*

Fallback for any SPEC data file control lines not otherwise placed into groups or fields elsewhere in this specification.

**@comment:** (required) *NX\_CHAR*

**@description:** (required) *NX\_CHAR*

**NXDL Source:** [https://github.com/nexusformat/definitions/blob/master/contributed\\_definitions/NXspecdata.nxdl.xml](https://github.com/nexusformat/definitions/blob/master/contributed_definitions/NXspecdata.nxdl.xml)

## **NXspin\_rotator**

### **Status:**

contributed definition, extends *NXObject*

### **Description:**

definition for a spin rotator.

### **Symbols:**

No symbol table

### **Groups cited:** *NXlog*

### **Structure:**

**description:** (required) *NX\_CHAR*

extended description of the spin rotator.

**beamline\_distance:** (optional) *NX\_FLOAT* {units=*NX\_LENGTH*}

define position of beamline element relative to production target

**set\_Bfield\_current:** (optional) *NX\_FLOAT* {units=*NX\_CURRENT*}

current set on magnet supply.

**set\_Efield\_voltage:** (optional) *NX\_FLOAT* {units=*NX\_VOLTAGE*}

current set on HT supply.

**read\_Bfield\_current:** (optional) *NXlog*

current read from magnet supply.

**value:** (required) *NX\_CHAR* {units=*NX\_CURRENT*}

**read\_Bfield\_voltage:** (optional) *NXlog*

voltage read from magnet supply.

**value:** (required) *NX\_CHAR* {units=*NX\_VOLTAGE*}

**read\_Efield\_current:** (optional) *NXlog*

current read from HT supply.

**value:** (required) *NX\_CHAR* {units=*NX\_CURRENT*}

**read\_Efield\_voltage:** (optional) *NXlog*

voltage read from HT supply.

**value:** (required) *NX\_CHAR* {units=*NX\_VOLTAGE*}

**NXDL Source:** [https://github.com/nexusformat/definitions/blob/master/contributed\\_definitions/NXspin\\_rotator.nxdl.xml](https://github.com/nexusformat/definitions/blob/master/contributed_definitions/NXspin_rotator.nxdl.xml)

## NAPI: NEXUS APPLICATION PROGRAMMER INTERFACE (FROZEN)

### 4.1 Status

This application program interface (API) was developed to support the reading and writing of NeXus files through unified function calls, regardless of the physical data format (XML, HDF4, HDF5).

In the meantime it has been decided that active development of NeXus definitions and tools will concentrate on HDF5 as the only supported physical data format. It is expected that most application developers will use standard HDF5 tools to read and write NeXus. Two examples are provided in *Example NeXus C programs using native HDF5 commands*.

Therefore, the decision has been taken to freeze the NAPI. Maintenance is reduced to bug fixes.

### 4.2 Overview

The core routines have been written in C but wrappers are available for a number of other languages including C++, Fortran 77, Fortran 90, Java, Python and IDL. The API makes the reading and writing of NeXus files transparent; the user doesn't even need to know the underlying format when reading a file since the API calls are the same.

The NeXus Application Programming Interface for the various language backends is available on-line from <https://github.com/nexusformat/code/>

The `NeXusIntern.pdf` document (<https://github.com/nexusformat/code/blob/master/doc/api/NeXusIntern.pdf>) describes the internal workings of the NeXus-API. You are very welcome to read it, but it will not be of much use if all you want is to read and write files using the NAPI.

The NeXus Application Program Interface call routines in the appropriate backend (HDF4, HDF5 or XML) to read and write files with the correct structure. The API serves a number of purposes:

1. It simplifies the reading and writing of NeXus files.
2. It ensures a certain degree of compliance with the NeXus standard.
3. It hides the implementation details of the format. In particular, the API can read and write HDF4, HDF5, and XML files using the same routines.

## 4.3 Core API

The core API provides the basic routines for reading, writing and navigating NeXus files. Operations are performed using a handle that keeps a record of its current position in the file hierarchy. All read or write requests are then implicitly performed on the currently *open* entity. This limits number of parameters that need to be passed to API calls, at the cost of forcing a certain mode of operation. It is very similar to navigating a directory hierarchy; NeXus groups are the directories, which can contain data sets and/or other directories.

The core API comprises the following functional groups:

- General initialization and shutdown: opening and closing the file, creating or opening an existing group or dataset, and closing them.
- Reading and writing data and attributes to previously opened datasets.
- Routines to obtain meta-data and to iterate over component datasets and attributes.
- Handling of linking and group hierarchy.
- Routines to handle memory allocation. (Not required in all language bindings.)

### 4.3.1 NAPI C and C++ Interface

Documentation is provided online:

**C** <https://manual.nexusformat.org/doxygen/html-c/>

**C++** <https://manual.nexusformat.org/doxygen/html-cpp/>      <https://github.com/nexusformat/code/tree/master/bindings/cpp>

### 4.3.2 NAPI Fortran 77 Interface

The bindings are listed at <https://github.com/nexusformat/code/tree/master/bindings/f77> and can be built as part of the API distribution <https://github.com/nexusformat/code/releases>

### 4.3.3 NAPI Fortran 90 Interface

The Fortran 90 interface is a wrapper to the C interface with nearly identical routine definitions. As with the Fortran 77 interface, it is necessary to reverse the order of indices in multidimensional arrays, compared to an equivalent C program, so that data are stored in the same order in the NeXus file.

Any program using the F90 API needs to put the following line at the top (after the PROGRAM statement):

```
use NXmodule
```

Use the following table to convert from the C data types listed with each routine to the Fortran 90 data types.

C data type	F90 data type
int, int	integer
char*	character(len=*)
NXhandle, NXhandle*	type(NXhandle)
NXstatus	integer
int []	integer(:)
void*	real(:) or integer(:) or character(len=*)
NXlink a, NXlink* a	type(NXlink)

The parameters in the next table, defined in NXmodule, may be used in defining variables.

Name	Description	Value
NX_MAXRANK	Maximum number of dimensions	32
NX_MAXNAMELEN	Maximum length of NeXus name	64
NXi1	Kind parameter for a 1-byte integer	selected_int_kind(2)
NXi2	Kind parameter for a 2-byte integer	selected_int_kind(4)
NXi4	Kind parameter for a 4-byte integer	selected_int_kind(8)
NXr4	Kind parameter for a 4-byte real	kind(1.0)
NXr8	Kind parameter for an 8-byte real	kind(1.0D0)

The bindings are listed at <https://github.com/nexusformat/code/tree/master/bindings/f90> and can be built as part of the API distribution <https://github.com/nexusformat/code/releases>

#### 4.3.4 NAPI Java Interface

This section includes installation notes, instructions for running NeXus for Java programs and a brief introduction to the API.

The Java API for NeXus (`jnexus`) was implemented through the Java Native Interface (JNI) to call on to the native C library. This has a number of disadvantages over using pure Java, however the most popular file backend HDF5 is only available using a JNI wrapper anyway.

##### Acknowledgement

This implementation uses classes and native methods from NCSA's Java HDF Interface project. Basically all conversions from native types to Java types is done through code from the NCSA HDF group. Without this code the implementation of this API would have taken much longer. See NCSA's copyright for more information.

##### Installation

##### Requirements

**Caution:** Documentation is old and may need revision.

For running an application with `jnexus` an recent Java runtime environment (JRE) will do.

In order to compile the Java API for NeXus a Java Development Kit is required on top of the build requirements for the C API.

## Installation under Windows

1. Copy the HDF DLL's and the file `jnexus.dll` to a directory in your path. For instance `C:\\Windows\\system32`.
2. Copy the `jnexus.jar` to the place where you usually keep library jar files.

Note that the location or the naming of these files in the binary Nexus distributions have changed over the years. In the Nexus 4.3.0 Windows 64-bit distribution (see Assets in <https://github.com/nexusformat/code/releases/tag/4.3.0>), By default, the DLL is at: `C:\\Program Files\\NeXus Data Format\\bin\\libjnexus-0.dll`. Please rename this file to `jnexus.dll` before making it available in your path. This is important, otherwise, JVM runtime will not be able to locate this file.

For the same distribution, the location of `jnexus.jar` is at: `C:\\Program Files\\NeXus Data Format\\share\\java`.

## Installation under Unix

The `jnexus.so` shared library as well as all required file backend `.so` libraries are required as well as the `jnexus.jar` file holding the required Java classes. Copy them wherever you like and see below for instructions how to run programs using `jnexus`.

## Running Programs with the NeXus API for Java

In order to successfully run a program with `jnexus`, the Java runtime systems needs to locate two items:

1. The shared library implementing the native methods.
2. The `nexus.jar` file in order to find the Java classes.

## Locating the shared libraries

The methods for locating a shared library differ between systems. Under Windows32 systems the best method is to copy the `jnexus.dll` and the HDF4, HDF5 and/or XML-library DLL files into a directory in your path.

On a UNIX system, the problem can be solved in three different ways:

1. Make your system administrator copy the `jnexus.so` file into the systems default shared library directory (usually `/usr/lib` or `/usr/local/lib`).
2. Put the `jnexus.so` file wherever you see fit and set the `LD_LIBRARY_PATH` environment variable to point to the directory of your choice.
3. Specify the full pathname of the `jnexus` shared library on the `java` command line with the `-Dorg.nexusformat.JNEXUSLIB=full-path-2-shared-library` option.

## Locating jnexus.jar

This is easier, just add the full pathname to `jnexus.jar` to the classpath when starting java. Here are examples for a UNIX shell and the Windows shell.

### UNIX example shell script to start jnexus.jar

```
1 #!/sbin/sh
2 java -classpath /usr/lib/classes.zip:../jnexus.jar:.. \
3     -Dorg.nexusformat.JNEXUSLIB=../libjnexus.so TestJapi
```

### Windows 32 example batch file to start jnexus.jar

```
1 set JL=-Dorg.nexusformat.JNEXUSLIB=..\jnexus\bin\win32\jnexus.dll
2 java -classpath C:\jdk1.5\lib\classes.zip;..\jnexus.jar;.%JL% TestJapi
```

## Programming with the NeXus API for Java

The NeXus C-API is good enough but for Java a few adaptions of the API have been made in order to match the API better to the idioms used by Java programmers. In order to understand the Java-API, it is useful to study the NeXus C-API because many methods work in the same way as their C equivalents. A full API documentation is available in Java documentation format. For full reference look especially at:

- The interface `NeXusFileInterface` first. It gives an uncluttered view of the API.
- The implementation `NexusFile` which gives more details about constructors and constants. However this documentation is interspersed with information about native methods which should not be called by an application programmer as they are not part of the standard and might change in future.

See the following code example for opening a file, opening a vGroup and closing the file again in order to get a feeling for the API:

### fragment for opening and closing

```
1 try{
2     NexusFile nf = new NexusFile(filename, NexusFile.NXACC_READ);
3     nf.opengroup("entry1", "NXentry");
4     nf.finalize();
5 }catch(NexusException ne) {
6     // Something was wrong!
7 }
```

Some notes on this little example:

- Each NeXus file is represented by a `NexusFile` object which is created through the constructor.
- The `NexusFile` object takes care of all file handles for you. So there is no need to pass in a handle anymore to each method as in the C language API.
- All error handling is done through the Java exception handling mechanism. This saves all the code checking return values in the C language API. Most API functions return void.

- Closing files is tricky. The Java garbage collector is supposed to call the finalize method for each object it decides to delete. In order to enable this mechanism, the `NXclose()` function was replaced by the `finalize()` method. In practice it seems not to be guaranteed that the garbage collector calls the `finalize()` method. It is safer to call `finalize()` yourself in order to properly close a file. Multiple calls to the `finalize()` method for the same object are safe and do no harm.

## Data Writing and Reading

Again a code sample which shows how this looks like:

### fragment for writing and reading

```
1  int iidata[][] = new iidata[10][20];
2  int iDim[] = new int[2];
3
4  // put some data into iidata.....
5
6  // write iidata
7  iDim[0] = 10;
8  iDim[1] = 20;
9  nf.makedata("idata",NexusFile.NX_INT32,2,iDim);
10 nf.opendata("idata");
11 nf.putdata(iidata);
12
13 // read iodata
14 nf.getdata(iodata);
```

The dataset is created as usual with `makedata()` and opened with `putdata()`. The trick is in `putdata()`. Java is meant to be type safe. One would think then that a `putdata()` method would be required for each Java data type. In order to avoid this, the data to `write()` is passed into `putdata()` as type `Object`. Then the API proceeds to analyze this object through the Java introspection API and convert the data to a byte stream for writing through the native method call. This is an elegant solution with one drawback: An array is needed at all times. Even if only a single data value is written (or read) an array of length one and an appropriate type is the required argument.

Another issue are strings. Strings are first class objects in Java. HDF (and NeXus) sees them as dumb arrays of bytes. Thus strings have to be converted to and from bytes when reading string data. See a writing example:

### String writing

```
1  String ame = "Alle meine Entchen";
2  nf.makedata("string_data",NexusFile.NX_CHAR,
3  1,ame.length()+2);
4  nf.opendata("string_data");
5  nf.putdata(ame.getBytes());
```

And reading:

## String reading

```

1  String ame = "Alle meine Entchen";
2  nf.makedata("string_data",NexusFile.NX_CHAR,
3      1,ame.length()+2);
4  nf.opendata("string_data");
5  nf.putdata(ame.getBytes());

```

The aforementioned holds for all strings written as SDS content or as an attribute. SDS or vGroup names do not need this treatment.

## Inquiry Routines

Let us compare the C-API and Java-API signatures of the `getinfo()` routine (C) or method (Java):

### C API signature of `getinfo()`

```

1  /* C -API */
2  NXstatus NXgetinfo(NXhandle handle, int *rank, int iDim[],
3  int *datatype);

```

### Java API signature of `getinfo()`

```

1  // Java
2  void getinfo(int iDim[], int args[]);

```

The problem is that Java passes arguments only by value, which means they cannot be modified by the method. Only array arguments can be modified. Thus `args` in the `getinfo()` method holds the rank and datatype information passed in separate items in the C-API version. For resolving which one is which, consult a debugger or the API-reference.

The attribute and vGroup search routines have been simplified using Hashtables. The Hashtable returned by `groupdir()` holds the name of the item as a key and the classname or the string SDS as the stored object for the key. Thus the code for a vGroup search looks like this:

## vGroup search

```

1  nf.opengroup(group,nxclass);
2  h = nf.groupdir();
3  e = h.keys();
4  System.out.println("Found in vGroup entry:");
5  while(e.hasMoreElements())
6  {
7      vname = (String)e.nextElement();
8      vclass = (String)h.get(vname);
9      System.out.println("    Item: " + vname + " class: " + vclass);
10 }

```

For an attribute search both at global or SDS level the returned Hashtable will hold the name as the key and a little class holding the type and size information as value. Thus an attribute search looks like this in the Java-API:

## attribute search

```
1  Hashtable h = nf.attrdir();
2  Enumeration e = h.keys();
3  while(e.hasMoreElements())
4  {
5      atname = (String)e.nextElement();
6      atten = (AttributeEntry)h.get(atname);
7      System.out.println("Found global attribute: " + atname +
8          " type: " + atten.type + " ,length: " + atten.length);
9 }
```

For more information about the usage of the API routines see the reference or the NeXus C-API reference pages. Another good source of information is the source code of the test program which exercises each API routine.

## Known Problems

These are a couple of known problems which you might run into:

**Memory** As the Java API for NeXus has to convert between native and Java number types a copy of the data must be made in the process. This means that if you want to read or write 200MB of data your memory requirement will be 400MB! This can be reduced by using multiple `getslab()`/`putslab()` to perform data transfers in smaller chunks.

**Java.lang.OutOfMemoryException** By default the Java runtime has a low default value for the maximum amount of memory it will use. This ceiling can be increased through the `-mxXXm` option to the Java runtime. An example: `java -mx512m ...` starts the Java runtime with a memory ceiling of 512MB.

**Maximum 8192 files open** The NeXus API for Java has a fixed buffer for file handles which allows only 8192 NeXus files to be open at the same time. If you ever hit this limit, increase the `MAXHANDLE` define in `native/handle.h` and recompile everything.

## On-line Documentation

The following documentation is browsable online:

1. [The API source code](#)
2. A verbose tutorial for the NeXus for Java API.
3. The API Reference.
4. Finally, the source code for the test driver for the API which also serves as a documented usage example.

## 4.3.5 NAPI IDL Interface

IDL is an interactive data evaluation environment developed by Research Systems - it is an interpreted language for data manipulation and visualization. The NeXus IDL bindings allow access to the NeXus API from within IDL - they are installed when NeXus is compiled from source after being configured with the following options:

```
configure \
    --with-idlroot=/path/to/idl/installation \
    --with-idldlm=/path/to/install/dlm/files/to
```

For further details see the README (<https://htmlpreview.github.com/?https://github.com/nexusformat/code/blob/master/bindings/idl/README.html>) for the NeXus IDL binding. The source code is stored at <https://github.com/nexusformat/code/tree/master/bindings/idl>

## 4.4 Utility API

The NeXus F90 Utility API provides a number of routines that combine the operations of various core API routines in order to simplify the reading and writing of NeXus files. At present, they are only available as a Fortran 90 module but a C version is in preparation.

The utility API comprises the following functional groups:

- Routines to read or write data.
- Routines to find whether or not groups, data, or attributes exist, and to find data with specific signal or axis attributes, i.e. to identify valid data or axes.
- Routines to open other groups to which NXdata items are linked, and to return again.

### line required for use with F90 API

Any program using the F90 Utility API needs to put the following line near the top of the program:

```
use NXUmodule
```

---

**Note:** Do not put USE statements for both NXmodule and NXUmodule. The former is included in the latter

---

#### 4.4.1 List of F90 Utility Routines

name	description
<b>Reading and Writing</b>	
NXUwriteglobals	Writes all the valid global attributes of a file.
NXUwritegroup	Opens a group (creating it if necessary).
NXUwritedata	Opens a data item (creating it if necessary) and writes data and its units.
NXUreaddata	Opens and reads a data item and its units.
NXUwritehistogram	Opens one dimensional data item (creating it if necessary) and writes histogram centers and their units.
NXUreadhistogram	Opens and reads a one dimensional data item and converts it to histogram bin boundaries.
NXUsetcompress	Defines the compression algorithm and minimum dataset size for subsequent write operations.
<b>Finding Groups, Data, and Attributes</b>	
NXUfindclass	Returns the name of a group of the specified class if it is contained within the currently open group.
NXUfinddata	Checks whether a data item of the specified name is contained within the currently open group.
NXUfindattr	Checks whether the currently open data item has the specified attribute.
NXUfindsignal	Searches the currently open group for a data item with the specified SIGNAL attribute.
NXUfindaxis	Searches the currently open group for a data item with the specified AXIS attribute.
<b>Finding Linked Groups</b>	
NXUfindlink	Finds another link to the specified NeXus data item and opens the group it is in.
NXUresumelink	Reopens the original group from which NXUfindlink was used.

Currently, the F90 utility API will only write character strings, 4-byte integers and reals, and 8-byte reals. It can read other integer sizes into four-byte integers, but does not differentiate between signed and unsigned integers.

## 4.5 Building Programs

The install kit provides a utility call `nxbuild` that can be used to build simple programs:

```
nxbuild -o test test.c
```

This script links in the various libraries for you and reading its contents would provide the necessary information for creating a separate Makefile. You can also use `nxbuild` with the example files in the NeXus distribution kit which are installed into `/usr/local/nexus/examples`

Note that the executable name is important in this case as the test program uses it internally to determine the `NXACC_CREATE*` argument to pass to `NXopen`.

### building and running a simple NeXus program

```
# builds HDF5 specific test
nxbuild -o napi_test-hdf5 napi_test.c

# runs the test
./napi_test-hdf5
```

NeXus is also set up for `pkg-config` so the build can be done as:

```
gcc `pkg-config --cflags` `pkg-config --libs` -o test test.c
```

## 4.6 Reporting Bugs in the NeXus API

If you encounter any bugs in the installation or running of the NeXus API, please report them online using our Issue Reporting system. (<https://www.nexusformat.org/IssueReporting.html>)



## **NEXUS COMMUNITY**

NeXus began as a group of scientists with the goal of defining a common data storage format to exchange experimental results and to exchange ideas about how to analyze them.

The NeXus Scientific Community provides the scientific data, advice, and continued involvement with the NeXus standard. NeXus provides a forum for the scientific community to exchange ideas in data storage.

The NeXus International Advisory Committee (NIAC) supervises the development and maintenance of the NeXus common data format for neutron, X-ray, and muon science through the NeXus class definitions and oversees the maintenance of the NeXus Application Programmer Interface (NAPI) as well as the technical infrastructure.

There are several mechanisms in place in order to coordinate the development of NeXus with the larger community.

### **5.1 NeXus Webpage**

First of all, there is the NeXus webpage, <https://www.nexusformat.org/>, which provides all kinds of information, including membership, minutes, and discussions from the meetings of the NIAC, Code Camps, and Tele Conferences, as well as some proposed designs for consideration by NeXus.

The webpage is kept with a number of other repositories in the `nexusformat.org` Github organisation <https://github.com/nexusformat/>. As for all of these repositories, pull requests to correct or improve the content or code are always welcome!

### **5.2 Contributed Definitions**

The community is encouraged to provide new definitions (*Base Class Definitions* or *Application Definitions*) for consideration in the NeXus standard. These community contributions will be entered in the *Contributed Definitions* and will be curated according to procedures set forth by the *NIAC: The NeXus International Advisory Committee*.

### **5.3 Other Ways NeXus Coordinates with the Scientific Community**

#### **5.3.1 NIAC: The NeXus International Advisory Committee**

The purpose of the NeXus International Advisory Committee (NIAC)<sup>1</sup> is to supervise the development and maintenance of the NeXus common data format for neutron, X-ray, and muon science. This purpose includes, but is not limited to, the following activities.

---

<sup>1</sup> For more details about the NIAC constitution, procedures, and meetings, refer to the NIAC web page: <https://www.nexusformat.org/NIAC.html>  
The members of the NIAC may be reached by email: [nexus-committee@nexusformat.org](mailto:nexus-committee@nexusformat.org)

1. To establish policies concerning the definition, use, and promotion of the NeXus format.
2. To ensure that the specification of the NeXus format is sufficiently complete and clear for its use in the exchange and archival of neutron, X-ray, and muon data.
3. To receive and examine all proposed amendments and extensions to the NeXus format. In particular, to ratify proposed instrument and group class definitions, to ensure that the data structures conform to the basic NeXus specification, and to ensure that the definitions of data items (fields) are clear and unambiguous and conform to accepted scientific usage.
4. To ensure that documentation of the NeXus format is sufficient, current, and available to potential users both on the internet and in other forms.
5. To coordinate the maintenance of the NeXus Application Programming Interface and to promote other software development that will benefit users of the NeXus format.
6. To coordinate with other organizations that maintain and develop related data formats to reach compatibility.

The committee will meet at least once every other calendar year according to the following plan:

- In years coinciding with the NOBUGS series of conferences (once every two years), members of the entire NIAC will meet as a satellite meeting to NOBUGS, along with interested members of the community.
- In intervening years, the executive officers of the NIAC will attend, along with interested members of the NIAC. This is intended to be a working meeting with a small group.

### **5.3.2 NeXus Mailing List**

We invite anyone who is associated with neutron and/or X-ray synchrotron science and who wishes to be involved in the development and testing of the NeXus format to subscribe to this list. It is for the free discussion of all aspects of the design and operation of the NeXus format.

- List Address: [nexus@nexusformat.org](mailto:nexus@nexusformat.org)
- Subscriptions: <http://lists.nexusformat.org/mailman/listinfo/nexus>
- Archive: <http://lists.nexusformat.org/pipermail/nexus>

### **5.3.3 NeXus International Advisory Committee (NIAC) Mailing List**

This list contains discussions of the *NIAC: The NeXus International Advisory Committee*, which oversees the development of the NeXus data format. Its members represent many of the major neutron and synchrotron scattering sources in the world. Membership and posting to this list are limited to the committee members, but the archives are public. General discussions should be held in the public mailing list.

- List Address: [nexus-committee@nexusformat.org](mailto:nexus-committee@nexusformat.org)
- Subscriptions: <http://lists.nexusformat.org/mailman/listinfo/nexus-committee>
- Archive: <http://lists.nexusformat.org/pipermail/nexus-committee>

### 5.3.4 NeXus Video Conference Announcements

There are video conferences on NeXus roughly twice a month. Agenda and joining details are posted on the webpage: <https://www.nexusformat.org/Teleconferences.html> In addition calendar invites are sent to this list. NeXus-Tech used to be used for discussions in the past. Now the list is moderated to only allow communication related to holding meetings. All other traffic should go to the main list [nexus@nexusformat.org](mailto:nexus@nexusformat.org)

- List Address: [nexus-tech@nexusformat.org](mailto:nexus-tech@nexusformat.org)
- Subscriptions: <http://lists.nexusformat.org/mailman/listinfo/nexus-tech>

### 5.3.5 NeXus Developers Mailing List (retired)

This mailing list was for discussions concerning the technical development of NeXus (the Definitions, NXDL, and the NeXus Application Program Interface). There was, however, much overlap with the general NeXus mailing list and so this separate list was closed in October 2012, but the archive of previous posting is still available.

- Archive: <http://lists.nexusformat.org/pipermail/nexus-developers>

### 5.3.6 NeXus Repositories

NeXus NXDL class definitions (both base classes and application definitions) and the NeXus code library source are held in a pair of git repositories on GitHub.

The repositories are world readable. You can browse them directly:

**NeXus code library and applications** <https://github.com/nexusformat/code>

**NeXus NXDL class definitions** <https://github.com/nexusformat/definitions>

**NeXus GitHub organization** <https://github.com/nexusformat>

If you would like to contribute (thank you!), the normal GitHub procedure of forking the repository and generating pull requests should be used.

Please report any problems via the *Issue Reporting* system.

### 5.3.7 NeXus Issue Reporting

NeXus is using GitHub (<https://github.com>) as source code repository and for problem reporting. The issue reports (see *View current issues* below) are used to guide the NeXus developers in resolving problems as well as implementing new features.

#### NeXus Code (NAPI, Library, and Applications)

**Report a new issue** <https://github.com/nexusformat/code/issues/new>

**View current issues** <https://github.com/nexusformat/code/issues>

**Timeline (recent ticket and code changes)** <https://github.com/nexusformat/code/pulse>

**NeXus Definitions (NXDL base classes and application definitions)**

**Report a new issue** <https://github.com/nexusformat/definitions/issues/new>

**View current issues** <https://github.com/nexusformat/definitions/issues>

**Timeline (recent ticket and definition changes)** <https://github.com/nexusformat/definitions/pulse>

## INSTALLATION

This section describes how to install the NeXus API and details the requirements. The NeXus API is distributed under the terms of the [GNU Lesser General Public License version 3](#).

The source distribution of NAPI can be downloaded from the [release page](#) of the associated GitHub project. Instructions how to build the code can be found in the *INSTALL.rst* file shipped with the source distribution. In case you need help, feel free to contact the NeXus mailing list: <http://lists.nexusformat.org/mailman/listinfo/nexus>

### 6.1 Precompiled Binary Installation

#### 6.1.1 Linux RPM Distribution Kits

An installation kit (source or binary) can be downloaded from: <https://github.com/nexusformat/code/releases/tag/4.3.0>

A NeXus binary RPM (nexus-\*.i386.rpm) contains ready compiled NeXus libraries whereas a source RPM (nexus-\*.src.rpm) needs to be compiled into a binary RPM before it can be installed. In general, a binary RPM is installed using the command

```
rpm -Uvh file.i386.rpm
```

or, to change installation location from the default (e.g. /usr/local) area, using

```
rpm -Uvh --prefix /alternative/directory file.i386.rpm
```

If the binary RPMS are not the correct architecture for you (e.g. you need x86\_64 rather than i386) or the binary RPM requires libraries (e.g. HDF4) that you do not have, you can instead rebuild a source RPM (.src.rpm) to generate the correct binary RPM for your machine. Download the source RPM file and then run

```
rpmbuild --rebuild file.src.rpm
```

This should generate a binary RPM file which you can install as above. Be careful if you think about specifying an alternative buildroot for rpmbuild by using --buildroot option as the “buildroot” directory tree will get removed (so --buildroot / is a really bad idea). Only change buildroot if the default area turns out not to be big enough to compile the package.

If you are using Fedora, then you can install all the dependencies by typing

```
yum install hdf hdf-devel hdf5 hdf5-devel mxml mxml-devel
```

## 6.1.2 Microsoft Windows Installation Kit

A Windows MSI based installation kit is available and can be downloaded from: <https://github.com/nexusformat/code/releases/tag/4.3.0>

## 6.1.3 Mac OS X Installation Kit

An installation disk image (.dmg) can be downloaded from: <https://github.com/nexusformat/code/releases/tag/4.3.0>

# 6.2 Source Installation

## 6.2.1 NeXus Source Code Distribution

The source code distribution can be obtained from GitHub. One can either checkout the git repositories to get access to the most recent development code. To clone the definitions repository use

```
$ git clone https://github.com/nexusformat/definitions.git definitions
```

or for the NAPI

```
$ git clone https://github.com/nexusformat/code.git code
```

For release tarballs go to the release page for the [NAPI](#) or the [definitions](#). For the definitions it is currently recommended to work directly with the Git repository as the actual release is rather outdated.

Instructions how to build the NAPI code can be found either on the GitHub project website or in the *README.rst* file shipped with the source distribution.

# 6.3 Releases

The NeXus definitions are expected to evolve. The evolution is marked as a series of *releases* which are snapshots of the repository (and current state of the NeXus standard). Each new *release* of the definitions will be posted to the definitions GitHub repository and announced to the community via the NeXus mailing list: [nexus@nexusformat.org](mailto:nexus@nexusformat.org)

## 6.3.1 NeXus definitions

Releases of the NeXus definitions are listed on the GitHub web site: <https://github.com/nexusformat/definitions/releases>

### Release Notes

Detailed notes about each release (start with v3.3) are posted to the definitions GitHub wiki: <https://github.com/nexusformat/definitions/wiki/Release-Notes>

## Release Process

The process to make a new release of the NeXus definitions repository is documented in the repository's GitHub wiki: <https://github.com/nexusformat/definitions/wiki/Release-Procedure>.

The release process starts by creating a GitHub [Milestone](<https://help.github.com/articles/tracking-the-progress-of-your-work-with-milestones/>) for the new release. Milestones for the NeXus definitions repository are available on the GitHub site: <https://github.com/nexusformat/definitions/milestones>

## Versioning (Tags)

Versioning of each of the NXDL files, as well as the complete set of NXDL files is now described in the wiki<sup>1</sup> of the NeXus definitions repository<sup>2</sup>. Please see that wiki for complete information.

---

In case you need help, feel free to contact the *NeXus Mailing List*:

**Archives** <http://lists.nexusformat.org/mailman/listinfo/nexus>

**email** [nexus@nexusformat.org](mailto:nexus@nexusformat.org)

---

<sup>1</sup> Release Procedure: <https://github.com/nexusformat/definitions/wiki/Release-Procedure>

<sup>2</sup> Definitions repository: <https://github.com/nexusformat/definitions>



## NEXUS UTILITIES

There are many utilities available to read, browse, write, and use NeXus data files. Some are provided by the NeXus technical group while others are provided by the community. Still, other tools listed here can read or write one of the low-level file formats used by NeXus (HDF5, HDF4, or XML).

### 7.1 Utilities supplied with NeXus

Most of these utility programs are run from the command line. It will be noted if a program provides a graphical user interface (GUI). Short descriptions are provided here with links to further information, as available.

**nxbrowse** NeXus Browser

**nxconvert** Utility to convert a NeXus file into HDF4/HDF5/XML/...

**nxdir** nxdir is a utility for querying a NeXus file about its contents. Full documentation can be found by running this command:

```
nxdir -h
```

**nxingest** nxingest extracts the metadata from a NeXus file to create an XML file according to a mapping file. The mapping file defines the structure (names and hierarchy) and content (from either the NeXus file, the mapping file or the current time) of the output file. See the man page for a description of the mapping file. This tool uses the NAPI. Thus, any of the supported formats (HDF4, HDF5 and XML) can be read.

**nxsummary** Use nxsummary to generate summary of a NeXus file. This program relies heavily on a configuration file. Each item tag in the file describes a node to print from the NeXus file. The path attribute describes where in the NeXus file to get information from. The label attribute will be printed when showing the value of the specified field. The optional operation attribute provides for certain operations to be performed on the data before printing out the result. See the source code documentation for more details.

**nxtranslate** nxtranslate is an anything to NeXus converter. This is accomplished by using translation files and a plugin style of architecture where nxtranslate can read from new formats as plugins become available. The documentation for nxtranslate describes its usage by three types of individuals:

- the person using existing translation files to create NeXus files
- the person creating translation files
- the person writing new *retrievers*

All of these concepts are discussed in detail in the documentation provided with the source code.

**NXplot** An extendable utility for plotting any NeXus file. NXplot is an Eclipse-based GUI project in Java to plot data in NeXus files. (The project was started at the first NeXus Code Camp in 2009.)

## 7.2 Validation

The list of applications below are for *validating* NeXus files. The list is not intended to be a complete list of all available packages.

**nxvalidate** From the source code documentation:

*"This is the first version of nxvalidate written in C. Its dependencies are libxml2 and the HDF5 libraries, version 1.8.9 or better. Its purpose is to validate HDF5 data files against NeXus application definitions."*

Note: this tool is lives in its own GitHub repository **cnxvalidate**: <https://github.com/nexusformat/cnxvalidate.git>

**punx** Python Utilities for NeXus HDF5 files

**punx** can validate both NXDL files and NeXus HDF5 data files, as well as print the structure of any HDF5 file, even non-NeXus files.

NOTE: project is under initial construction, not yet released for public use, but is useful in its present form (version 0.2.3).

**punx** can show the tree structure of any HDF5 file. The output is more concise than that from *h5dump*.

See the program documentation for more details: <https://punx.readthedocs.io>

## 7.3 Data Analysis

The list of applications below are some of the utilities that have been developed (or modified) to read/write NeXus files as a data format. It is not intended to be a complete list of all available packages.

**DAVE** (<http://www.ncnr.nist.gov/dave/>) DAVE is an integrated environment for the reduction, visualization and analysis of inelastic neutron scattering data. It is built using IDL (Interactive Data Language) from ITT Visual Information Solutions.

**DAWN** (<http://www.dawncsi.org>) The Data Analysis WorkbeNch (DAWN) project is an eclipse based workbench for doing scientific data analysis. It offers generic visualisation, and domain specific processing.

**GDA** (<http://www.opengda.org>) The GDA project is an open-source framework for creating customised data acquisition software for science facilities such as neutron and X-ray sources. It has elements of the DAWN analysis workbench built in.

**Gumtree** (<https://archive.ansto.gov.au/ResearchHub/OurInfrastructure/ACNS/Facilities/Computing/GumTree/index.htm>) Gumtree is an open source project, providing a graphical user interface for instrument status and control, data acquisition and data reduction.

**IDL** ([https://www.harrisgeospatial.com/docs/using\\_idl\\_home.html](https://www.harrisgeospatial.com/docs/using_idl_home.html)) IDL is a high-level technical computing language and interactive environment for algorithm development, data visualization, data analysis, and numeric computation.

**IgorPro** (<http://www.wavemetrics.com/>) IGOR Pro is an extraordinarily powerful and extensible scientific graphing, data analysis, image processing and programming software tool for scientists and engineers.

**ISAW** (<ftp://ftp.sns.gov/ISAW/>) The Integrated Spectral Analysis Workbench software project (ISAW) is a Platform-Independent system Data Reduction/Visualization. ISAW can be used to read, manipulate, view, and save neutron scattering data. It reads data from IPNS run files or NeXus files and can merge and sort data from separate measurements.

**LAMP** ([http://www.ill.eu/data\\_treat/lamp/](http://www.ill.eu/data_treat/lamp/)) LAMP (Large Array Manipulation Program) is designed for the treatment of data obtained from neutron scattering experiments at the Institut Laue-Langevin. However, LAMP is now a more general purpose application which can be seen as a GUI-laboratory for data analysis based on the IDL language.

**Mantid** (<http://www.mantidproject.org/>) The Mantid project provides a platform that supports high-performance computing on neutron and muon data. It is being developed as a collaboration between Rutherford Appleton Laboratory and Oak Ridge National Laboratory.

**MATLAB** (<http://www.mathworks.com/>) MATLAB is a high-level technical computing language and interactive environment for algorithm development, data visualization, data analysis, and numeric computation.

**NeXpy** (<http://nexpypy.github.io/nexpypy/>) The goal of NeXpy is to provide a simple graphical environment, coupled with Python scripting capabilities, for the analysis of X-Ray and neutron scattering data. (It was decided at the NIAC 2010 meeting that a large portion of this code would be adopted in the future by NeXus and be part of the distribution)

**OpenGENIE** (<http://www.opengenie.org/>) A general purpose data analysis and visualisation package primarily developed at the ISIS Facility, Rutherford Appleton Laboratory.

**PyMCA** (<http://pymca.sourceforge.net/>) PyMca is a ready-to-use, and in many aspects state-of-the-art, set of applications implementing most of the needs of X-ray fluorescence data analysis. It also provides a Python toolkit for visualization and analysis of energy-dispersive X-ray fluorescence data. Reads, browses, and plots data from NeXus HDF5 files.

**spec2nexus** (<https://spec2nexus.readthedocs.io>) (Python code) Converts SPEC data files and scans into NeXus HDF5 files. (Note the *h5toText* tool mentioned here previously is no longer available from the *spec2nexus* project. The code has been moved into the *punx* project: <https://punx.readthedocs.io/>.)

*spec2nexus* provides libraries:

- *spec2nexus.spec*: python binding to read SPEC<sup>1</sup> data files
- *spec2nexus.eznx*: (Easy NeXus) supports writing NeXus HDF5 files using h5py

## 7.4 HDF Tools

Here are some of the generic tools that are available to work with HDF files. In addition to the software listed here there are also APIs for many programming languages that will allow low level programmatic access to the data structures.

**HDF Group command line tools** ([http://www.hdfgroup.org/products/hdf5\\_tools/#h5dist](http://www.hdfgroup.org/products/hdf5_tools/#h5dist)) There are various command line tools that are available from the HDF Group, these are usually shipped with the HDF5 kits but are also available for download separately.

**HDFExplorer** (<http://www.space-research.org/>) A data visualization program that reads Hierarchical Data Format files (HDF, HDF-EOS and HDF5) and also netCDF data files.

**HDFview** (<http://www.hdfgroup.org>) A Java based GUI for browsing (and some basic plotting) of HDF files.

### 7.4.1 Language APIs

**h5py** (<http://docs.h5py.org/>) HDF5 for Python (h5py) is a general-purpose Python interface to HDF5.

---

<sup>1</sup> SPEC: <http://www.certif.com>



## BRIEF HISTORY OF NEXUS

Two things to note about the development and history of NeXus:

- All efforts on NeXus have been voluntary except for one year when we had one full-time worker.
- The NIAC has already discussed many matters related to the format.

**2018-05:**

- *release v2018.5 <[https://github.com/nexusformat/definitions/wiki/releasenotes\\_v2018.5](https://github.com/nexusformat/definitions/wiki/releasenotes_v2018.5)>* of NeXus Definitions
- #597 changed versioning scheme and procedures

**2017-07:** *release 3.3 <[https://github.com/nexusformat/definitions/wiki/releasenotes\\_v3.3](https://github.com/nexusformat/definitions/wiki/releasenotes_v3.3)>* of NeXus Definitions

**2016-10:** *release 3.2 <<https://github.com/nexusformat/definitions/releases/tag/v3.2>>* of NeXus Definitions

**2014-12:** The NIAC approves a new method to identify the default data to be plotted, applying attributes at the group level to the root of the HDF5 tree, and the NXentry and NXdata groups. See the description in [Associating plottable data using attributes applied to the NXdata group](#) and the proposal: [https://www.nexusformat.org/2014\\_How\\_to\\_find\\_default\\_data.html](https://www.nexusformat.org/2014_How_to_find_default_data.html)

**2012-05:** first release (3.1.0) of NXDL (NeXus Definition Language)

**2010-01:** NXDL presented to ESRF HDF5 workshop on hyperspectral data

**2009-09:** NXDL and draft NXsas (base class) presented to canSAS at SAS2009 conference

**2009-04:** NeXus API version 4.2.0 is released with additional C++, IDL, and python/numpy interfaces.

**2008-10:** *NXDL: The NeXus Definition Language* is defined. Until now, NeXus used another XML format, meta-DTD, for defining base classes and application definitions. There were several problems with meta-DTD, the biggest one being that it was not easy to validate against it. NXDL was designed to circumvent these problems. All current base classes and application definitions were ported into the NXDL.

**2007-10:** NeXus API version 4.1.0 is released with many bug-fixes.

**2007-05:** NeXus API version 4.0.0 is released with broader support for scripting languages and the feature to link with external files.

**2005-07:** The community asked the NeXus team to provide an ASCII based physical file format which allows them to edit their scientific results in emacs. This lead to the development of a XML NeXus physical format. This was released with NeXus API version 3.0.0.

**2003-10:** In 2003, NeXus had arrived at a stage where informal gatherings of a group of people were no longer good enough to oversee the development of NeXus. This lead to the formation of the NeXus International Advisory Committee (NIAC) which strives to include representatives of all major stake holders in NeXus. A first meeting was held at CalTech. Since 2003, the NIAC meets every year to discuss all matters NeXus.

**2003-06:** Przemek Klosowski, Ray Osborn, and Richard Riedel received the only known grant explicitly for working on NeXus from the Systems Integration for Manufacturing Applications (SIMA) program of the National Institute of Standards and Technology (NIST). The grant funded a person for one year to work on community wide infrastructure in NeXus.

**2002-09:** NeXus API version 2.0.0 is released. This version brought support for the new version of HDF, HDF5, released by the HDF group. HDF4 imposed limits on file sizes and the number of objects in a file. These issues were resolved with HDF5. The NeXus API abstracted the difference between the two physical file formats away from the user.

**2001-summer:** MLNSC at LANL started writing NeXus files to store raw data

**1997-07:** SINQ at PSI started writing NeXus files to store raw data.

**1996-10:** At *SoftNeSS 1996* (at ANL), after reviewing the different scientific data formats discussed, it was decided to use HDF4 as it provided the best grouping support. The basic structure of a NeXus file was agreed upon. the various data format proposals were combined into a single document by Przemek Klosowski (NIST), Mark Könnecke (then ISIS), Jonathan Tischler (ORNL and APS/ANL), and Ray Osborn (IPNS/ANL) coauthored the first proposal for the NeXus scientific data standard.<sup>1</sup>

**1996-08:** The HDF-4 API is quite complex. Thus a NeXus Abstract Programmer Interface NAPI was released which simplified reading and writing NeXus files.

**1995-09:** At *SoftNeSS 1995* (at NIST), three individual data format proposals by Przemek Klosowski (NIST), Mark Könnecke (then ISIS), and Jonathan Tischler (ORNL and APS/ANL) were joined to form the basis of the current NeXus format. At this workshop, the name *NeXus* was chosen.

**1994-10:** Ray Osborn convened a series of three workshops called *SoftNeSS*. In the first meeting, Mark Könnecke and Jon Tischler were invited to meet with representatives from all the major U.S. neutron scattering laboratories at Argonne National Laboratory to discuss future software development for the analysis and visualization of neutron data. One of the main recommendations of *SoftNeSS'94* was that a common data format should be developed.

**1994-08:** Jonathan Tischler (ORNL) proposed an HDF-based format<sup>2</sup> as a standard for data storage at APS

**1994-06:** Mark Könnecke (then ISIS, now PSI) made a proposal using netCDF<sup>3</sup> for the European neutron scattering community while working at ISIS

---

<sup>1</sup> [https://www.nexusformat.org/pdfs/NeXus\\_Proposal.pdf](https://www.nexusformat.org/pdfs/NeXus_Proposal.pdf)

<sup>2</sup> [https://www.nexusformat.org/pdfs/Proposed\\_Data\\_Standard\\_for\\_theAPS.pdf](https://www.nexusformat.org/pdfs/Proposed_Data_Standard_for_theAPS.pdf)

<sup>3</sup> <https://www.nexusformat.org/pdfs/European-Formats.pdf>

## ABOUT THESE DOCS

### 9.1 Authors

**Pete R. Jemian, Documentation Editor:** <jemian@anl.gov>, Advanced Photon Source, Argonne National Laboratory, Argonne, IL, USA,

**Frederick Akeroyd:** <freddie.akeroyd@stfc.ac.uk>, Rutherford Appleton Laboratory, Didcot, UK,

**Stuart I. Campbell:** <campbellsi@ornl.gov>, Oak Ridge National Laboratory, Oak Ridge, TN, USA,

**Przemek Klosowski:** <przemek.klosowski@nist.gov>, U. of Maryland and NIST, Gaithersburg, MD, USA,

**Mark Könnecke:** <Mark.Koennecke@psi.ch>, Paul Scherrer Institut, CH-5232 Villigen PSI, Switzerland,

**Ray Osborn:** <rosborn@anl.gov>, Argonne National Laboratory, Argonne, IL, USA,

**Peter F. Peterson:** <petersonpf@ornl.gov>, Spallation Neutron Source, Oak Ridge, TN, USA,

**Tobias Richter:** <Tobias.Richter@esss.se>, European Spallation Source, Lund, Sweden,

**Joachim Wuttke:** <j.wuttke@fz-juelich.de>, Forschungszentrum Jülich, Jülich Centre for Neutron Science at Heinz Maier-Leibnitz Zentrum Garching, Germany.

### 9.2 Colophon

These docs (manual and reference) were produced using Sphinx (<http://sphinx-doc.org>). The source for the manual shows many examples of the structures used to create the manual. If you have any questions about how to contribute to this manual, please contact the NeXus Documentation Editor (Pete Jemian <jemian@anl.gov>).

---

**Note:** The indentation is very important to the syntax of the restructured text manual source. Be careful not to mix tabs and spaces in the indentation or the manual may not build properly.

---

## 9.3 Revision History

Browse the most recent Issues on the GitHub repository: <https://github.com/nexusformat/definitions/pulse/monthly>

## 9.4 Copyright and Licenses

Published by NeXus International Advisory Committee, <https://www.nexusformat.org>

Copyright (C) 1996-2020 NeXus International Advisory Committee (NIAC)

The NeXus manual is licensed under the terms of the GNU Free Documentation License version 1.3.

**download** FDL

**GNU** <http://www.gnu.org/licenses/fdl-1.3.txt>

The code examples in the NeXus manual are licensed under the terms of the GNU Lesser General Public License version 3.

**download** LGPL

**GNU** <http://www.gnu.org/licenses/lgpl-3.0.txt>

---

### Publishing Information

This manual built Jan 23, 2020.

#### See also:

This document is available in these formats online:

**HTML** <https://manual.nexusformat.org/>

**PDF** <https://manual.nexusformat.org/pdf/NeXusManual.pdf>

A very brief overview (title: *NeXus for the Impatient*) is also available (separate from the manual).

**HTML** <https://manual.nexusformat.org/impatient/>

**PDF** <https://manual.nexusformat.org/pdf/NXImpatient.pdf>

# INDEX

\_mca1\_field, 339  
\_mca1\_channel\_field, 339  
\_mca\_field, 339  
\_mca\_channel\_field, 339  
  
absorbing\_materialfield, 163, 189  
absorption\_cross\_sectionfield, 157  
acceleration\_timefield, 212  
accepted\_photon\_beam\_divergencefield, 159  
accepting\_aperturefield, 161  
acquisition\_modefield, 175, 246  
addressfield, 239  
address, absolute, 19  
address, relative, 19  
aequatorial\_anglefield, 283–286  
affiliationfield, 239  
alphafield, 310  
anglesfield, 194, 247  
angular\_calibrationfield, 175, 273  
angular\_calibration\_appliedfield, 175, 273  
aperturebase class, *see* NXaperture, 156  
aperturefield, 241  
API, *see* NAPI  
application definition, 242  
archiveapplication definition, *see* NXarchive, 243  
arpesapplication definition, *see* NXarpes, 246  
attached\_tofield, 227  
attenuatorbase class, *see* NXattenuator, 156  
attenuator\_transmissionfield, 157, 272, 313  
attribute, *see* field attribute, *see* file attribute, *see* group attribute, 126, *see* NXDL attribute  
    HDF, 53  
        NXclass, 38  
attributeNXDL element, 129  
attributeTypeNXDL data type, 134  
authorfield, 205, 326, 331  
authors, 369  
automatic plotting, *see* plotting  
average\_valuefield, 200, 326, 330, 331  
average\_value\_errorfield, 200, 326, 330, 331  
axesattribute, 51, 168  
axesfield attribute, 170, 319  
axesfile attribute, 169  
  
axesgroup attribute, 178, 196, 319, 320, 338  
axis, 52  
axisfield attribute, 170, 172, 173  
AXISNAMEfield, 237  
AXISNAME\_endfield, 238  
AXISNAME\_increment\_setfield, 238  
AXISNAME\_indicesfile attribute, 169  
AXISNAME\_indicesgroup attribute, 338  
azimuthhalfield, 288  
azimuthal\_anglefield, 166, 173, 219, 269, 283, 285, 295, 297, 299, 327, 332  
azimuthal\_widthfield, 288  
  
background\_meanfield, 218  
bandwidthfield, 197  
base class, 154  
basicComponentNXDL data type, 149  
beambase class, *see* NXbeam, 157  
beam\_center\_xfield, 175, 259, 273, 283, 285, 313, 319  
beam\_center\_yfield, 175, 259, 273, 283, 285, 313, 320  
beam\_positionfield, 182  
beam\_shapefield, 261  
beam\_size\_xfield, 261  
beam\_size\_yfield, 261  
beam\_stopbase class, *see* NXbeam\_stop, 158  
beamlinefield, 327, 332  
beamline\_distancefield, 321, 322, 324, 335, 341  
bend\_angle\_xfield, 195, 201  
bend\_angle\_yfield, 195, 201  
bending\_magnetbase class, *see* NXbending\_magnet, 159  
bending\_radiusfield, 159  
bibtexfield, 161  
binary data, 43, *see* NX\_BINARY  
binary executable, *see* NAPI installation  
bit\_depth\_readoutfield, 176, 275  
blade\_spacingfield, 163  
blade\_thicknessfield, 162  
bounding\_boxfield, 218  
bragg\_anglefield, 166  
browser, 15, 363  
bunch\_distancefield, 233  
bunch\_lengthfield, 233

calib\_afield, 340  
calib\_bfield, 340  
calib\_cfield, 340  
calibration\_datefield, 175  
canSAS, 248  
canSASApplication definition, *see* NXcanSAS, 247  
canSAS\_classgroup attribute, 250, 251, 258–263  
capillarybase class, *see* NXcapillary, 160  
categoryNXDL attribute, 64  
central\_stop\_diameterfield, 192  
central\_stop\_materialfield, 192  
central\_stop\_thicknessfield, 192  
changer\_positionfield, 222, 329, 334  
check\_sumfield attribute, 172  
chemical\_formulafield, 164, 190, 221, 225, 245, 316  
chifield, 309  
choice, 127  
choiceNXDL element, 129  
choiceTypeNXDL data type, 146  
CIF, 26  
citebase class, *see* NXcite, 161  
class definitions, 153, *see* base class, *see* application definition, *see* contributed definition  
coating\_materialfield, 191, 194, 196, 201  
coating\_roughnessfield, 191, 194, 196, 201  
collectionbase class, *see* NXcollection, 161  
collection\_descriptionfield, 184, 234, 244  
collection\_identifierfield, 184, 234, 244, 325, 330  
collection\_timefield, 185, 235, 244  
collection\_titlefield, 325, 330  
collimatorbase class, *see* NXcollimator, 162  
commandfield, 337  
command1field, 326, 331  
commentfield attribute, 185, 235  
commentgroup attribute, 339, 341  
commentsfield, 337  
community, 355  
comp\_currentfield, 192  
comp\_turnsfield, 191  
componentfield, 223  
component\_indexfield, 193  
compositionfield, 211  
concentrationfield, 223  
configurationfield attribute, 185, 235  
constitution, 73, 355  
containercontributed definition, *see* NXcontainer, 314  
contribute, 73  
contributed definition, 314, 355  
controller\_recordfield, 212  
conversion, 363  
coordinate systems, 29  
    CIF, 29  
    IUCr, 24  
    McStas, 24, 29  
NeXus, 23  
NeXus polar coordinate, 29  
spherical polar, 30  
transformations, 24  
copyright, 370  
count\_timefield, 175, 204, 273, 338  
countrate\_correction\_appliedfield, 176  
countrate\_correction\_appliedfield, 274  
coupledfield, 202  
coupling\_materialfield, 202, 328, 333  
cratefield, 174  
creatorfile attribute, 220  
critical\_energyfield, 159  
crystalbase class, *see* NXcrystal, 163  
csgcontributed definition, *see* NXcsg, 317  
cue\_indexfield, 188, 200  
cue\_timestamp\_zerofield, 188, 200  
currentfield, 232  
curvaturefield, 241  
curvature\_horizontalfield, 166  
curvature\_verticalfield, 166  
cut\_anglefield, 164  
cxx\_ptychocontributed definition, *see* NXcxx\_ptycho, 318  
cylindersfield, 167  
cylindricalfield, 241  
cylindrical\_geometrybase class, *see* NXcylindrical\_geometry, 166  
cylindrical\_orientation\_anglefield, 166  
dfield, 215  
d\_spacingfield, 165  
data  
    multi-dimensional, 48  
database class, *see* NXdata, 167  
DATAfield, 170  
datafield, 172, 196, 204, 205, 246, 265, 266, 268–270, 273, 279–281, 283, 285–288, 290–302, 304–307, 311, 319, 320, 329, 332, 334, 338  
data analysis software, 363  
data field, *see* field  
data group, *see* group  
data item, *see* field  
data object, *see* field  
data set, *see* field  
data type, 151  
data\_errorfield, 172  
data\_originfield, 180, 276  
data\_sizefield, 180, 276  
data\_stridefield, 276  
data\_x\_time\_of\_flightfield, 332  
data\_x\_yfield, 327, 332  
data\_y\_time\_of\_flightfield, 332  
dataset, *see* field  
datefield, 205, 212, 262, 303, 306, 326, 331, 337

date and time, 43  
DAVEdata analysis software, 364  
DAWNdata analysis software, 364  
dead\_timefield, 174, 273  
defaultfile attribute, 183, 220, 234, 336  
defaultgroup attribute, 250, 336  
default plot, *see* plotting  
definitionfield, 184, 213, 235, 244, 246, 250, 264–268, 270, 272, 279, 280, 282, 284, 287–289, 291, 293, 295, 296, 298, 300, 301, 303, 304, 306, 307, 309–313, 318, 325, 330, 336  
definitionNXDL data type, 137  
definitionNXDL element, 64, 130  
definition\_localfield, 184, 235  
definitionTypeNXDL data type, 137  
definitionTypeAttrNXDL data type, 139  
deflection\_anglefield, 194  
DEGC\_SPfield, 337  
delayfield, 183  
densityfield, 165, 189, 222, 226, 316  
depends\_onfield attribute, 25  
depends\_onfield attribute, 180, 181, 238, 276, 277  
depends\_onfield, 210, 230, 273, 277, 323  
deprecated, 184, 193  
depthfield, 194  
descriptionfield attribute, 213–219, 321, 322, 340  
descriptionfield, 156, 159, 161, 174, 186, 189, 193, 195, 200, 201, 205, 211, 223, 226, 244, 245, 262, 273, 316, 321–324, 326, 328–334, 341  
descriptiongroup attribute, 213, 337–341  
design principles, 4  
det\_modulefield, 214  
detailsfield, 261  
detection\_gas\_pathfield, 174  
detectorbase class, *see* NXdetector, 171  
detector\_facesfield, 207  
detector\_groupbase class, *see* NXdetector\_group, 179  
detector\_modulebase class, *see* NXdetector\_module, 179  
detector\_numberfield, 167, 172, 295, 297  
detector\_readout\_timefield, 176, 275  
diameterfield, 175, 210, 312  
dictionary of terms, 13  
diffraction\_orderfield, 194  
dimNXDL element, 64  
dimension  
  dimension scales, 53  
dimension, 18, 48  
  dimension scales, 49, 51, 52  
  fastest varying, 40, 52, 181  
  slowest varying, 40, 181  
  storage order, 40  
dimension scale, 22, 47  
dimensionsNXDL element, 64, 130  
dimensionsTypeNXDL data type, 139  
direction, *see* vector (field attribute)  
directionfield attribute, 221  
directionfield, 230  
directctofapplication definition, *see* NXdirectctof, 264  
disk\_chopperbase class, *see* NXdisk\_chopper, 181  
distancefield, 156, 157, 173, 183, 188, 202, 203, 224, 231, 259, 267, 269, 273, 281, 283, 285, 288, 295–300, 302, 307, 308, 319, 327–329, 332–334  
distance\_to\_detectorfield, 159  
distancesfield, 239  
distributionfield attribute, 170  
divergence\_xfield, 162  
divergence\_x\_minusfield, 160  
divergence\_x\_plusfield, 160  
divergence\_yfield, 162  
divergence\_y\_minusfield, 160  
divergence\_y\_plusfield, 160  
docNXDL element, 64, 131  
docTypeNXDL data type, 141  
documentation editor, 369  
doifield, 161  
download location, *see* NAPI installation  
dQlfield, 257  
dQwfield, 256  
durationfield, 184, 200, 235, 244, 296, 298, 325, 326, 330, 331  
duty\_cyclefield, 194  
effield, 293  
efficiencyfield, 178, 204, 211  
eifield, 293  
elapsed\_live\_timefield, 340  
elapsed\_real\_timefield, 340  
electric\_fieldfield, 221, 245  
electrostatic\_kickercontributed definition, *see* NXelectrostatic\_kicker, 320  
emailfield, 239  
emittance\_xfield, 232  
emittance\_yfield, 232  
enfield, 290, 294  
end\_timefield, 184, 203, 235, 244, 272, 279, 280, 282, 287, 291, 300, 301, 318, 325, 330  
endnotefield, 161  
energiesfield, 247  
energyfield, 189, 197, 204, 232, 246, 265, 266, 288, 291, 292, 305, 306, 318, 319  
energy\_errorfield, 205  
energy\_transferfield, 158  
enteringfield, 214  
entrance\_slit\_settingfield, 247  
entrance\_slit\_shapefield, 247  
entrance\_slit\_sizefield, 247  
entrybase class, *see* NXentry, 183  
entrygroup attribute, 246, 267, 282, 284, 289, 304, 306

entry\_identifierfield, 184, 235, 244, 325, 330  
enumeration, 44  
enumerationNXDL element, 131  
enumerationTypeNXDL data type, 142  
environmentbase class, *see* NXenvironment, 186  
EPICS  
    examples, 103  
errorfield, 288  
errorsfield, 171  
eulerian cradle, 25, 243, 309  
even\_layer\_densityfield, 201  
even\_layer\_materialfield, 201  
event\_database class, *see* NXevent\_data, 187  
event\_idfield, 187  
event\_indexfield, 187, 327  
event\_pixel\_idfield, 327  
event\_time\_of\_flightfield, 327  
event\_time\_offsetfield, 187  
event\_time\_zerofield, 187  
examples  
    NeXus file, 4  
    NeXus file; minimal, 6  
experiment\_descriptionfield, 184, 234, 243  
experiment\_identifierfield, 184, 234, 243, 325, 330  
experimentsfield, 213  
extendsNXDL attribute, 64  
extentfield, 158, 319  
external\_DACfield, 224  
external\_field\_brieffield, 228  
external\_materialfield, 195, 201  
  
fabricationfield, 192  
facesfield, 206  
facility\_user\_idfield, 240, 244, 329, 334  
FAQ, 72  
fast\_pixel\_directionfield, 180, 276  
fax\_numberfield, 239  
FDL, 370  
featuresfield, 184  
fermi\_chopperbase class, *see* NXfermi\_chopper, 188  
field, 4, 17  
    HDF, 53  
fieldNXDL element, 64, 132  
field attribute, 4, 14, 18  
fieldTypeNXDL data type, 142  
file  
    read and write, 13  
    validate, 364  
file attribute, 18  
file format, 53  
    HDF, 53  
file\_namefield, 205  
file\_namefile attribute, 219  
file\_timefile attribute, 219  
  
file\_update\_timefile attribute, 219  
filenamesfield, 268, 289  
filterbase class, *see* NXfilter, 189  
final\_beam\_divergencefield, 158  
final\_energyfield, 157  
final\_polarizationfield, 158  
final\_wavelengthfield, 158  
final\_wavelength\_spreadfield, 158  
first\_channelfield attribute, 340  
first\_goodfield attribute, 170  
first\_savedfield, 340  
fixed\_energyfield, 288  
flagsfield, 214  
flatfieldfield, 176, 274  
flatfield\_appliedfield, 175, 273  
flatfield\_errorfield, 176, 274  
flexible name, 126  
flip\_currentfield, 191  
flip\_turnsfield, 191  
flipperbase class, *see* NXflipper, 191  
floating-point numbers, 43  
fluoapplication definition, *see* NXfluo, 265  
fluxfield, 158, 232, 278  
focal\_sizefield, 161  
focus\_parametersfield, 192  
focus\_typefield, 241  
folder, *see* group  
format unification, 12  
four-circle diffractometer, 25, 35, 243, 309  
frame\_start\_numberfield, 175, 307  
frame\_timefield, 177, 275  
frequencyfield attribute, 172  
frequencyfield, 162, 232, 327, 332  
fresnel\_zone\_platebase class, *see* NXfresnel\_zone\_plate, 192  
  
G0field, 339  
G1field, 339  
G2field, 340  
G4field, 340  
gain\_settingfield, 177, 275  
gapfield, 197  
gasfield, 242  
gas\_pressurefield, 174, 242  
GDAdata acquisition software, 364  
geometry, 24, 29, 30  
geometrybase class, *see* NXgeometry, 193  
geometryfield, 317  
git, 357  
gratingbase class, *see* NXgrating, 193  
group, 4, 17  
    HDF, 53  
groupNXDL element, 64, 132  
group attribute, 4, 18

group\_indexfield, 179, 272  
 group\_namesfield, 179, 272  
 group\_parentfield, 179, 273  
 group\_typefield, 179  
 groupTypeNXDL data type, 146  
 guidebase class, *see* NXguide, 195  
 guide\_currentfield, 192  
 guide\_turnsfield, 191  
 Gumtreedata analysis software, 364  
  
 hfield, 213  
 h5py, 81, 82  
 h5py\_versionfile attribute, 220, 336  
 harmonicfield, 197  
 HDF  
     file format, 53  
     tools, 365  
 HDF4, 368  
 HDF5, 368  
     examples, 77  
 HDF5\_Versionfile attribute, 220, 336  
 HDF\_versionfile attribute, 220  
 HDFExplorer, 365  
 HDFview, 365  
 heightfield, 188, 240  
 hierarchy, 4, 17, 31, 33, 60, 61, 68, 363  
 high\_trip\_valuefield, 228  
 holderfield, 329, 334  
  
 Ifield, 254  
 I\_axesgroup attribute, 251  
 idfield, 213  
 identifierfield, 329, 334  
 Idevfield, 255  
 IDF\_Versionfile attribute, 183, 234  
 IDLdata analysis software, 364  
 IGOR Prodata analysis software, 364  
 image\_keyfield, 300  
 images, 43  
 incident\_anglefield, 195, 201  
 incident\_beam\_divergencefield, 158, 319  
 incident\_beam\_energyfield, 319  
 incident\_beam\_sizefield, 278  
 incident\_energyfield, 157  
 incident\_energy\_spreadfield, 319  
 incident\_polarisation\_stokesfield, 278  
 incident\_polarizationfield, 158  
 incident\_wavelengthfield, 158, 261, 277  
 incident\_wavelength\_spreadfield, 158, 261, 278  
 incident\_wavelength\_weightfield, 278  
 indexgroup attribute, 243  
 indexNXDL attribute, 64  
 indirecttofapplication definition, *see* NXindirecttof, 266  
 ingestion, 363  
  
 inputfield, 174  
 insertion\_devicebase class, *see* NXinsertion\_device, 196  
 inspection, 363  
 installation, *see* NAPI installation  
 instrumentbase class, *see* NXinstrument, 197  
 instrument definitions, 8  
 int\_prffield, 218  
 int\_prf\_varfield, 218  
 int\_sumfield, 218  
 int\_sum\_varfield, 218  
 integers, 43  
 integralfield, 203, 271, 281, 284, 302, 308  
 integral\_countsfield, 297  
 intensity\_factorfield, 339  
 interior\_atmospherefield, 194, 195, 201  
 interpretationfield attribute, 319  
 introduction, 3  
 iqprocapplication definition, *see* NXiqproc, 267  
 is\_cylindricalfield, 166  
 ISAWdata analysis software, 364  
 ISO8601data type, 151  
 issue reporting, 357  
  
 kfield, 197, 213  
 Könnecke, Mark, 12, 368  
 kappafield, 310  
 ki\_over\_kf\_scalingfield, 288  
 Kłosowski, Przemysław, 12, 368  
  
 lfield, 213  
 lambdafield, 263  
 LAMPdata analysis software, 364  
 last\_channelfield attribute, 340  
 last\_fillfield, 233  
 last\_goodfield attribute, 170  
 last\_savedfield, 340  
 lauetofapplication definition, *see* NXlauetof, 268  
 layer\_thicknessfield, 194, 201  
 layoutfield, 175  
 lengthfield, 197, 240, 258  
 lens\_geometryfield, 241  
 lens\_lengthfield, 241  
 lens\_materialfield, 242  
 lens\_modefield, 246  
 lens\_thicknessfield, 241  
 lexicography, 13  
 LGPL, 370  
 license, 370  
 link, 4, 19, 49, 74, 153, 168  
     external file, 20, 21  
 linkNXDL element, 134  
 link target, 134  
 link targetinternal attribute, 19  
 link, target, attribute, 19

linkTypeNXDL data type, 148  
local\_namefield attribute, 174  
local\_namefield, 174  
logbase class, *see* NXlog, 199  
long\_namefield attribute, 170–173  
low\_trip\_valuefield, 228  
low-level file format, *see* file format  
lpfield, 218  
  
m\_valuefield, 190, 195, 201  
Mac OS X, *see* NAPI installation  
magnetic\_fieldfield, 159, 221, 245  
magnetic\_kicker contributed definition, *see* NXmagnetic\_kicker, 321  
magnetic\_wavelengthfield, 197  
mailing lists, 356  
Mantiddata analysis software, 365  
manual source, 369  
manufacturerfield, 160  
maskgroup attribute, 251  
Mask\_indicesgroup attribute, 251  
mask\_materialfield, 192  
mask\_thicknessfield, 192  
massfield, 222, 226  
materialfield, 156  
MATLAB, 365  
    examples, 96  
maximum\_incident\_anglefield, 161  
maximum\_valuefield, 200, 326, 330, 331  
McStas, 29, 30  
measurementfield, 227  
metadata, 23, 60, 61, 67, 72, 128  
Microsoft Windows, *see* NAPI installation  
mime\_typegroup attribute, 236  
minimum\_valuefield, 200, 326, 331  
mirrorbase class, *see* NXmirror, 200  
modefield, 203, 233, 266, 269, 271, 280, 281, 284, 286,  
    294, 296, 297, 299, 305, 308, 329, 334, 337  
modelfield, 227  
moderatorbase class, *see* NXmoderator, 202  
module\_offsetfield, 180, 276  
monitor, 44  
monitorbase class, *see* NXmonitor, 203  
monochromatorbase class, *see* NXmonochromator, 204  
monopdapplication definition, *see* NXmonopd, 269  
mosaic\_horizontalfield, 166  
mosaic\_verticalfield, 166  
motivation, 3, *see* dictionary of terms, *see* exchange format, *see* format unification, *see* plotting, 11, 22  
multi-dimensional data, 48  
multi-modal data, 153  
mxapplication definition, *see* NXmx, 271  
  
namefield attribute, 250  
  
namefield, 186, 198, 211, 221, 225, 227, 231, 239, 244–  
    247, 259, 261, 262, 265–267, 269, 270, 272,  
    277–286, 288, 289, 291, 293, 295, 297–300,  
    302, 303, 305–307, 316, 318, 320, 327, 329,  
    332, 334  
namegroup attribute, 263  
nameNXDL attribute, 64  
naming convention, 38  
NAPI, 4, 13, 13, 74, 342, 363, 368  
    bypassing, 53  
    c, 344  
    c++, 344  
    core, 343  
    examples, 116  
    f77, 344  
    f90, 344  
    IDL, 350  
    installation, 358  
    installation; download location, 359  
    installation; Mac OS X, 360  
    installation; RPM, 359  
    installation; source distribution, 360  
    installation; Windows, 360  
    java, 345  
naturefield, 297, 299, 329, 334  
ndattribute, 107  
Nelson, Mitchell, 12  
NeXpy, 7, 91  
NeXpydata analysis software, 365  
NeXus Application Programming Interface, *see* NAPI  
NeXus Definition Language, *see* NXDL  
NeXus International Advisory Committee, *see* NIAC  
NeXus link, 19, 19, 21  
NeXus webpage, 355  
NeXus\_versionfile attribute, 220  
NIAC, 10, 355, 355, 367  
nominalfield, 203  
nonNegativeUnboundedNXDL data type, 151  
notebase class, *see* NXnote, 205  
notesfield, 325, 330  
numfield, 240  
numberfield, 188  
number\_of\_bunchesfield, 233  
number\_of\_cyclesfield, 177  
number\_of\_lensesfield, 242  
number\_savedfield, 340  
number\_sectionsfield, 196  
numbers, *see* floating-point numbers, *see* integers  
NX  
    used as NX class prefix, 21, 38  
NX\_ANGLEunits type, 152  
NX\_ANYunits type, 152  
NX\_AREAunits type, 152  
NX\_BINARYdata type, 151

NX\_BOOLEANdata type, 151  
 NX\_CHARdata type, 151  
 NX\_CHARGEunits type, 152  
 NX\_classfile attribute, 219  
 NX\_CROSS\_SECTIONunits type, 152  
 NX\_CURRENTunits type, 152  
 NX\_DATE\_TIMEdata type, 151  
 NX\_DIMENSIONLESSunits type, 152  
 NX\_EMITTANCEunits type, 152  
 NX\_ENERGYunits type, 152  
 NX\_FLOATdata type, 151  
 NX\_FLUXunits type, 152  
 NX\_FREQUENCYunits type, 152  
 NX\_INTdata type, 151  
 NX\_LENGTHunits type, 152  
 NX\_MASSunits type, 152  
 NX\_MASS\_DENSITYunits type, 152  
 NX molecuLAR\_WEIGHTunits type, 152  
 NX\_NUMBERdata type, 151  
 NX\_PER\_AREAunits type, 152  
 NX\_PER\_LENGTHunits type, 152  
 NX\_PERIODunits type, 152  
 NX\_POSINTdata type, 151  
 NX\_POWERunits type, 152  
 NX\_PRESSUREunits type, 152  
 NX\_PULSESunits type, 152  
 NX\_SCATTERING\_LENGTH\_DENSITYunits type, 152  
 NX\_SOLID\_ANGLEunits type, 152  
 NX\_TEMPERATUREunits type, 152  
 NX\_TIMEunits type, 152  
 NX\_TIME\_OF\_FLIGHTunits type, 152  
 NX\_TRANSFORMATIONunits type, 152  
 NX\_UINTdata type, 151  
 NX\_UNITLESSunits type, 153  
 NX\_VOLTAGEunits type, 153  
 NX\_VOLUMEunits type, 153  
 NX\_WAVELENGTHunits type, 153  
 NX\_WAVENUMBERunits type, 153  
 NXaperturebase class, 156  
     used in application definition, 249  
     used in base class, 198  
     used in contributed definition, 325, 330  
 NXarchiveapplication definition, 243  
 NXarpesapplication definition, 246  
 NXattenuatorbase class, 156  
     used in application definition, 271, 313  
     used in base class, 198  
     used in contributed definition, 325, 330  
 NXbeambase class, 157  
     used in application definition, 271  
     used in base class, 198, 221  
     used in contributed definition, 316, 318  
 NXbeam\_stopbase class, 158  
     used in base class, 198  
     used in contributed definition, 325, 330  
 NXbending\_magnetbase class, 159  
     used in base class, 198  
 nxbrowse, 15  
 nxbrowseutility, 363  
 NXcanSASapplication definition, 247  
 NXcanSASapplications  
     dQI, 257  
     dQw, 256  
     I, 254  
     Idev, 256  
     Q, 252  
     Qdev, 256  
     resolutions, 253  
     SASaperture, 258  
     SAScollimation, 258  
     SASdata, 251  
     SASdetector, 259  
     SASentry, 249  
     SASinstrument, 258  
     SASnote, 263  
     SASprocess, 262  
     SASprocessnote, 263  
     SASsample, 261  
     SASsource, 260  
     SAStransmission\_spectrum, 263  
     Tdev, 264  
 NXcapillarybase class, 160  
     used in base class, 198  
 NXcitebase class, 161  
 NXclassattribute, 38  
 NXcollectionbase class, 161  
     used in application definition, 249, 271, 287  
     used in base class, 172, 183, 198, 234  
     used in contributed definition, 318, 325, 330  
 NXcollimatorbase class, 162  
     used in application definition, 249, 282, 284  
     used in base class, 198  
 NXcontainercontributed definition, 314  
 nxconvertutility, 363  
 NXcrystalbase class, 163  
     used in application definition, 270, 293  
     used in base class, 198, 204  
     used in contributed definition, 325, 330, 336  
 NXcsgbase class  
     used in contributed definition, 317, 335  
 NXcsgcontributed definition, 317  
 NXcxi\_ptyocontributed definition, 318  
 NXcylindrical\_geometrybase class, 166  
     used in base class, 172  
 NXdatabase class, 5, 52, 167  
     plotting, 4  
     used in application definition, 246, 249, 265, 267,  
         268, 270, 271, 279, 280, 282, 284, 287, 289,

290, 293, 295, 296, 298, 300, 301, 303, 304, 306, 307, 309–313  
used in base class, 157, 159, 160, 163, 172, 183, 189, 194, 195, 197, 201, 202, 204, 221, 225, 231, 234  
used in contributed definition, 318, 325, 330, 336

NXdetectorbase class, 171  
plotting, 4  
used in application definition, 246, 249, 265, 268, 270, 271, 279, 280, 282, 284, 287, 290, 293, 295, 296, 298, 300, 301, 304, 307, 309–313  
used in base class, 198  
used in contributed definition, 318, 325, 330

NXdetector\_groupbase class, 179  
used in application definition, 271  
used in base class, 198

NXdetector\_modulebase class, 179  
used in application definition, 271  
used in base class, 172

nxdirutility, 363

NXdirecttoapplication definition, 264

NXdisk\_chopperbase class, 181  
used in application definition, 264, 280  
used in base class, 198  
used in contributed definition, 325, 330

NXDL, 21, 73, 125, 128, 128

NXDL elements, 129

NXDL template file, 64

NXelectrostatic\_kickercontributed definition, 320

NXentrybase class, 5, 183  
used in application definition, 243, 246, 249, 264–268, 270, 271, 279, 280, 282, 284, 287, 289, 290, 293, 295, 296, 298, 300, 301, 303, 304, 306, 307, 309–313  
used in base class, 213, 219  
used in contributed definition, 318, 325, 330, 336

NXenvironmentbase class, 186  
used in base class, 221

NXevent\_database class, 187  
used in base class, 198  
used in contributed definition, 325

NXfermi\_chopperbase class, 188  
used in application definition, 264, 287  
used in base class, 198  
used in contributed definition, 330

NXfilterbase class, 189  
used in base class, 198

NXflipperbase class, 191  
used in base class, 198

NXfluoapplication definition, 265

NXfresnel\_zone\_platebase class, 192

NXgeometrybase class, 193  
used in application definition, 282, 284  
used in base class, 156, 159, 162, 163, 172, 182, 186, 188, 189, 195, 197, 201–204, 207, 221, 227, 231, 239, 240  
used in contributed definition, 325, 330

NXgratingbase class, 193  
used in base class, 204

NXguidebase class, 195  
used in base class, 198

NXindirecttoapplication definition, 266

nxitgestutility, 363

NXinsertion\_devicebase class, 196  
used in base class, 198

NXinstrumentbase class, 5, 197  
used in application definition, 243, 246, 249, 264–268, 270, 271, 279, 280, 282, 284, 287, 289, 290, 293, 295, 296, 298, 300, 301, 303, 304, 307, 309–313  
used in base class, 183, 234  
used in contributed definition, 318, 325, 330, 336

NXiqprocapplication definition, 267

NXLauetofapplication definition, 268

NXlogbase class, 199  
used in base class, 162, 163, 189, 202, 203, 221, 227  
used in contributed definition, 321–325, 330, 334, 341

NXMagnetic\_kickercontributed definition, 321

NXmirrorbase class, 200  
used in base class, 198

NXmoderatorbase class, 202  
used in base class, 198  
used in contributed definition, 325, 330

NXmonitorbase class, 203  
plotting, 4  
used in application definition, 265, 268, 270, 279, 280, 282, 284, 287, 290, 293, 295, 296, 298, 300, 301, 304, 307  
used in base class, 183, 234  
used in contributed definition, 318, 325, 330, 336

NXmonochromatorbase class, 204  
used in application definition, 246, 265, 266, 279, 282, 290, 304, 307  
used in base class, 198

NXmonopdapplication definition, 269

NXmxapplication definition, 271

NXnotebase class, 205  
used in application definition, 249  
used in base class, 156, 172, 183, 186, 212, 231, 234, 241  
used in contributed definition, 325, 330, 336

NXObjectbase class, 206

NXoff\_geometrybase class, 206  
used in base class, 172  
used in contributed definition, 335

NXorientationbase class, 207  
used in base class, 193, 227

used in contributed definition, 325, 330

**NXparametersbase class, 207**  
used in application definition, 267, 289, 303, 306  
used in base class, 183, 234

**NXpdibase class, 208**

**NXpinholebase class, 210**

**NXplotutility, 363**

**NXpolarizerbase class, 210**  
used in base class, 198  
used in contributed definition, 325, 330

**NXpositionerbase class, 211**  
used in base class, 198, 221  
used in contributed definition, 325, 330

**NXprocess, 68**

**NXprocessbase class, 212**  
used in application definition, 249, 267, 289, 303, 306  
used in base class, 183, 234

**NXquadricbase class**  
used in contributed definition, 335

**NXquadriccontributed definition, 322**

**NXquadrupole\_magnetcontributed definition, 323**

**NXreflectionsbase class, 213**

**NXrefscanapplication definition, 279**

**NXreftofapplication definition, 280**

**NXrootbase class, 219**  
attributes, 18

**NXsamplebase class, 5, 220**  
used in application definition, 243, 246, 249, 265, 267, 268, 270, 271, 279, 280, 282, 284, 287, 289, 290, 293, 295, 296, 298, 300, 301, 303, 304, 306, 307, 309, 310, 312, 313  
used in base class, 183, 234  
used in contributed definition, 318, 325, 330

**NXsample\_componentbase class, 225**  
used in base class, 221

**NXsas, 367**

**NXsasapplication definition, 281**

**NXsastofapplication definition, 284**

**NXscanapplication definition, 286**

**NXsensorbase class, 227**  
used in base class, 186, 189

**NXseparatorcontributed definition, 324**

**NXshapebase class, 229**  
used in application definition, 282, 284  
used in base class, 163, 193, 194, 201  
used in contributed definition, 316, 325, 330

**NXslitbase class, 230**

**NXsnseventcontributed definition, 325**

**NXsnshistocontributed definition, 329**

**NXsolenoid\_magnetcontributed definition, 334**

**NXsolid\_geometrycontributed definition, 335**

**NXsourcebase class, 230**

used in application definition, 243, 246, 249, 265, 267, 270, 271, 279, 282, 284, 289, 290, 293, 300, 301, 303, 304, 307, 309, 310, 312, 313  
used in base class, 198  
used in contributed definition, 318, 325, 330

**NXspeapplication definition, 287**

**NXspecdatacontributed definition, 335**

**NXspin\_rotatorcontributed definition, 341**

**NXsqomapplication definition, 288**

**NXstxmapplication definition, 290**

**NXsubentrybase class, 233**  
used in base class, 183

**nxsummary, 363**

**NXtasapplication definition, 293**

**NXtofnpdapplication definition, 294**

**NXtofrawapplication definition, 296**

**NXtofsingleapplication definition, 298**

**NXtomoapplication definition, 299**

**NXtomophaseapplication definition, 301**

**NXtomoprocapplication definition, 302**

**NXtransformationsbase class, 236**  
used in application definition, 271  
used in base class, 192, 194, 198  
used in contributed definition, 316, 318

**nxtranslateutility, 363**

**NXtranslationbase class, 238**  
used in base class, 193  
used in contributed definition, 325, 330

**NXuserbase class, 239**  
used in application definition, 243, 295, 296, 298  
used in base class, 183, 234  
used in contributed definition, 325, 330, 336

**nxvalidate, 72**

**nxvalidateutility, 364**

**NXvelocity\_selectorbase class, 240**  
used in base class, 198, 204

**NXxasapplication definition, 304**

**NXxasprocapplication definition, 305**

**NXxbaseapplication definition, 306**

**NXxeulerapplication definition, 308**

**NXxkappaapplication definition, 309**

**NXxlaugeapplication definition, 310**

**NXxlaugeplateapplication definition, 311**

**NXxbapplication definition, 312**

**NXxraylensbase class, 241**  
used in base class, 198

**NXxrotapplication definition, 313**

objectbase class, *see* NXobject, 206

observed\_framefield, 216

observed\_frame\_varfield, 216

observed\_phifield, 217

observed\_phi\_varfield, 217

observed\_px\_xfield, 216

observed\_px\_x\_varfield, 216  
observed\_px\_yfield, 217  
observed\_px\_y\_varfield, 217  
observed\_xfield, 217  
observed\_x\_varfield, 217  
observed\_yfield, 217  
observed\_y\_varfield, 217  
odd\_layer\_densityfield, 201  
odd\_layer\_materialfield, 201  
off\_geometrybase class, *see* NXoff\_geometry, 206  
offsetfield attribute, 25, 180, 181, 187, 238, 276, 277, 304  
offsetfield, 171  
offset\_unitsfield attribute, 180, 181, 238  
OpenGENIEdata analysis software, 365  
operationfield, 317  
ordertransformation, *see* depends on (field attribute)  
order\_nofield, 164  
orientationbase class, *see* NXorientation, 207  
orientation\_matrixfield, 165, 190, 222, 226, 269, 294, 308, 339  
Osborn, Raymond, 368  
outer\_diameterfield, 192  
outermost\_zone\_widthfield, 192  
overlapsfield, 219  
packing\_fractionfield, 316  
pair\_separationfield, 182  
parametersbase class, *see* NXparameters, 207  
parametersfield, 322  
partialityfield, 215  
pass\_energyfield, 247  
path\_lengthfield, 224  
path\_length\_windowfield, 224  
pdibase class, *see* NXpdb, 208  
periodfield, 194, 232  
phasefield, 183, 197  
phifield, 309, 310  
physical file format, *see* file format  
pinholebase class, *see* NXpinhole, 210  
pitchfield, 259, 262  
pixel\_idfield, 327, 332  
pixel\_maskfield, 176, 274  
pixel\_mask\_appliedfield, 176, 274  
plotting, 4, 5, 12, 14, 18, 21, 22, 22, 33, 52, 74, 167, 169, 170, 183, 220, 234, 250, 336, 363  
    how to find data, 44  
point\_groupfield, 224, 227  
poison\_depthfield, 202  
poison\_materialfield, 202  
polarfield, 288  
polar\_anglefield, 166, 173, 219, 266, 269, 270, 279, 281, 283, 285, 293–295, 297, 298, 309, 310, 312, 313, 327, 332  
polar\_widthfield, 288  
polarizerbase class, *see* NXpolarizer, 210  
polesfield, 197  
positionerbase class, *see* NXpositioner, 211  
positionerfield, 340  
powerfield, 197, 232  
pre\_sample\_flightpathfield, 185, 236, 295, 296, 298  
precompiled executable, *see* NAPI installation  
predicted\_framefield, 215  
predicted\_phifield, 216  
predicted\_px\_xfield, 216  
predicted\_px\_yfield, 216  
predicted\_xfield, 215  
predicted\_yfield, 216  
preparation\_datefield, 223, 245  
presetfield, 203, 266, 269, 271, 280, 281, 284, 286, 294, 296, 297, 299, 305, 308, 337  
preset\_timefield, 340  
pressurefield, 222, 246  
prf\_ccfield, 219  
primaryfield attribute, 172, 173  
probefield, 231, 245, 246, 265, 267, 270, 279, 282, 285, 289, 291, 293, 300, 302, 303, 305, 307, 319, 327, 332  
processbase class, *see* NXprocess, 212  
Processed Data, 68  
profilefield, 278  
programfield, 186, 212, 244, 267, 289, 303, 306  
program\_namefield, 185, 235, 288  
programs, 363  
proton\_chargefield, 325, 330  
psifield, 288  
pulse\_heightfield, 187  
pulse\_timefield, 327  
pulse\_widthfield, 233  
punxutility, 364  
PyMCAdata analysis software, 365  
Qfield, 252, 337  
Q\_indicesgroup attribute, 251  
Qdevfield, 256  
qhfield, 294  
qkfield, 294  
qlfield, 294  
Qmeanfield, 257  
quadriccontributed definition, *see* NXquadric, 322  
quadrupole\_magnetcontributed definition, *see* NXquadrupole\_magnet, 323  
qxfield, 268, 290  
qyfield, 268, 290  
qzfield, 290  
r\_slitfield, 188  
radiationfield, 260  
radiusfield, 182, 188, 240

rangefield, 203  
 rank, 14, 48, 53, 64  
 rankNXDL attribute, 64  
 ratiofield, 183  
 raw\_filefield, 303, 306  
 raw\_framesfield, 325, 330  
 raw\_time\_of\_flightfield, 172  
 raw\_valuefield, 200, 211  
 read file, 15  
 real\_timefield, 178  
 reduction\_coefffield, 340  
 reflectionfield, 165, 211  
 reflection\_idfield, 214  
 reflectionsbase class, *see* NXreflections, 213  
 refscanapplication definition, *see* NXrefscan, 279  
 reftofapplication definition, *see* NXreftof, 280  
 region\_originfield, 247  
 region\_sizefield, 247  
 regular expression, 38  
 relative\_molecular\_massfield, 222, 226, 316  
 release  
     NeXus definitions, 360  
     notes, 360  
     process, 360  
     tags, 125, 361  
     versioning, 125, 361  
 release\_datefield, 244  
 repository, 357, *see* NAPI installation  
 resolutionsfield attribute, 253  
 resolutions\_descriptionfield attribute, 254  
 revisionfield, 185, 235, 244  
 revision history, 370  
 Riedel, Richard, 368  
 roiNfield, 340  
 rolefield, 239, 244, 329, 334  
 rollfield, 259, 262  
 rootbase class, *see* NXroot, 219  
 rotation, 25  
 rotation\_anglefield, 224, 270, 280, 281, 283, 285, 287, 288, 291, 293, 294, 300, 302, 309, 310, 312, 313  
 rotation\_angle\_stepfield, 313  
 rotation\_speedfield, 182, 188, 240, 264, 265  
 RPM, *see* NAPI installation  
 rules, 3  
     HDF, 17, 126  
     HDF5, 39  
     naming, 21, 30, 38, 126  
     NeXus, 30  
     NX prefix, 21  
     XML, 126  
 runfield, 250  
 run\_controlfield, 228  
 run\_cyclefield, 185, 235, 244  
 run\_numberfield, 296, 325, 330  
 samplebase class, *see* NXsample, 220  
 sample\_componentbase class, *see* NXsample\_component, 225  
 sample\_componentfield, 223  
 sample\_idfield, 245  
 sample\_orientationfield, 222, 226  
 sample\_xfield, 292  
 sample\_yfield, 292  
 sampled\_fractionfield, 204  
 sasapplication definition, *see* NXsas, 281  
 sastofapplication definition, *see* NXsastof, 284  
 saturation\_valuefield, 177, 275  
 scalingfield attribute, 304  
 scaling\_factorfield attribute, 200, 255  
 scaling\_factorfield, 171  
 scanapplication definition, *see* NXscan, 286  
 scan\_numberfield, 337  
 scattering\_cross\_sectionfield, 157  
 scattering\_length\_densityfield, 223, 226  
 scattering\_vectorfield, 165  
 Scientific Data Sets, *see* field  
 SDDfield, 259  
 SDSScientific Data Sets, *see* field  
 seblockfield, 288  
 segment\_columnsfield, 165  
 segment\_gapfield, 165  
 segment\_heightfield, 165  
 segment\_rowsfield, 165  
 segment\_thicknessfield, 165  
 segment\_widthfield, 165  
 sensorbase class, *see* NXsensor, 227  
 sensor\_materialfield, 177, 275  
 sensor\_sizefield, 247  
 sensor\_thicknessfield, 177, 275  
 separatorcontributed definition, *see* NXseparator, 324  
 sequence\_indexfield, 205, 212  
 sequence\_numberfield, 175, 302  
 serial\_numberfield, 174  
 set\_Bfield\_currentfield, 324, 341  
 set\_currentfield, 321, 322, 324, 335  
 set\_Efield\_voltagefield, 324, 341  
 set\_voltagefield, 321, 322  
 sglfield, 294  
 sgufield, 294  
 ShadowFactorfield, 258  
 shapebase class, *see* NXshape, 229  
 shapefield, 229, 258, 283, 285, 328, 329, 332–334  
 short\_namefield attribute, 198, 231, 272, 279  
 short\_namefield, 186, 227  
 short\_titlefield, 224  
 sigma\_xfield, 232  
 sigma\_yfield, 232

signalfield attribute, 170, 269, 307  
signalfile attribute, 169  
signalgroup attribute, 178, 196, 251, 263, 319, 320, 338  
signal data, 18, 45  
situationfield, 223, 245  
sizefield, 159, 229, 283, 285, 328, 329, 332–334  
slitbase class, *see* NXslit, 230  
slitfield, 188  
slit\_anglefield, 182  
slit\_edgesfield, 182  
slit\_heightfield, 183  
slit\_lengthfield, 259  
slitsfield, 182  
slotfield, 174  
slow\_pixel\_directionfield, 181, 276  
SNSbanking\_file\_namefield, 326, 331  
SNSdetector\_calibration\_idfield, 327, 331  
snseventcontributed definition, *see* NXsnsevent, 325  
SNSgeometry\_file\_namefield, 327, 332  
snshistocontributed definition, *see* NXsnshisto, 329  
SNSmapping\_file\_namefield, 326, 331  
SNStranslation\_servicefield, 327, 332  
soft\_limit\_maxfield, 212  
soft\_limit\_minfield, 212  
software, 363  
solenoid\_magnetcontributed definition, *see* NX-solenoid\_magnet, 334  
solid\_anglefield, 174  
solid\_geometrycontributed definition, *see* NX-solid\_geometry, 335  
soller\_anglefield, 162  
sourcebase class, *see* NXsource, 230  
source distribution, *see* NAPI installation  
source\_distance\_xfield, 159  
source\_distance\_yfield, 159  
space\_groupfield, 164, 224, 227  
speapplication definition, *see* NXspe, 287  
spec2nexus, 365  
SPEC\_commentsfile attribute, 336  
SPEC\_datefile attribute, 336  
SPEC\_epochfile attribute, 336  
SPEC\_filefile attribute, 336  
spec\_namefield attribute, 338  
SPEC\_num\_headersfile attribute, 336  
SPEC\_userfield, 341  
specdatacontributed definition, *see* NXspecdata, 335  
Sphinxdocumentation generator, 369  
spin\_rotatorcontributed definition, *see* NXspin\_rotator, 341  
spwidthfield, 240  
sqomapplication definition, *see* NXsqom, 288  
startfield attribute, 178, 182, 188, 200  
start\_timefield, 178, 184, 203, 235, 244, 246, 264–266, 270, 272, 279, 280, 282, 284, 287, 291, 293, 295, 296, 298, 300, 301, 304, 307, 318, 325, 330  
statusfield, 157, 159, 189  
stop\_timefield, 178  
strategies, 68  
    simplest case(s), 68  
stress\_fieldfield, 221, 245  
strings, 43  
    arrays, 43  
    fixed-length, 43  
    variable-length, 43  
stxmapplication definition, *see* NXstxm, 290  
stxm\_scan\_typefield, 291  
subentry  
    NXsubentry, 153  
subentrybase class, *see* NXsubentry, 233  
substrate\_densityfield, 194, 201  
substrate\_materialfield, 190, 194, 196, 201  
substrate\_roughnessfield, 191, 194, 196, 201  
substrate\_thicknessfield, 190, 194, 196, 201  
support\_membrane\_materialfield, 193  
support\_membrane\_thicknessfield, 193  
surfacefield, 196  
surface\_indicesgroup attribute, 196  
surface\_typefield, 322  
symbolsNXDL element, 134  
symbolsTypeNXDL data type, 148  
symmetricfield, 241  
  
Tfield, 264  
T\_axesgroup attribute, 263  
tablefield, 240  
tags, 125, 361  
taperfield, 197  
target, attribute, 19  
target\_materialfield, 232  
target\_valuefield, 212  
tasapplication definition, *see* NXtas, 293  
Tdevfield, 264  
telephone\_numberfield, 239  
TEMP\_SPfield, 337  
temperaturefield, 166, 189, 202, 221, 245, 247, 261, 277, 288, 308, 328, 333  
temperature\_coefficientfield, 166  
template, *see* NXDL template file  
termfield, 208, 262  
thicknessfield, 157, 165, 189, 192, 224, 261  
threshold\_energyfield, 178, 275  
tilt\_anglefield, 312  
timefield attribute, 157, 233  
timefield, 199, 326, 331  
time\_of\_flightfield, 172, 204, 269, 281, 285, 286, 295–299, 329, 332, 334  
time\_per\_channelfield, 247, 273

timestampgroup attribute, 252, 263  
 timingfield, 321, 322  
 Tischler, Jonathan, 12, 368  
 titlefield, 183, 233, 234, 243, 246, 250, 264–267, 270, 272, 279, 280, 282, 284, 287, 289, 291, 293, 295, 296, 298, 300, 301, 303, 304, 306, 307, 318, 325, 330, 337  
 tofnpdapplication definition, *see* NXtofnpd, 294  
 tofrawapplication definition, *see* NXtofraw, 296  
 tofsingleapplication definition, *see* NXtofsingle, 298  
 tolerancefield, 212  
 tomoapplication definition, *see* NXtomo, 299  
 tomophaseapplication definition, *see* NXtomophase, 301  
 tomoprocapplication definition, *see* NXtomoproc, 302  
 top\_dead\_centerfield, 182  
 top\_upfield, 233  
 total\_countsfield, 326, 327, 330, 332  
 total\_fluxfield, 278  
 total\_uncounted\_countsfield, 326, 330  
 transformfield attribute, 304  
 transformation matrices, 24  
 transformation\_typefield attribute, 25  
 transformation\_typefield attribute, 180, 181, 237, 276  
 transformationsbase class, *see* NXtransformations, 236  
 transformationsfield, 320  
 translation, 25  
 translationbase class, *see* NXtranslation, 238  
 translationfield, 319  
 transmissionfield, 261  
 transmitting\_materialfield, 163, 189  
 tree structure, *see* hierarchy  
 trigger\_dead\_timefield, 177  
 trigger\_delay\_timefield, 177  
 trigger\_delay\_time\_setfield, 177  
 trigger\_internal\_delay\_timefield, 177  
 tutorial  
     WONI, 56  
 twistfield, 240  
 type, *see* data type  
 typefield, 157, 160, 162, 164, 174, 182, 186, 188, 191, 197, 201–203, 205, 211, 222, 228, 231, 240, 245, 246, 265, 267, 270, 275, 279, 282, 285, 289, 291, 300, 302, 303, 305, 307, 319, 327–329, 332, 333  
 typegroup attribute, 186  
 typeNXDL attribute, 64  
 ub\_matrixfield, 222  
 UDunits, 43, 44  
 uncertaintiesfield attribute, 171, 252, 255, 264  
 underload\_valuefield, 177  
 Unidata UDunits, 43  
 unit category, 151  
 unit\_cellfield, 164, 222, 269, 294, 308  
 unit\_cell\_afield, 164, 190  
 unit\_cell\_abcfield, 222, 226  
 unit\_cell\_alphafield, 165, 190  
 unit\_cell\_alphabagammafield, 222, 226  
 unit\_cell\_bfield, 164, 190  
 unit\_cell\_betafield, 165, 190  
 unit\_cell\_cfield, 165, 190  
 unit\_cell\_classfield, 223, 226  
 unit\_cell\_gammffield, 165, 190  
 unit\_cell\_volumefield, 165, 190, 222, 226  
 units, 14, 18, 43, 127  
 unitsfield attribute, 208, 252, 255–257, 319, 320, 338, 339  
 unitsNXDL attribute, 64  
 URLfield attribute, 184, 235  
 urlfield, 161  
 usagefield, 163  
 use of, 153  
 userbase class, *see* NXuser, 239  
 utilities, 363  
 validation, 72, 364  
 validItemNameNXDL data type, 150  
 validNXClassNameNXDL data type, 150  
 validTargetNameNXDL data type, 150  
 valuefield, 200, 207, 211, 228, 321, 322, 324–326, 328, 329, 331–333, 335, 341, 342  
 valueNXDL attribute, 64  
 valuetransformation matrix, 25  
 value\_deriv1field, 228  
 value\_deriv2field, 228  
 VARIABLEfield, 170  
 variablefield, 268  
 VARIABLE\_errorsfield, 170  
 varied\_variablefield attribute, 268  
 vectorfield attribute, 25, 180, 181, 238, 276, 277, 320  
 vectorfield, 320  
 velocityfield, 212  
 velocity\_selectorbase class, *see* NXvelocity\_selector, 240  
 verification, 72  
 versionfield attribute, 184, 185, 235, 244, 288  
 versionfield, 212, 267, 289, 303, 306, 326, 331  
 versiongroup attribute, 250  
 verticesfield, 167, 206  
 voltagefield, 232  
 volume\_fractionfield, 223, 226  
 wavelengthfield, 165, 178, 188, 196, 204, 240, 265, 270, 279, 283, 307, 311, 329, 333  
 wavelength\_errorfield, 204  
 wavelength\_indicesgroup attribute, 178, 196  
 wavelength\_maxfield, 261  
 wavelength\_minfield, 261  
 wavelength\_rangefield, 183  
 wavelength\_spreadfield, 241, 283

webpage, 355  
why NeXus?, *see* motivation, 11  
widthfield, 188, 240  
winding\_orderfield, 206  
Windows, *see* NAPI installation  
WONI, 56  
working\_distancefield, 161  
write file, 13

xfield, 159, 171, 304  
x\_gapfield, 230, 258  
x\_indicesfield, 320  
x\_pixel\_offsetfield, 173, 327, 328, 332, 333  
x\_pixel\_sizefield, 174, 260, 269, 281, 283, 285, 300, 302,  
    307, 319  
x\_positionfield, 259, 261  
x\_rotation\_axis\_pixel\_positionfield, 300  
x\_translationfield, 224, 301, 302, 308  
xasapplication definition, *see* NXxas, 304  
xasprocapplication definition, *see* NXxasproc, 305  
xbaseapplication definition, *see* NXxbase, 306  
xeulerapplication definition, *see* NXxeuler, 308  
xkappaapplication definition, *see* NXxkappa, 309  
xlaugeapplication definition, *see* NXxlauge, 310  
xlaugeplateapplication definition, *see* NXxlaugeplate, 311  
XML, 367  
XML\_versionfile attribute, 220  
xmlnsNXDL attribute, 64  
xnapplication definition, *see* NXxnb, 312  
xraylensbase class, *see* NXxraylens, 241  
xrotapplication definition, *see* NXxrot, 313  
xsi:schemaLocationNXDL attribute, 64

yfield, 159, 171, 304  
y\_gapfield, 230, 258  
y\_indicesfield, 320  
y\_pixel\_offsetfield, 173, 327, 332  
y\_pixel\_sizefield, 174, 260, 269, 281, 283, 285, 300, 302,  
    307, 319  
y\_positionfield, 259, 262  
y\_rotation\_axis\_pixel\_positionfield, 300  
y\_translationfield, 301, 302, 308  
yawfield, 259, 262

zfield, 171, 304  
z\_pixel\_offsetfield, 173  
z\_translationfield, 301, 302  
zone\_heightfield, 192  
zone\_materialfield, 192  
zone\_support\_materialfield, 192